EOS R50



Advanced User Guide

These operating instructions are for the EOS R50 with firmware ver. 1.5.0 or later installed.

E

CT2-D267-E
© CANON INC. 2026

Contents

Introduction 10
Package Contents 11
Supplemental Information 13
Compatible Accessories 14
Instruction Manuals 15
Quick Start Guide 16
About This Guide 19
Compatible Cards 21
Safety Instructions 22
Handling Precautions 25
Part Names 29
Software/Apps 37
Preparation and Basic Operations 41
Charging the Battery 42
Inserting/Removing the Battery and Card 45
Using the Screen 51
Turning on the Power 53
Attaching and Detaching RF/RF-S Lenses 59
Attaching and Detaching EF/EF-S Lenses 64
Multi-Function Shoe 68
Using the Viewfinder 70
Basic Operations 71
Menu Operations and Settings 78
Quick Control 84
Touch-Screen Operation 85
Basic Zone 87
A+: Fully Automatic Shooting (Scene Intelligent Auto) 89
A+: Assist Features 97
Hybrid Auto 105
Special Scene Mode 108

Self Portrait Mode. 111
Portrait Mode. 112
Smooth Skin Mode. 113
Group Photo Mode. 114
Landscape Mode. 115
Panoramic Shot Mode. 116
Sports Mode. 118
Kids Mode. 119
Panning Mode. 120
Close-up Mode. 123
Food Mode. 124
Handheld Night Scene Mode. 125
HDR Backlight Control Mode. 126
Silent Shutter Mode. 127
Creative Filters Mode. 128
Creative Zone. 135
P: Program AE. 136
Tv: Shutter-Priority AE. 138
Av: Aperture-Priority AE. 140
M: Manual Exposure. 144
Long (Bulb) Exposures. 147
Flash Photography. 149
Shooting with the Built-in Flash. 150
Flash Function Settings. 154
Shooting with Speedlites. 172
Shooting and Recording. 178
Still Photo Shooting. 179
Tab Menus: Still Photo Shooting. 181
Image Quality. 189
Still Image Aspect Ratio. 194
Digital Tele-Converter. 196
Auto Exposure Bracketing (AEB). 197

Manual Exposure Compensation. 199
Exposure Lock (AE Lock). 201
ISO Speed Settings for Still Photos. 203
HDR Shooting. 206
HDR Mode. 208
Auto Lighting Optimizer. 212
Highlight Tone Priority. 214
Anti-Flicker Shooting. 216
Metering Mode. 218
White Balance. 220
White Balance Correction. 231
Color Space. 235
Picture Style Selection. 236
Picture Style Customization. 240
Picture Style Registration. 244
Clarity. 247
Shooting Creative Filters. 248
Lens Aberration Correction. 253
Long Exposure Noise Reduction. 261
High ISO Speed Noise Reduction. 263
Dust Delete Data Acquisition. 265
Focus Bracketing. 268
Silent Shutter Function. 273
Shutter Mode. 274
Releasing Shutter without Card. 276
Image Stabilizer (IS Mode). 277
Customizing Quick Controls. 279
Shooting with the Touch Shutter. 283
Image Review. 285
High-Speed Display. 288
Metering Timer. 290
Display Simulation. 291
Optical Viewfinder Simulation. 293

Shooting Information Display. 295
Reverse Display. 308
Viewfinder Display Format. 309
Display Performance. 310
General Still Photo Shooting. 312
Movie Recording. 315
Tab Menus: Movie Recording. 316
Movie Recording. 321
Movie Recording Size. 338
High Frame Rate. 346
Digital Zoom. 347
Sound Recording. 349
Shooting Creative Filters. 352
Time-Lapse Movies. 356
Movie Self-Timer. 368
Image Stabilizer (IS Mode). 369
Auto Level. 371
Shutter Button Function for Movies. 372
Zebra Settings. 374
Shooting Information Display. 377
Time Code. 381
Other Menu Functions. 388
General Movie Recording Precautions. 396
AF/Drive. 400
Tab Menus: AF (Still Photos). 401
Tab Menus: AF (Movie Recording). 405
AF Operation. 407
Movie Servo AF. 413
Selecting the AF Area. 416
Preview AF. 440
AF-Assist Beam Firing. 441
Touch & Drag AF Settings. 443
Manual Focus. 448

Customizing AF Functions. 456
Selecting the Drive Mode. 460
Using the Self-Timer. 463
Remote Control Shooting. 465
Customizing Operation. 466
Playback. 468
Tab Menus: Playback. 470
Image Playback. 472
Magnified Image Display. 477
Index Display (Multiple-Image Display). 479
Movie Playback. 482
Editing a Movie's First and Last Scenes. 487
Frame Extraction from 4K Movies. 490
Digest Movie Editing. 493
Playback on a TV Set. 496
Protecting Images. 498
Erasing Images. 502
Rotating Still Photos. 509
Changing Movie Orientation Information. 511
Rating Images. 513
Print Ordering (DPOF). 519
Creative Assist. 524
Playback Creative Filters. 527
Red-Eye Correction. 531
Resizing JPEG/HEIF Images. 533
Cropping JPEG/HEIF Images. 535
Converting HEIF to JPEG. 538
Slide Show. 543
Setting Image Search Conditions. 546
Resuming from Previous Playback. 550
Browsing Images with the Dial. 551
Customizing Playback Information Display. 553
AF Point Display. 557

Playback Grid. 558
Movie Play Count. 559
HDMI HDR Output. 561
Communication Functions. 562
Tab Menus: Communication Functions. 563
Connecting to a Smartphone or Tablet. 565
Connecting to a Wireless Remote Control. 590
Connecting to EOS Utility. 593
Uploading Images to image.canon. 600
Connecting to a Printer via Wi-Fi. 607
Advanced Connections. 621
Basic Communication Settings. 624
Reconnecting via Wi-Fi/Bluetooth. 647
Editing/Deleting Connection Settings. 648
Airplane Mode. 651
Wi-Fi Settings. 652
Bluetooth Settings. 654
Camera Name. 655
GPS Settings. 656
Error Details. 660
Resetting Communication Settings. 661
Virtual Keyboard Operations. 662
Responding to Error Messages. 663
Wireless Communication Function Precautions. 670
Security. 672
Checking Network Settings. 673
Wireless Communication Status. 674
Set-up. 676
Tab Menus: Set-up. 677
Folder Settings. 680
File Numbering. 682
Card Formatting. 687

Auto Rotate. 689
Adding Orientation Information to Movies. 691
Date/Time/Zone. 692
Language. 695
Video System. 696
Shooting Mode Guide. 697
Feature Guide. 699
Beeps. 701
Volume. 702
Power Saving. 703
Screen and Viewfinder Display. 704
Screen Brightness. 705
Viewfinder Brightness. 706
Fine-Tuning Viewfinder Color Tone. 707
UI Magnification. 708
HDMI Resolution. 709
Touch Control. 710
App Selection for USB Connections. 711
Password Management. 712
Resetting the Camera. 717
Custom Shooting Mode (C Mode). 718
Battery Information. 721
Copyright Information. 722
Other Information. 725
Custom Functions/My Menu. 726
Tab Menus: Custom Functions. 727
Custom Function Setting Items. 729
Tab Menus: My Menu. 745
Registering My Menu. 746
Reference. 753
Importing Images to a Computer. 754
Importing Images to a Smartphone. 757

Using a USB Power Adapter to Charge/Power the Camera. 760
Troubleshooting Guide. 763
Error Codes. 779
ISO Speed in Movie Recording. 780
Information Display. 781
Specifications. 792
Trademarks and Licensing. 812

Introduction

Before starting to shoot, be sure to read the following

To avoid shooting problems and accidents, first read the Safety Instructions and Handling Precautions. Also read this Advanced User Guide carefully to ensure that you use the camera correctly.

Take some test shots, and understand about product liability

After shooting, play images back and check whether they have been properly recorded. If the camera or memory card is faulty and images cannot be recorded or transferred to a computer, Canon cannot be held liable for any loss or inconvenience caused.

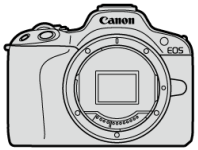
Copyrights

Copyright laws in some countries prohibit the unauthorized use of images recorded with the camera (or music/images with music transferred to the memory card) for purposes other than personal enjoyment. Also be aware that certain public performances, exhibitions, etc. may prohibit photography even for private enjoyment.

- Package Contents
- Supplemental Information
- Compatible Accessories
- Instruction Manuals
- Quick Start Guide
- About This Guide
- Compatible Cards
- Safety Instructions
- Handling Precautions
- Part Names
- Software/Apps

Package Contents

Before use, make sure the following items are included in the package. If anything is missing, contact your dealer.



Camera
(with body cap (Camera Cover R-F-5) and shoe cover)



Battery Pack LP-E17
(with protective cover)



Battery Charger LC-E17/LC-E17E*



Strap

* Battery Charger LC-E17 or LC-E17E is provided. (The LC-E17E comes with a power cord.)

- The camera does not come with a memory card (), interface cable, or HDMI cable.
- If you purchased a Lens Kit, check that the lenses are included.
- Be careful not to lose any of these items.
- No software CD-ROM is included. Software () can be downloaded from the Canon website.

Caution

- When you need Lens Instruction Manuals, download them from the Canon website ( ).
  Lens Instruction Manuals (PDF files) are for lenses sold separately, and when a lens kit is purchased, some accessories included with the lens may not match those listed in the Lens Instruction Manual.

Supplemental Information

Refer to the following website for information on lenses compatible with camera features, and for supplemental information about the camera.

- **https://cam.start.canon/H001/**

Compatible Accessories

Check the following website for details on compatible accessories.

- **https://cam.start.canon/H002/**

Instruction Manuals



The included Instruction Manual provides basic camera instructions.

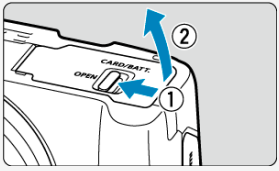
- **Advanced User Guide**
  Complete instructions are provided in this Advanced User Guide.
  For the latest Advanced User Guide, refer to the following website.
  https://cam.start.canon/C011/

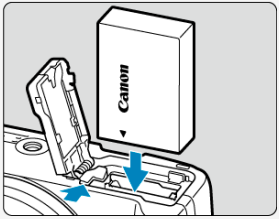
- **Lens/Software Instruction Manual**
  View or download from the following website.
  https://cam.start.canon/

Note

- Select [: **Manual/software URL**] to display the QR code on the camera screen.

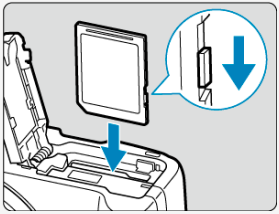
1. Insert the battery ( ).





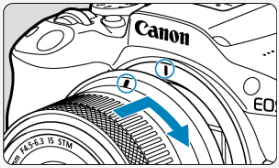
- Upon purchase, charge the battery to start using ( ).

2. Insert the card ( ).



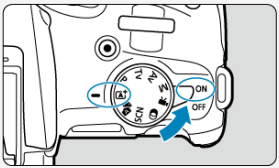
- Insert the card with the label facing the front of the camera until it clicks into place.

3. Attach the lens ( ).



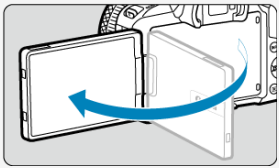
- Align the red mount index on the lens with the red mount index on the camera to attach the lens.

4. Set the power switch to <ON>, then set the Mode dial to < > (,).



- All the necessary camera settings is set automatically.

5. Flip out the screen ( ).



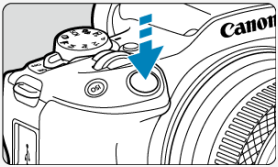
- When the language setting screen is displayed, see Language.
- When the password setting screen is displayed, see Setting a Password.

6. Focus on the subject ( ).



- A tracking frame [ ] for AF appears over any face detected.
- Press the shutter button halfway, and the camera will focus on the subject.
- If [ ] blinks on the screen, manually raise the built-in flash.

7. Take the picture ( ).



- Press the shutter button completely to take the picture.

8. Review the picture.



- The image just captured will be displayed for approx. 2 sec. on the screen.
- To display the image again, press the < > button ( ).

About This Guide

Icons in This Guide

Basic Assumptions for Operational Instructions and Sample Photos

Icons in This Guide

< >	Indicates the dial.
< ▲ > < ▼ > < ◀ > < ▶ >	Indicates the direction to press the cross keys (< ✥ >).
< >	Indicates the lens control ring.
< SET >	Indicates the Quick Control/Set button.
*	Indicates the duration (in * seconds) of the operation for the button you pressed, as timed after you release the button.

- In addition to the above, the icons and symbols used on the camera's buttons and displayed on the screen are also used in this guide when discussing relevant operations and functionality.

☆	☆ to the right of titles indicates functions only available in Creative Zone modes (**<P>**, **<Tv>**, **<Av>**, or **<M>**).
	Links to pages with related topics.
	Warning to prevent shooting problems.
	Supplemental information.
	Tips or advice for better shooting.
?	Troubleshooting advice.

Basic Assumptions for Operational Instructions and Sample Photos

- Before following any instructions, make sure the power switch is set to < ON > ( ).
- It is assumed that all the menu settings and Custom Functions are set to their defaults.
- Illustrations in this guide show the camera with the RF-S18-45mm F4.5-6.3 IS STM lens attached as an example.
- The sample photos displayed on the camera and used in this guide are for instructional purposes only.
- In references to using EF or EF-S lenses, it is assumed that a mount adapter is used.

Compatible Cards

The following cards can be used with the camera regardless of capacity. **If the card is new or was previously formatted (initialized) by another camera or computer, format the card with this camera** ( ).

- **SD/SDHC/SDXC memory cards**
  UHS-I cards supported.

Cards That Can Record Movies

When recording movies, use a card with ample performance (fast enough writing and reading speeds) for the movie recording size ( ).

In this guide, “card” refers to SD memory cards, SDHC memory cards, and SDXC memory cards.
*__A card is not included.__ Please purchase it separately.

Safety Instructions

Be sure to read these instructions in order to operate the product safely.
Follow these instructions to prevent injury or harm to the operator of the product or others.

⚠WARNING: Denotes the risk of serious injury or death.

- Keep the product out of the reach of young children.

Keep batteries out of the reach of children.
A strap wrapped around a person's neck may result in strangulation.
The parts or provided items of cameras or accessories are dangerous if swallowed. If swallowed, seek immediate medical assistance.
The battery is dangerous if swallowed. If swallowed, seek immediate medical assistance.

- PRODUCT CONTAINS BUTTON/COIN CELL BATTERY

Button/coin cell batteries are hazardous and must be kept out of reach of children at all times, whether new or used.
These batteries can cause severe or fatal injuries in 2 hours or less if swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.
If it is suspected a button/coin cell battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, seek medical attention immediately.

- Use only power sources specified in this instruction manual for use with the product.
- Do not disassemble or modify the product.
- Do not expose the product to strong shocks or vibration.
- Do not touch any exposed internal parts.
- Stop using the product in any case of unusual circumstances such as the presence of smoke or a strange smell.
- Do not use organic solvents such as alcohol, benzine or paint thinner to clean the product.
- Do not get the product wet. Do not insert foreign objects or liquids into the product.
- Do not use the product where flammable gases may be present.

This may cause electric shock, explosion or fire.

- Do not leave a lens or a camera/camcorder with a lens attached, exposed without the lens cap attached.

The lens may concentrate the light and cause fire.

- Do not touch the product connected to a power outlet during lightning storms.

This may cause electric shock.

- Observe the following instructions when using commercially available batteries or provided battery packs.
  - Use batteries/battery packs only with their specified product.
  - Do not heat batteries/battery packs or expose them to fire.
  - Do not charge batteries/battery packs using non-authorized battery chargers.
  - Do not expose the terminals to dirt or let them come into contact with metallic pins or other metal objects.
  - Do not use leaking batteries/battery packs.
  - When disposing of batteries/battery packs, insulate the terminals with tape or other means.

This may cause electric shock, explosion or fire.
If a battery/battery pack leaks and the material contacts your skin or clothing, flush the exposed area thoroughly with running water. In case of eye contact, flush thoroughly with copious amounts of clean running water and seek immediate medical assistance.

- Observe the following instructions when using a battery charger or AC adapter.
  - Periodically remove any dust buildup from the power plug and power outlet using a dry cloth.
  - Do not plug in or unplug the product with wet hands.
  - Do not use the product if the power plug is not fully inserted into the power outlet.
  - Do not expose the power plug and terminals to dirt or let them come into contact with metallic pins or other metal objects.
  - Do not touch the battery charger or AC adapter connected to a power outlet during lightning storms.
- Do not place heavy objects on the power cord. Do not damage, break or modify the power cord.
- Do not wrap the product in cloth or other materials when in use or shortly after use when the product is still warm in temperature.
- Do not unplug the product by pulling the power cord.
- Do not leave the product connected to a power source for long periods of time.
- Do not charge batteries/battery packs at temperatures outside the range of 5 - 40 °C (41 - 104 °F).

This may cause electric shock, explosion or fire.

- Do not allow the product to maintain contact with the same area of skin for extended periods of time during use.

This may result in low-temperature contact burns, including skin redness and blistering, even if the product does not feel hot. The use of a tripod or similar equipment is recommended when using the product in hot places and for people with circulation problems or less sensitive skin.

- Follow any indications to turn off the product in places where its use is forbidden.

Not doing so may cause other equipment to malfunction due to the effect of electromagnetic waves and even result in accidents.

- Do not leave batteries near pets.

Pets biting a battery could cause leakage, overheating, or explosion, resulting in product damage or fire.

⚠CAUTION: Follow the cautions below. Otherwise physical injury or property damage may result.

- Do not fire the flash near the eyes.

It may hurt the eyes.

- Do not look at the screen or through the viewfinder for prolonged periods of time.

This may induce symptoms similar to motion sickness. In such a case, stop using the product immediately and rest for a while before resuming use.

- Flash emits high temperatures when fired. Keep fingers, any other part of your body, and objects away from the flash unit while taking pictures.

This may cause burns or malfunction of the flash.

- Do not leave the product in places exposed to extremely high or low temperatures.

The product may become extremely hot/cold and cause burns or injury when touched.

- Strap is intended for use on the body only. Hanging the strap with any product attached on a hook or other object may damage the product. Also, do not shake the product or expose the product to strong impacts.
- Do not apply strong pressure on the lens or allow an object to hit it.

This may cause injury or damage to the product.

- Only mount the product on a tripod that is sufficiently sturdy.
- Do not carry the product when it is mounted on a tripod.

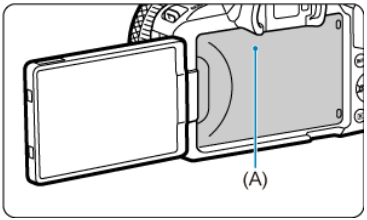
This may cause injury or may result in an accident.

- Do not touch any parts inside the product.

This may cause injury.

- If any abnormal skin reaction or irritation occurs during or following the use of this product, refrain from further use and get medical advice/attention.

Do not touch the screen storage compartment (A), because its temperature can increase by repeated continuous shooting for extended time or movie recording. This may cause burns.



Handling Precautions

Camera care

- This camera is a precision instrument. Do not drop it or subject it to physical shock.
- The camera is not waterproof and cannot be used underwater. If the camera gets wet, contact a Canon Service Center immediately. Wipe off any water droplets with a dry and clean cloth. If the camera has been exposed to salty air, wipe it with a clean, well-wrung wet cloth.
- Never leave the camera near anything having a strong magnetic field such as a magnet or electric motor. Also, avoid using or leaving the camera near anything emitting strong radio waves, such as a large antenna. Strong magnetic fields can cause camera malfunction or destroy image data.
- Do not leave the camera in excessive heat, such as in a car in direct sunlight. High temperatures can cause the camera to malfunction.
- The camera contains precision electronic circuitry. Never attempt to disassemble the camera yourself.
- Do not block shutter curtain operation with your finger or other objects. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Only use a commercially available blower to blow away dust on the lens, viewfinder, or other parts. Do not use cleaners that contain organic solvents to clean the camera body or lens. For stubborn dirt, take the camera to the nearest Canon Service Center.
- Do not touch the camera's electrical contacts with your fingers. This is to prevent the contacts from corroding. Corroded contacts can cause camera malfunction.
- If the camera is suddenly brought in from the cold into a warm room, condensation may form on the camera and internal parts. To prevent condensation, first put the camera in a sealed plastic bag and let it adjust to the warmer temperature before taking it out of the bag.
- If condensation forms on the camera, to avoid damage, do not use the camera or remove the lens, card, or battery. Turn the camera off and wait until the moisture has fully evaporated before resuming use. Even after the camera is completely dry, if it is still internally cold, do not remove the lens, card, or battery until the camera has adjusted to the ambient temperature.
- If the camera will not be used for an extended period, remove the battery and store the camera in a cool, dry, well-ventilated location. Even while the camera is in storage, press the shutter button a few times once in a while to check that the camera is still working.
- Avoid storing the camera where there are chemicals that result in rust and corrosion such as in a chemical lab.
- If the camera has not been used for an extended period, test all its functions before using it. If you have not used the camera for some time or if there is an important shoot such as a foreign trip coming up, have the camera checked by your nearest Canon Service Center or check the camera yourself and make sure it is working properly.
- The camera may become hot after repeated continuous shooting or still photo/movie shooting over an extended period. This is not a malfunction.
- If there is a bright light source inside or outside the image area, ghosting may occur.
- When shooting with backlighting, keep the sun sufficiently away from the angle of view. Always keep intense light sources such as the sun, lasers, and other intense artificial light sources out of the image area and not near it. Concentrated intense light may cause smoke or damage the image sensor or other internal components.

- Attach the lens cap to prevent direct sunlight and other light from entering the lens when you are not shooting.

Screen and viewfinder

The following does not affect images captured by the camera.

- Although the screen and viewfinder are manufactured with very high precision technology with over 99.99% effective pixels, 0.01% or fewer of the pixels may be dead, and there may also be spots of black, red, or other colors. This is not a malfunction.
- If the screen is left on for a prolonged period, screen burn-in may occur where you see remnants of what was displayed. However, this is only temporary and will disappear when the camera is left unused for a few days.
- The screen display may seem slightly slow in low temperatures or may look black in high temperatures, but it will return to normal at room temperature.

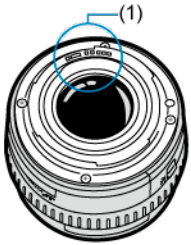
Cards

To protect the card and its recorded data, note the following:

- Do not drop, bend, or wet the card. Do not subject it to excessive force, physical shock, or vibration.
- Do not touch the card's electronic contacts with your fingers or anything metallic.
- Do not affix any stickers, etc. on the card.
- Do not store or use the card near anything that has a strong magnetic field, such as a television, speakers, or magnets. Also avoid places prone to having static electricity.
- Do not leave the card in direct sunlight or near a heat source.
- Store the card in a case.
- Do not store the card in hot, dusty, or humid locations.
- Cards may become hot after long sessions of repeated continuous shooting or still photo shooting/movie recording. This is not a malfunction.

Lens

- After detaching the lens from the camera, put down the lens with the rear end up and attach the rear lens cap to avoid scratching the lens surface and electrical contacts (1).

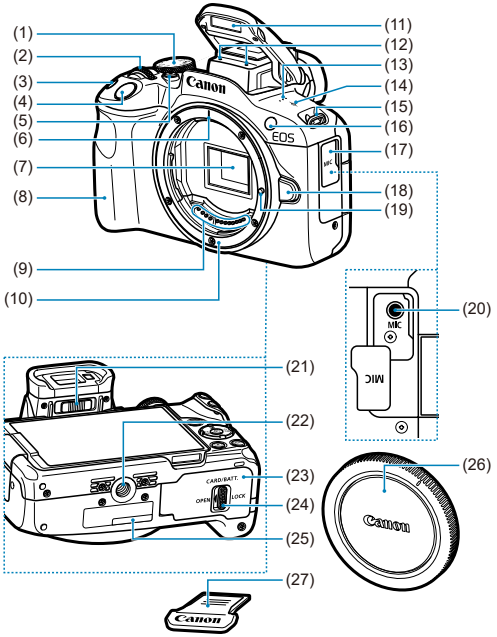


Smudges on the image sensor

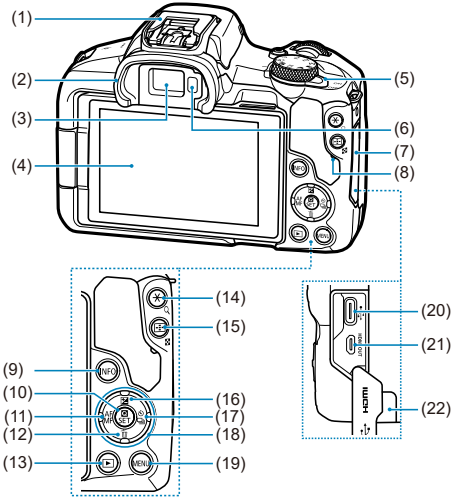
- You can use a commercially available blower to remove dust or debris on the image sensor that appears in images.
- Besides dust entering the camera from outside, in rare cases, lubricant from the camera's internal parts may adhere to the front of the sensor.
- If smudges are visible on images, have the sensor cleaned by a nearest Canon Service Center.

Part Names

Attaching the Strap



(1)	Mode dial
(2)	< > Dial
(3)	<ISO> ISO speed setting button
(4)	Shutter button
(5)	Movie shooting button
(6)	RF lens mount index
(7)	Image sensor
(8)	Grip
(9)	Contacts
(10)	Lens mount
(11)	Built-in flash
(12)	Microphone
(13)	Speaker
(14)	< > Focal plane mark
(15)	Strap mount
(16)	AF-assist beam/red-eye reduction/self-timer/remote control lamp
(17)	Terminal cover
(18)	Lens release button
(19)	Lens lock pin
(20)	<MIC> External microphone IN terminal
(21)	Dioptric adjustment slider
(22)	Tripod socket
(23)	Card/battery compartment cover
(24)	Card/battery compartment cover lock
(25)	Serial number (body number)
(26)	Body cap
(27)	Shoe cover


(1)
(2)
(3)
(4)
(5)
(6)
(7)
(8)
(9)
(10)
(11)
(12)
(13)
(14)
(15)
(16)
(17)
(18)
(19)
(20)
(21)
(22)
INFO
MENU
HDMI

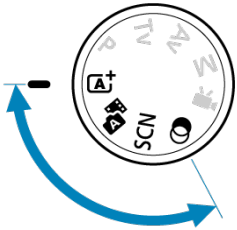
(1)	Multi-function shoe
(2)	Eyecup
(3)	Viewfinder eyepiece
(4)	Screen
(5)	< ON / OFF > Power switch
(6)	Viewfinder sensor
(7)	Terminal cover
(8)	Access lamp
(9)	< INFO > Info button
(10)	< ⊛ > Quick Control/Set button
(11)	< ◀ / AF MF > Left/autofocus/manual focus button
(12)	< ▼ / 🗑 > Down/erase button
(13)	< ▶ > Playback button
(14)	< ✳ / 🔍 > AE lock/FE lock/magnify button
(15)	< ⊞ / ⊠ > AF point selection/index/reduce button
(16)	< ▲ / ± > Up/exposure compensation button
(17)	< ▶ / ⏱ / 🖳 > Right/self-timer/drive mode selection button
(18)	< ✣ > Cross keys
(19)	< MENU > Menu button
(20)	< •⇠ > Digital terminal
(21)	< **HDMI OUT** > HDMI micro OUT terminal
(22)	DC cord hole

Mode dial

Features on the Mode dial are grouped into Basic Zone, Creative Zone, and movie recording modes.

(1) Basic Zone

All you do is press the shutter button. The camera sets everything to suit the subject or scene for shooting.



: Scene Intelligent Auto ( )

: Hybrid Auto ( )

SCN : Special scene ( )

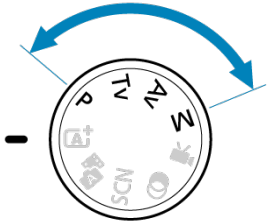
	Self Portrait		Kids
	Portrait		Panning
	Smooth skin		Close-up
	Group Photo		Food
	Landscape		Handheld Night Scene
	Panoramic shot		HDR Backlight Control
	Sports		Silent shutter

: Creative filters ( )

	Grainy B/W		Miniature effect
	Soft focus	HDR	HDR art standard
	Fish-eye effect	HDR	HDR art vivid
	Water painting effect	HDR	HDR art bold
	Toy camera effect	HDR	HDR art embossed

(2) Creative Zone

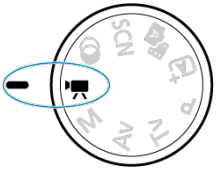
These modes give you more control for shooting various subjects as desired.



P	Program AE
Tv	Shutter-priority AE
Av	Aperture-priority AE
M	Manual exposure

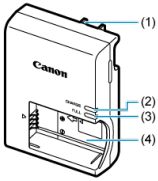
(3) Movie recording

For a variety of movie recording ( ).



Battery Charger LC-E17

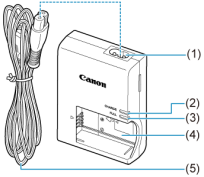
Charger for Battery Pack LP-E17 ( ).



(1)	Power plug
(2)	Charge lamp
(3)	Full-charge lamp
(4)	Battery slots

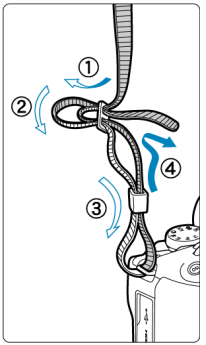
Battery Charger LC-E17E

Charger for Battery Pack LP-E17 ( ).



(1)	Power cord socket
(2)	Charge lamp
(3)	Full-charge lamp
(4)	Battery pack slot
(5)	Power cord

Attaching the Strap



Pass the end of the strap through the strap mount from the bottom, then pass it through the strap buckle as shown. Pull the strap to take up any slack and make sure the strap will not loosen from the buckle.

Software/Apps

- Software/App Overview
- Installing Computer Software
- Installing Smartphone Apps
- Software Instruction Manuals

Software/App Overview

This section summarizes software used with EOS cameras. Note that installing the software requires an internet connection. The software cannot be installed in environments without an internet connection.

Computer software

- **EOS Utility**
  Enables you to transfer captured images from the camera to a connected computer, set various camera settings from the computer, and shoot remotely from the computer.
- **Digital Photo Professional**
  Software recommended for users who shoot RAW images. Enables image viewing, editing, printing, and more.
- **Picture Style Editor**
  Enables you to edit existing Picture Styles or create and save original Picture Style files. This software is for users who are familiar with image processing.

Smartphone apps

- **Camera Connect**
  Enables you to transfer captured images from the camera to a smartphone over a wired or wireless connection, set various camera settings from the smartphone, and shoot remotely from the smartphone.
- **Digital Photo Professional Express**
  App for RAW image processing and image editing on a smartphone or tablet. Requires a paid subscription.

Installing Computer Software

Always install the latest version of the software. In this case, previous versions are overwritten.

Caution

- Do not install software while the camera is connected to the computer. The software will not be installed correctly.
- Installation is not possible without an internet connection.
- Older versions of the software do not support RAW image processing or correct display for images from this camera.

1. **Download the software.**

   - Connect to the internet from a computer and access the following Canon website.
     https://cam.start.canon/

   Depending on the software, you may need to enter the camera's serial number. The serial number is on the bottom of the camera.

2. **Extract the installer on the computer.**

   For Windows

   - Click the displayed installer file to start the installer.

   For macOS

   - Double-click the dmg file to open the installation window.
   - Double-click the icon in this window to start the installer.

3. **Follow the on-screen instructions to install the software.**

Installing Smartphone Apps

- Always install the latest version.
- Apps can be installed from Google Play or App Store.
- You can also access Google Play and App Store from the following Canon website.
  https://cam.start.canon/

Software Instruction Manuals

Check the following website for software instruction manuals.

- https://cam.start.canon/



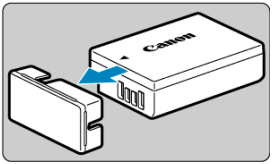
Preparation and Basic Operations

This chapter describes preparatory steps before you start shooting and the basic camera operations.

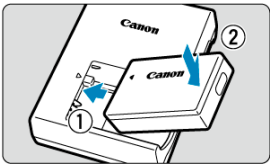
- Charging the Battery
- Inserting/Removing the Battery and Card
- Using the Screen
- Turning on the Power
- Attaching and Detaching RF/RF-S Lenses
- Attaching and Detaching EF/EF-S Lenses
- Multi-Function Shoe
- Using the Viewfinder
- Basic Operations
- Menu Operations and Settings
- Quick Control
- Touch-Screen Operation

Charging the Battery

1. **Detach the protective cover provided with the battery.**



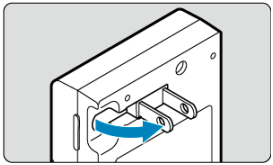
2. **Fully insert the battery into the charger.**



- Do the opposite to remove the battery.

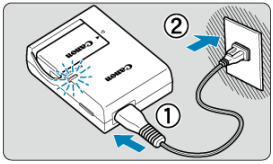
3. Charge the battery.

LC-E17

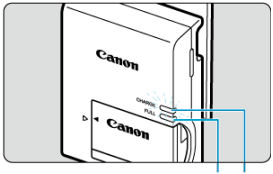


- Flip out the charger prongs as shown and plug the charger into a power outlet.

LC-E17E



- Connect the power cord to the charger and insert the plug into a power outlet.



- Charging starts automatically and the charge lamp (1) lights up in orange.
- When the battery is fully charged, the full-charge lamp (2) will light up in green.
- **Charging a depleted battery takes approx. 2 hr. at room temperature (23°C/73°F).**
  The time required to charge the battery will vary greatly depending on the ambient temperature and the battery's remaining capacity.
- For safety, charging in low temperatures (5–10°C/41–50°F) takes longer (up to approx. 4 hr.).

- **Upon purchase, the battery is not fully charged.**
  Charge the battery before use.

- **Charge the battery on the day before or on the day it is to be used.**
  Charged batteries gradually lose their charge, even when they are not used.

- **After charging the battery, remove it and disconnect the charger from the power outlet.**

- **When not using the camera, remove the battery.**
  If the battery is left in the camera for a prolonged period, a small amount of power current will keep being released, resulting in excess discharge and shorter battery life. Store the battery with the protective cover attached. Storing the battery when it is fully charged may lower the battery performance.

- **The battery charger can also be used in foreign countries.**
  The battery charger is compatible with a 100 V AC to 240 V AC 50/60 Hz power source. If necessary, attach a commercially available plug adapter for the respective country or region. Do not attach any portable voltage transformer to the battery charger. Doing so may damage the battery charger.

- **If the battery becomes exhausted quickly even after having been fully charged, the battery has reached the end of its service life.**
  Check the battery's recharge performance (🔗) and purchase a new battery.

Caution

- After disconnecting the charger's power plug, do not touch the prongs for approx. 5 sec.
- The provided charger cannot charge any battery other than Battery Pack LP-E17.

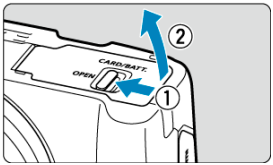
Inserting/Removing the Battery and Card

- Insertion
- Formatting the Card
- Removal

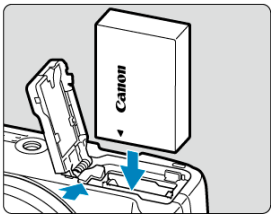
Insert a fully charged Battery Pack LP-E17 and card in the camera. The captured images are recorded onto the card.

Insertion

1. **Slide the card/battery compartment cover lock and open the cover.**

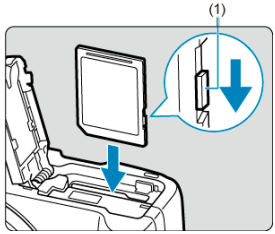


2. **Insert the battery.**



- Insert the end with the electrical contacts.
- Insert the battery until it locks in place.

3. Insert the card.

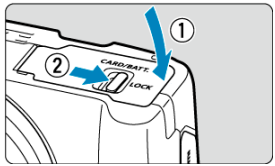


- Insert the card with the label facing the front of the camera until it clicks into place.

Caution

- **Make sure the card's write-protect switch (1) is set upward to enable writing and erasing.**

4. Close the cover.



- Press the cover closed, then slide the card/battery compartment cover lock to lock it.

Caution

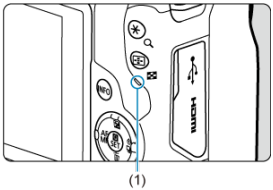
- You cannot use batteries other than the Battery Pack LP-E17.

Formatting the Card

If the card is new or was previously formatted (initialized) by another camera or computer, format the card with this camera ( ).

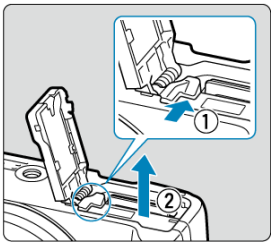
Removal

1. **Slide the card/battery compartment cover lock and open the cover.**



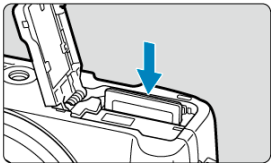
- Set the power switch to < OFF >.
- **Make sure the access lamp (1) is off before opening the card/ battery compartment cover.**
- If [**Saving...**] is displayed on the screen, close the cover.

2. **Removing the battery.**

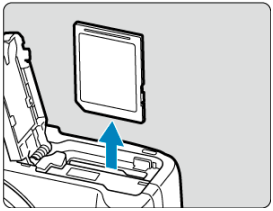


- Press the battery lock lever as shown by the arrow and remove the battery.
- To prevent short-circuits, always attach the included protective cover ( ) to the battery.

3. **Remove the card.**



- Gently push in the card, then let it go to eject.



- Pull the card straight out, then close the cover.

Caution

Do not remove cards immediately after a red [ ] icon is displayed as you are shooting. Cards may be hot, due to high internal camera temperature. Set the power switch to < OFF > and stop shooting for a while before removing cards. Removing hot cards immediately after shooting may cause you to drop and damage them. Be careful when removing cards.

Note

- The number of shots available varies depending on remaining card capacity and settings such as image quality and ISO speed.
- Setting [: **Release shutter without card**] to [**Disable**] will prevent you from forgetting to insert a card ( ).

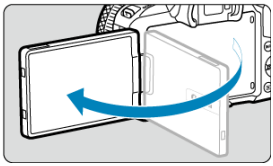
Caution

- **When the access lamp is lit or blinking, it indicates that images are being written to, read from, or erased from the card, or data is being transferred. Do not open the card/battery compartment cover. To avoid corrupting image data or damaging cards or the camera, never do any of the following while the access lamp is lit or blinking.**
  - **Removing the card.**
  - **Removing the battery.**
  - **Shaking or striking the camera.**
  - **Unplugging or plugging in a power cord**
    (when using optional household power outlet accessories).
- If the card already contains recorded images, the image number may not start from 0001 ( ).
- If a card-related error message is displayed on the screen, remove and reinsert the card. If the error persists, use a different card.
  If you can transfer images on the card to a computer, transfer all the images and then format the card with the camera ( ). The card may then return to normal.
- Do not touch the card's contacts with your fingers or metal objects. Do not expose the contacts to dust or water. If smudges adhere to the contacts, contact failure may result.
- Multimedia cards (MMC) cannot be used. (Card error will be displayed.)

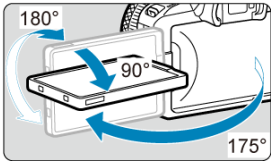
Using the Screen

You can change the direction and angle of the screen.

1. **Flip out the screen.**

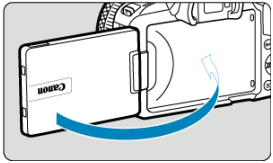


2. **Rotate the screen.**



- When the screen is out, you can tilt it up or down or rotate it to face the subject.
- Indicated angles are only approximate.

3. **Face it toward you.**



- Normally, use the camera with the screen facing you.

Caution

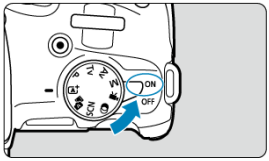
- Avoid forcing the screen into position as you rotate it, which puts undue pressure on the hinge.
- When a cable is connected to a camera terminal, the rotation angle range of the flipped-out screen will be limited.

Note

- Keep the screen closed and facing the camera body when the camera is not in use. You can protect the screen.
- A mirror image (right/left reversed) of subjects is displayed when the screen faces subjects in front of the camera.

Turning on the Power

- Setting the Display Language
- Setting the Date, Time, and Time Zone
- Setting a Password
- Connecting the Camera to a Smartphone
- Battery Level Indicator



- <ON>
  The camera turns on. You can now shoot still photos and record movies.

- <OFF>
  The camera is turned off and does not function. Set the power switch to this position when not using the camera.

Note

- If you set the power switch to <OFF> while an image is being recorded to the card, [**Saving...**] will be displayed and the power will turn off after the recording finishes.

Setting the Display Language

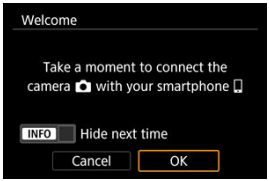
Set the Language if the [**Language**] setting screen appears after you turn on the camera.

Setting the Date, Time, and Time Zone

Set the Date/Time/Zone if the [**Date/Time/Zone**] setting screen appears.

Connecting the Camera to a Smartphone

Instructions for connecting to a smartphone are displayed if you select [**OK**] when the setup screen appears ( ).



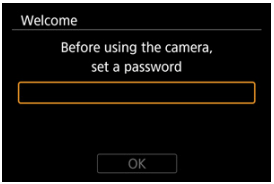
Setting a Password

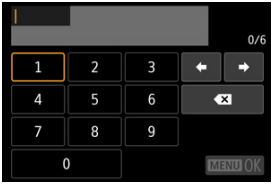
To prevent unauthorized access to information on the camera, set a camera password.

Caution

- Setting a password does not protect images or other data on cards.
- Canon cannot be held liable for theft involving the camera or cards.
- If you select [**Do not ask again**], be careful not to allow third-party access to data or information on the camera, such as in the settings.

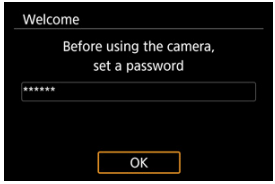
1. **Set the password.**



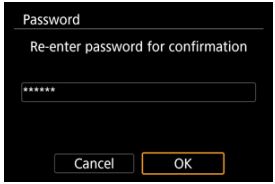


- Enter a six-digit number, then select [**OK**].

2. **Select [OK].**

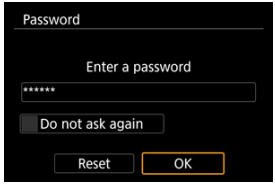


3. **Reenter the password.**



- Select [**OK**] to set the password.

The [**Password**] screen is displayed when the power switch is set to < ON > or the camera resumes operation from auto power off. Enter the password you set.



- [**Do not ask again**]: Select if you prefer not to have the screen displayed again.
- [**Reset**]: Select to reset the camera to defaults and remove the password.

Caution

- Until you enter the password, these connections are not available while the password screen is displayed.
  - USB connection
  - Wi-Fi connection
  - Bluetooth connection
- Select [**Do not ask again**] on the password screen in these situations.
  - When using Bluetooth connections with the power switch set to < OFF > or during auto power off
  - When automatically uploading images to image.canon

Note

- For details on operations such as changing the password, see Password Management.

Battery Level Indicator

When the power switch is set to < ON >, the battery level will be indicated.



	Battery level is sufficient.
	Battery level is low, but the camera can still be used.
	Battery will be exhausted soon (blinks).
	Charge the battery.

Note

- Doing any of the following will exhaust the battery faster:
  - Pressing the shutter button halfway for a prolonged period.
  - Activating the AF frequently without taking a picture.
  - Using Image Stabilizer.
  - Using the Wi-Fi function or Bluetooth function.
  - Using the screen frequently.
  - Using accessories compatible with the multi-function shoe.
- The number of available shots may decrease depending on the actual shooting conditions.
- Lens operations are powered by the camera's battery. Certain lenses may exhaust the battery faster than others.
- See [: **Battery info.**] to check the battery status ( ).
- In low ambient temperatures, shooting may not be possible even with a sufficient battery level.

Attaching and Detaching RF/RF-S Lenses

Attaching a Lens

Detaching a Lens

Caution

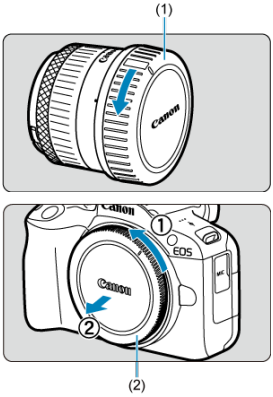
- Do not look at the sun directly through any lens. Doing so may cause loss of vision.
- When attaching or detaching a lens, set the camera's power switch to < OFF >.
- If the front part (focusing ring) of the lens rotates during autofocusing, do not touch the rotating part.

Tips for avoiding smudges and dust

- When changing lenses, do it quickly in a place with minimal dust.
- When storing the camera without a lens attached, be sure to attach the body cap to the camera.
- Remove smudges and dust on the body cap before attaching it.

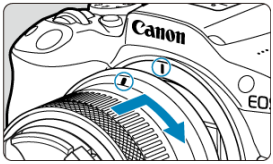
Attaching a Lens

1. **Remove the caps.**



- Remove the rear lens cap (1) and body cap (2) by turning them as shown by the arrows.

2. **Attach the lens.**

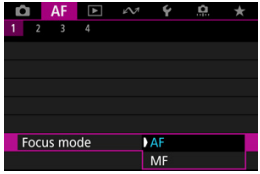


- Align the red mount index on the lens with the red mount index on the camera and turn the lens as shown by the arrow until it clicks in place.

3. **Set the focus mode to < AF >.**

- < AF > stands for autofocus.
- < MF > stands for manual focus. Autofocus is disabled.

- **For RF lenses without a focus mode switch**
  Set [**AF**: **Focus mode**] to [**AF**].

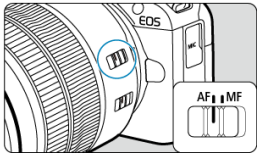


Note

- You can also select [**AF**] or [**MF**] by pressing the < ◀ > key when the shooting screen is displayed.
- Not available in < A+ > or < SCN > mode.

- **For RF lenses with a focus mode switch**

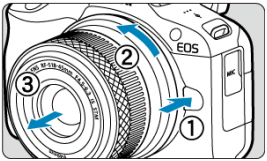
  Set the lens focus mode switch to < AF >. Because the setting on the lens takes precedence, the camera setting has no effect.



4. **Remove the front lens cap.**

Detaching a Lens

While pressing the lens release button, turn the lens as shown by the arrow.



- Turn the lens until it stops, then detach it.
- Attach the rear lens cap to the lens you removed.

Attaching and Detaching EF/EF-S Lenses

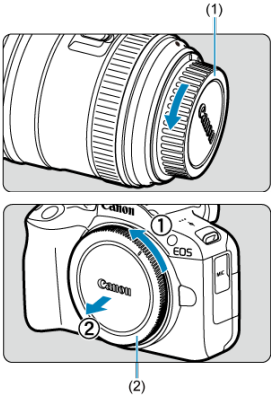
Attaching a Lens

Detaching a Lens

All EF and EF-S lenses can be used by attaching an optional Mount Adapter EF-EOS R.
The camera cannot be used with EF-M lenses.

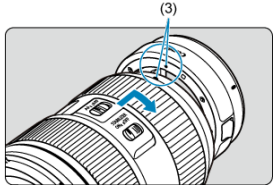
Attaching a Lens

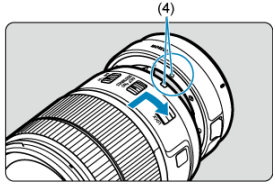
1. **Remove the caps.**



- Remove the rear lens cap (1) and body cap (2) by turning them as shown by the arrows.

2. Attach the lens to the adapter.



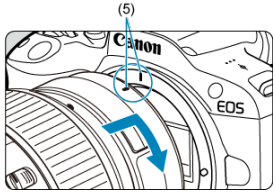


- Align the red or white mount index on the lens with the corresponding mount index on the adapter and turn the lens as shown by the arrow until it clicks into place.

(3) Red index

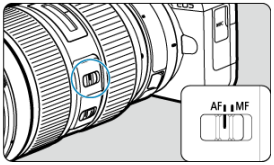
(4) White index

3. Attach the adapter to the camera.



- Align the red mount indexes (5) on the adapter and camera and turn the lens as shown by the arrow until it clicks into place.

4. **Set the lens's focus mode switch to <AF>.**

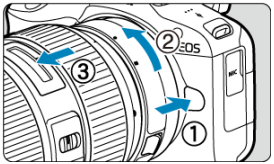


- <AF> stands for autofocus.
- <MF> stands for manual focus. Autofocus is disabled.

5. **Remove the front lens cap.**

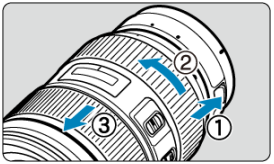
Detaching a Lens

1. **While pressing the lens release button, turn the adapter as shown by the arrow.**



- Turn the lens until it stops, then detach it.

2. **Detach the lens from the adapter.**



- Hold down the lens release lever on the adapter and turn the lens counterclockwise.
- Turn the lens until it stops, then detach it.
- Attach the rear lens cap to the lens you removed.

Caution

- For lens precautions, see Attaching and Detaching RF/RF-S Lenses.

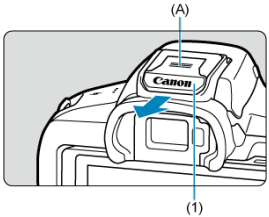
Multi-Function Shoe

Using the Multi-Function Shoe

The multi-function shoe is a hot shoe that supplies power to accessories and offers advanced communication functionality.

Using the Multi-Function Shoe

Removing the shoe cover

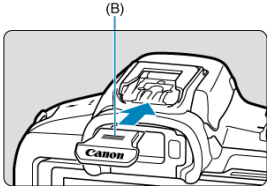


- Remove the shoe cover (1) by pressing the part labeled (A) in the figure as shown with your finger. After removal, keep the shoe cover in a convenient place to avoid losing it.

Attaching accessories

- When attaching accessories that communicate through contacts of the multi-function shoe, insert the accessory's mounting foot until it clicks into place, then slide the mounting foot locking lever to secure it. For details, refer to the accessory's Instruction Manual.
- Use of accessories not designed for a multi-function shoe requires Multi-Function Shoe Adapter AD-E1, sold separately. For details, refer to the Canon website ( ).

Attaching the shoe cover



- After removing accessories from the multi-function shoe, reattach the shoe cover to protect the contacts from dust and water.
- Slide the shoe cover all the way in by pressing the part labeled (B) in the figure, as shown.

Caution

- Attach accessories correctly as described in Attaching accessories. Incorrect attachment may cause the camera or accessories to malfunction, and accessories may fall off.
- Blow off any foreign material on the multi-function shoe with a commercially available blower or similar tool.
- If the multi-function shoe becomes wet, turn off the camera and allow it to dry before use.
- Use the shoe cover included with the camera.

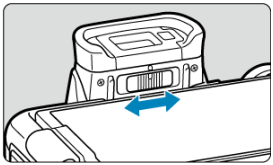
Using the Viewfinder

Dioptric Adjustment

Look through the viewfinder to activate it. You can also restrict display to either the screen or viewfinder ( ).

Dioptric Adjustment

1. **Slide the dioptric adjustment slider.**



- Slide the slider left or right to make the viewfinder display look sharp.

Caution

- The viewfinder and screen cannot be activated at the same time.
- Viewfinder display is disabled when the screen is flipped out, even if you look through the viewfinder.
- At some aspect ratios, black bars are displayed on the top and bottom or left and right edges of the screen. These areas are not recorded.

Basic Operations

- Holding the Camera
- Shutter Button
- < > Dial
- < > Control Ring
- < INFO > Info Button

Holding the Camera

Viewing the screen as you shoot

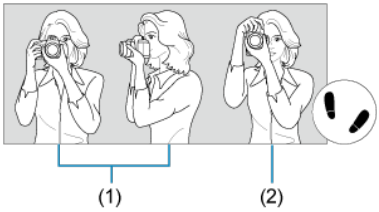
As you shoot, you can tilt the screen to adjust it. For details, see Using the Screen.



(1) Normal angle
(2) Low angle
(3) High angle

Shooting through the viewfinder

To obtain sharp images, hold the camera still to minimize camera shake.



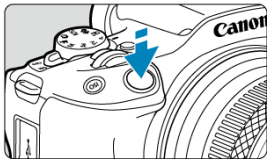
(1) Horizontal shooting
(2) Vertical shooting

1.With your right hand, hold the camera firmly by the camera grip.
2.With your left hand, support the lens from below.
3.Rest your right index finger lightly on the shutter button.
4.Rest your arms and elbows lightly against the front of your body.
5.To maintain a stable stance, place one foot slightly ahead of the other.
6.Hold the camera near your face and look through the viewfinder.

Shutter Button

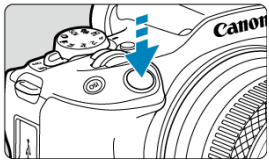
The shutter button has two steps. You can press the shutter button halfway. Then you can further press the shutter button completely.

Pressing halfway



This activates autofocusing and the automatic exposure system that sets the shutter speed and aperture value.
The exposure value (shutter speed and aperture value) is displayed on the screen or in the viewfinder for 8 sec. (metering timer/8).

Pressing completely



This releases the shutter and takes the picture.

Preventing camera shake

Hand-held camera movement during the moment of exposure is called camera shake. It can cause blurred pictures. To prevent camera shake, note the following:

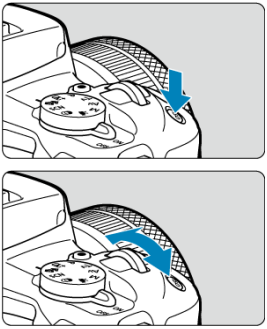
- Hold the camera still, as shown in Holding the Camera.
- Press the shutter button halfway to autofocus, then slowly press the shutter button completely.

Note

- The camera will still pause before taking a picture if you press the shutter button completely without pressing it halfway first, or if you press the shutter button halfway and immediately press it completely.
- Even during menu display or image playback, you can return to shooting standby by pressing the shutter button halfway.

< > Dial

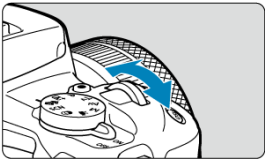
(1) After pressing a button, turn the < > dial.



Press a button such as < ISO >, then turn the < > dial.
If you press the shutter button halfway, the camera will go back to shooting standby.

- Used for operations such as setting the ISO speed.

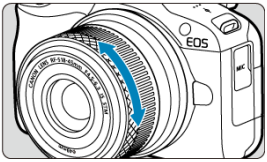
(2) Turn only the < > dial.



While looking at the screen or viewfinder, turn the < > dial.

- Use this dial to set the shutter speed, aperture value, etc.

<◑> Control Ring

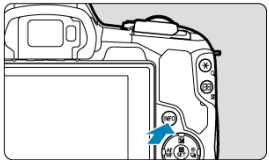


Exposure compensation can be set by turning the control ring of RF lenses or mount adapters while pressing the shutter button halfway in <**P**>, <**Tv**>, <**Av**>, or <**M**> mode. Otherwise, you can assign a different function to the control ring by customizing it in [: **Customize control ring**] ( ).

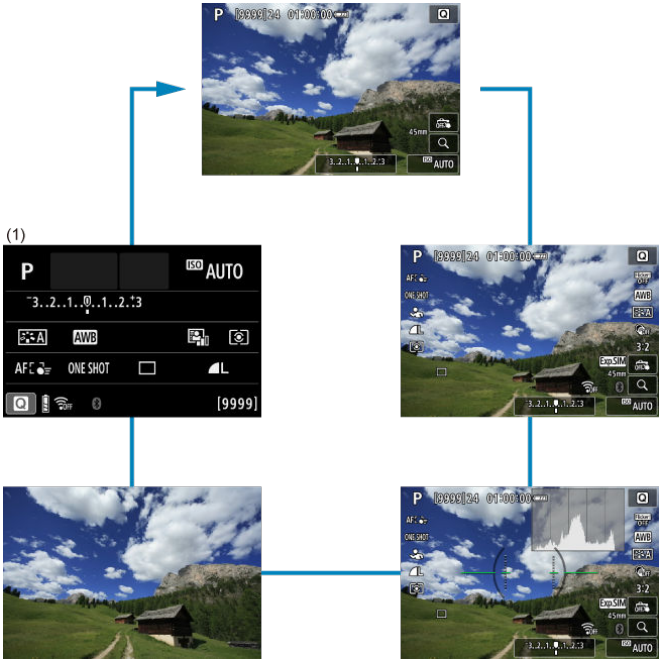
Caution

- [AF: **Focus/control ring**] must be set when using lenses that have a combination focus/control ring but have no switch to switch between these features ( ).

< INFO > Info Button



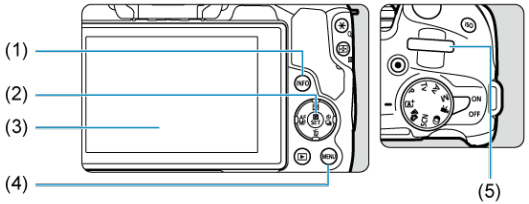
Each press of the < INFO > button changes the information shown.
The following sample screens are for still photos.



* In Basic Zone modes, the screen by (1) is not displayed.

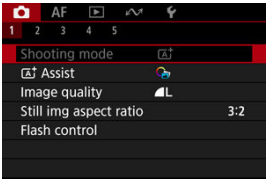
Menu Operations and Settings

- Basic Zone Menu Screen
- Creative Zone Menu Screen
- Menu Setting Procedure
- Dimmed Menu Items



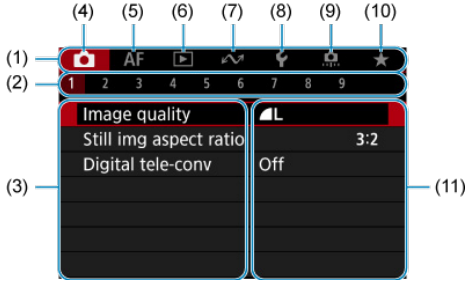
(1)	< INFO > button
(2)	< > button
(3)	Screen
(4)	< MENU > button
(5)	< > Dial

Basic Zone Menu Screen



* In Basic Zone modes, some tabs and menu items are not displayed.

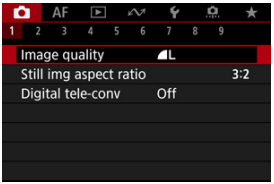
Creative Zone Menu Screen



(1)	Main tabs
(2)	Secondary tabs
(3)	Menu items
(4)	: Shooting
(5)	AF: Autofocus
(6)	: Playback
(7)	: Wireless features
(8)	: Set-up
(9)	: Custom Functions
(10)	★: My Menu
(11)	Menu settings

Menu Setting Procedure

1. **Display the menu screen.**

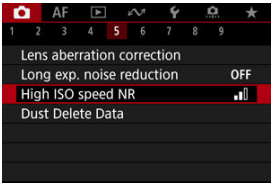


- Press the < MENU > button to display the menu screen.

2. **Select a tab.**

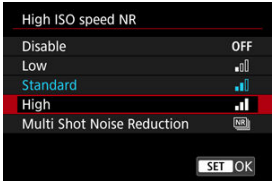
- Press the < INFO > button to switch between main tabs (groups of functions).
- Turn the < > dial to select a secondary tab.

3. **Select an item.**



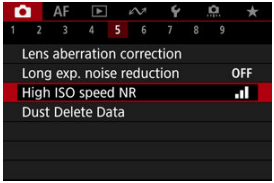
- Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select the setting item, then press the < (SET) > button.

4. Select an option.



- Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select an option (or in some cases, use the < ⚙ > dial or < ◀ >< ▶ > keys).
- The current setting is indicated in blue.

5. Set an option.



- Press the < SET > button to set it.

6. Exit the setting.

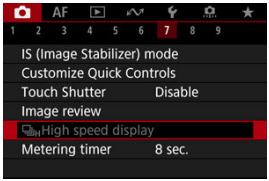
- Press the < MENU > button to return to shooting standby.

Note

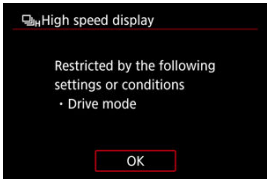
- The description of menu functions hereafter assumes that you have pressed the < MENU > button to display the menu screen.
- Menu operations are also possible by tapping the menu screen.
- To cancel the operation, press the < MENU > button.

Dimmed Menu Items

Example: When set to single shooting drive mode



Dimmed menu items cannot be set. The menu item is dimmed if another function setting is overriding it.



You can see the overriding function by selecting the dimmed menu item and pressing the < (SET) > button.
If you cancel the overriding function's setting, the dimmed menu item will become settable.

Caution

- You may not be able to see the overriding function for certain dimmed menu items.

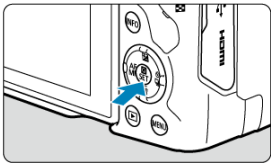
Note

- You can reset menu functions to the default settings by selecting [**Basic settings**] in [: **Reset camera**] ( ).

Quick Control

You can directly and intuitively select and set the settings displayed.

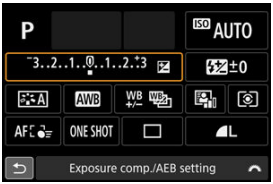
1. **Press the <Q> button (10).**



2. **Select a setting item and set your preferred option.**



- Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select a setting item.
- Turn the < > dial to adjust the setting. Some items are set by pressing a button after this.



- Press the < ✣ > keys to select an item on the screen shown above.
- Turn the < > dial to adjust the setting. Some items are set by pressing a button after this.

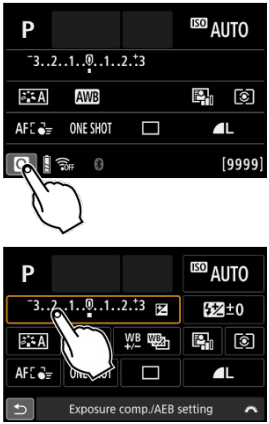
Touch-Screen Operation

Tapping

Dragging

Tapping

Sample screen (Quick Control)



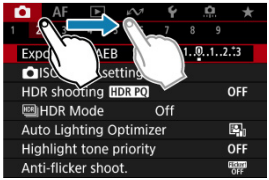
- Use your finger to tap (touch briefly and then remove your finger from) the screen.
- For example, when you tap [Q], the Quick Control screen appears. By tapping [↩], you can return to the preceding screen.

Note

- To have the camera beep for touch operations, set [: **Beep**] to [**Enable**] ( ).
- Responsiveness to touch operations can be adjusted in [: **Touch control**] ( ).

Dragging

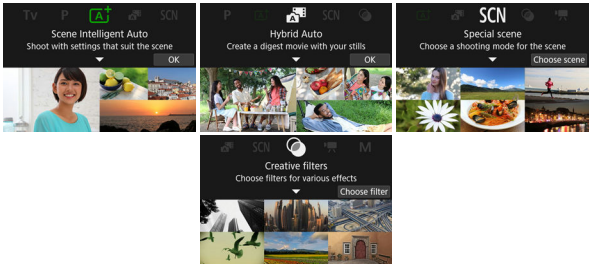
Sample screen (Menu screen)

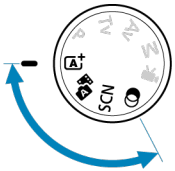


- Slide your finger while touching the screen.

Basic Zone

This chapter describes how to use the Basic Zone modes on the Mode dial for best results. With Basic Zone modes, all you do is point and shoot, and the camera sets everything automatically.





- A+: Fully Automatic Shooting (Scene Intelligent Auto)
  - A+: Assist Features
- Hybrid Auto

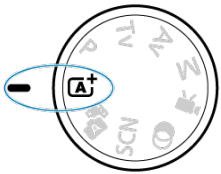
- Special Scene Mode
  - Self Portrait Mode
  - Portrait Mode
  - Smooth Skin Mode
  - Group Photo Mode
  - Landscape Mode
  - Panoramic Shot Mode
  - Sports Mode
  - Kids Mode
  - Panning Mode
  - Close-up Mode
  - Food Mode
  - Handheld Night Scene Mode
  - HDR Backlight Control Mode
  - Silent Shutter Mode
- Creative Filters Mode

A+: Fully Automatic Shooting (Scene Intelligent Auto)

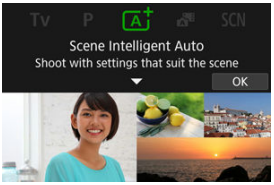
- Shooting Moving Subjects
- Scene Icons
- Adjusting Settings

< A+ > is a fully automatic mode. The camera analyzes the scene and sets the optimum settings automatically. It can also adjust focus automatically on either the still or moving subject by detecting the motion of the subject ( ).

1. **Set the Mode dial to < A+ >.**



2. **Press the < SET > button.**



- Read the message and select [**OK**].

3. **Select an Assist feature.**



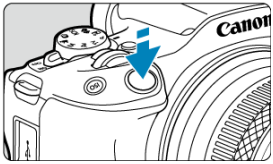
- Tap [ ] to access the selection screen ( ).

4. **Aim the camera at what you will shoot (the subject).**



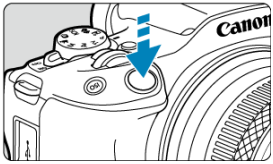
- An AF point (1) may be displayed on the subject, under some shooting conditions.
- When an AF point is displayed on the screen, aim it over the subject.

5. Focus on the subject.



- Press the shutter button halfway to focus.
  If [⚡] blinks, manually raise the built-in flash.
- You can also focus by tapping a person's face or other subject on the screen (Touch AF).
- Under low light, the AF-assist beam ( ) is automatically activated if needed.
- Once the subject is in focus, that AF point turns green and the camera beeps (One-Shot AF).
- An AF point in focus on a moving subject turns blue and tracks subject movement (Servo AF).

6. Take the picture.



- Press the shutter button completely to take the picture.
- The image just captured will be displayed for approx. 2 sec. on the screen.
- To retract the built-in flash, push it down with your fingers.

Caution

- Subject movement (whether subjects are still or moving) may not be detected correctly for some subject or shooting conditions.

Note

- AF operation (One-Shot AF or Servo AF) is set automatically when you press the shutter button halfway. Even when automatically set to One-Shot AF, the camera will switch to Servo AF if subject motion is detected while you are pressing the shutter button halfway.
- The < A+ > mode makes the colors look more impressive in nature, outdoor, and sunset scenes. If you do not obtain the desired color tones, change the mode to a Creative Zone mode (🔗) and select a Picture Style other than [ ], then shoot again (🔗).

Minimizing blurred photos

- Be careful about camera shake in handheld shots. To avoid camera shake, consider using a tripod. Use a sturdy tripod that can bear the weight of the shooting equipment. Attach the camera securely to the tripod.
- Using a wireless remote control (sold separately, 🔗) is recommended.

? FAQ

- **Focusing is not possible (indicated by an orange AF point).**
  Aim the AF point over an area with good contrast, then press the shutter button halfway (). If you are too close to the subject, move away and shoot again.

- **Multiple AF points are displayed simultaneously.**
  Focus has been achieved at all those points.

- **The shutter speed display is blinking.**
  Since it is too dark, taking the picture may result in a blurred subject due to camera shake. Using a tripod, the built-in flash, or an external flash () is recommended.

- **Pictures are too dark.**
  Raise the built-in flash in advance to enable automatic flash firing, in case subjects in daytime shots are backlit, or when shooting under low light.

- **Pictures taken with flash are too bright.**
  Pictures may be bright (overexposed) if you shoot subjects at close range in flash photography. Move away from the subject and shoot again.

- **The bottom part of pictures taken with flash is unnaturally dark.**
  Shooting subjects that are too close may make the shadow of the lens visible in your shots. Move away from the subject and shoot again. If you are using a lens hood, try removing it before shooting.

Note

- Note the following if you are not using the built-in flash.
  - Under low light, when camera shake tends to occur, hold the camera steady or use a tripod. When using a zoom lens, you can reduce the blur caused by camera shake by setting the lens to the wide-angle end.
  - When shooting portraits under low light, tell subjects to stay still until you have finished shooting. Any movement as you shoot will make the person look blurry in the picture.

Shooting Moving Subjects



Pressing the shutter button halfway tracks moving subjects to keep them in focus.
Keep the subject on the screen as you hold down the shutter button halfway, and at the decisive moment, press the shutter button completely.

Scene Icons



The camera detects the scene type and sets everything automatically to suit the scene. An icon representing the detected scene appears in the upper left of the screen ( ) in still photo shooting, or when you press the movie shooting button to record a movie with the Mode dial set to < >.

Adjusting Settings



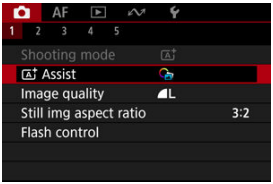
By tapping icons on the screen, you can adjust settings for image quality, Touch Shutter, Assist, and Creative Assist.

A+: Assist Features

- Selecting Assist Features
- Creative Assist
- Creative Bracketing
- Advanced

Selecting Assist Features

1. **Select [: Assist].**



2. **Select an option.**



Note

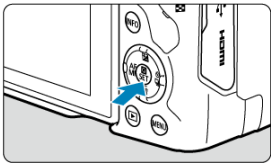
- From the shooting screen, you can access the selection screen directly by tapping [ ] ( ).

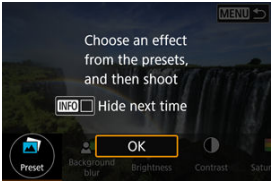


Creative Assist

You can shoot with your preferred effects applied.

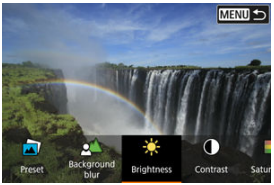
1. **Press the <Q> button.**





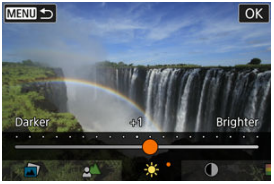
- Read the message and select [**OK**].

2. **Select an effect.**



- Use the <dial> dial to select an effect, then press the <Q> button.

3. **Select the effect level and other details.**



- Set with the < > dial, then press the < > button.
- To reset the setting, press the < > button, then select [**OK**].

Creative Assist effects

- **[ ] Preset**
  Select one of the preset effects.
  Note that [**Saturation**], [**Color tone 1**], and [**Color tone 2**] are not available with [**B&W**].

- **[ ] Background blur**
  Adjust background blur. Choose higher values to make backgrounds sharper. To blur the background, choose lower values. [**Auto**] adjusts background blurring to match the brightness. Depending on lens brightness (f/number), some positions may not be available.

- **[ ] Brightness**
  Adjust image brightness.

- **[ ] Contrast**
  Adjust contrast.

- **[ ] Saturation**
  Adjust the vividness of colors.

- **[ ] Color tone 1**
  Adjust amber/blue color tone.

- **[ ] Color tone 2**
  Adjust green/magenta color tone.

- **[ ] Monochrome**
  Set the toning effect for monochrome shooting.

Note

- [**Background blur**] is not available in flash photography.
- These settings are reset when you switch shooting modes or set the power switch to < OFF >. To save the settings, set [: **Retain Creative Assist data**] to [**Enable**].

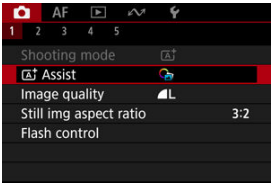
Saving effects

To save the current setting to the camera, tap [INFO. **Register**] on the [**Creative Assist**] setting screen, then select [**OK**]. Up to three presets can be saved as [**USER***]. After three have been saved, an existing [**USER***] preset must be overwritten to save a new one.

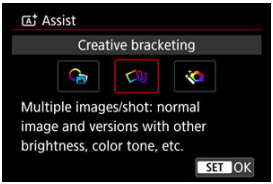
Creative Bracketing

Multiple images are captured per shot besides the normal image, each with characteristics such as brightness and color tone automatically changed.

1. **Select [: Assist].**



2. **Select [Creative bracketing].**



Note

- Index display makes it easier to review the captured images on the camera ( ).

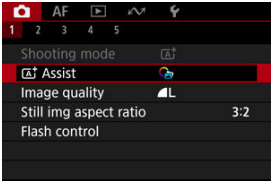
Caution

- Continuous shooting is not available.

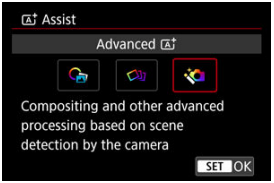
Advanced

Compositing and other advanced processing is applied to your shots based on scene detection by the camera.

1. **Select [: Assist].**

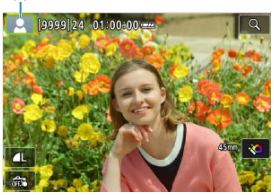


2. **Select [Advanced].**



3. Check the icon.

(1)



- Blinking scene icon (1): Multiple images are captured per shot and merged into a single image. In this case, only the composite image is saved.
- Normal scene icon display: Shooting with < A+ > settings ( ).

Caution

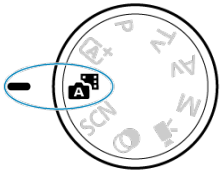
- Continuous shooting is not available.
- The camera shoots in **[Electronic]** shutter mode.
- The image area is smaller than in other shooting modes.
- RAW image quality cannot be set.
- Flash photography is not available.
- Images that are greatly out of alignment due to camera shake or other issues may not be aligned correctly.
- To prevent camera shake, the camera may set a high ISO speed.
- Note that the image may not be rendered with a smooth gradation and may look uneven or noisy.
- The image processing may not be sufficient in scenes with strong backlighting or high contrast.
- Shooting moving subjects may result in afterimages from the movement, or darkness around the subject.
- Images may not be aligned correctly if they are patterned (with a lattice or stripes, for example), are generally flat and uniform, or are greatly out of alignment due to camera shake or other issues.
- Be careful about camera shake in handheld shots.
- Shooting under fluorescent or LED lighting may cause issues such as irregular exposure or colors in the resulting images, due to the flickering light source.
- **[BUSY]** appears on the screen as images are processed, and shooting is not possible until processing is finished.
- Shots will look slightly different from the preview image shown on the screen.
- AF point display information is not added to images in some scenes. ( )

Hybrid Auto

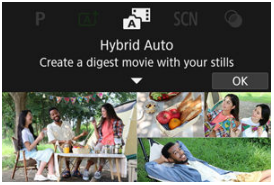
Type of Digest Movie

With < > mode, you can make a short movie of the day just by shooting still photos. The camera records approx. 2–4-second clips of scenes before each shot, which are later combined in a digest movie.

1. **Set the Mode dial to < >.**



2. **Press the < > button.**



- Compose your shots and shoot.

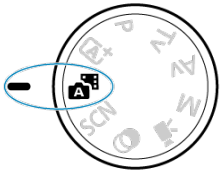
Note

- For more impressive digest movies, keep the camera aimed at subjects for about 4 sec. before shooting still photos.
- Battery life is shorter in this mode than in < > mode, because digest movies are recorded for each shot.
- A digest movie may not be recorded if you shoot a still photo immediately after turning the camera on, selecting < > mode, or operating the camera in other ways.
- Any sounds and vibrations from your camera or lens operations will be recorded in digest movies.
- Digest movie image quality is [FHD 29.97P ALL-I] for NTSC or [FHD 25.00P ALL-I] for PAL. This varies depending on the video system setting.
- The camera does not beep in response to operations such as pressing the shutter button halfway or using the self-timer.
- Digest movies are saved as separate movie files in the following cases even if they were recorded on the same day in < > mode.
  - The digest movie file size exceeds 4 GB (when recording to cards that are not exFAT-formatted)
  - Changes are made to date, time zone, video system, or daylight saving time settings, or the card is switched
  - The digest movie file intended for additional recording is protected
  - Author or copyright information of the digest movie file intended for additional recording differs from that set on the camera
- Recorded shutter sounds cannot be modified or erased.
- When using EOS Utility to shoot, set [**Image saving location**] in EOS Utility to [**Computer and camera memory card**] or [**Camera memory card only**].

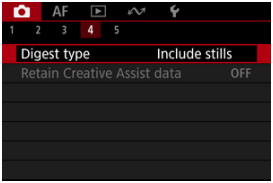
Type of Digest Movie

Both still photos and clips are captured when you shoot in < > mode, but you can specify whether to include the still photos in the resulting digest movie.

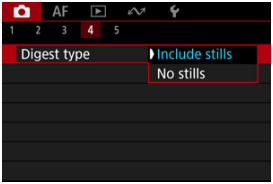
1. **Set the Mode dial to < >.**



2. **Select [: Digest type].**



3. **Select an option.**



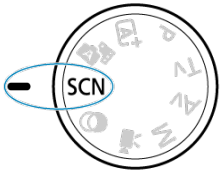
- **Include stills**
  Digest movies include still photos.

- **No stills**
  Digest movies do not include still photos.

Special Scene Mode

The camera will automatically choose the appropriate settings when you select a shooting mode for your subject or scene.
* < SCN > stands for Special Scene.

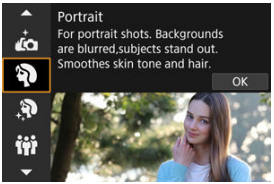
1. **Set the Mode dial to < SCN >.**



2. **Press the < (SET) > button.**

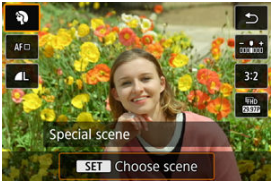


3. **Select a shooting mode.**



- Use the < ◌ > dial to select a shooting mode, then press the < (SET) > button.

4. Review the settings.



- Press the < (SET) > button to display the Quick Control screen.

Note

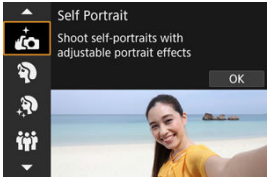
- You can also set the shooting mode in [📷: **Shooting mode**].
- When [: **Mode guide**] is set to [**Disable**], after step 1, press the < (SET) > button to access the Quick Control screen, use the < > dial to select a shooting mode, then press the < (SET) > button.

Available Shooting Modes in <SCN> Mode

Shooting Mode			
	Self Portrait		Kids
	Portrait		Panning
	Smooth skin		Close-up
	Group Photo		Food
	Landscape		Handheld Night Scene
	Panoramic shot		HDR Backlight Control
	Sports		Silent shutter

Self Portrait Mode

To take shots that include yourself, use [] (Self Portrait) mode. Rotate the screen around toward the lens. Customizable image processing includes skin smoothing as well as brightness and background adjustment to make yourself stand out.



Shooting tips

- **Set the brightness and smooth skin effect.**
  [**Brightness**] and [**Smooth skin effect**] can be set in a range of five levels. In [**Background**], you can adjust the level of background blurring.

- **Tap the screen to shoot.**
  Besides pressing the shutter button completely to shoot, you can also shoot by tapping the screen, once you enable Touch Shutter by tapping [] to change it to [] ().

Caution

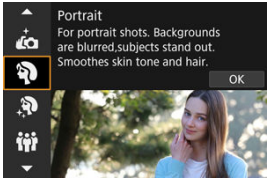
- After the camera achieves focus, do not change the distance between you and the camera until the picture is taken.
- Be careful not to drop the camera.

Note

- The self-timer lamp () does not blink when the screen is facing toward the front of the camera in [**Self Portrait**] mode.
- You can also take shots of yourself in shooting modes other than [**Self Portrait**] (except [**Silent shutter**]) by rotating the screen toward the front and tapping [] in the lower left.

Portrait Mode

Use [] (Portrait) mode to blur the background and make the person you shoot stand out. It also makes skin tones and hair look softer.



Shooting tips

- **Select the location where the distance between the subject and the background is the farthest.**
  The further the distance between the subject and background, the more blurred the background will look. The subject will also stand out better against an uncluttered dark background.

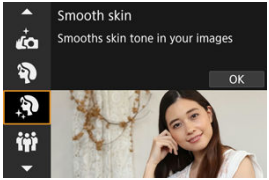
- **Use a telephoto lens.**
  If you have a zoom lens, use the telephoto end to fill the frame with the subject from the waist up.

- **Focus on the face.**
  As you focus before shooting, make sure the AF point on the subject's face is green. When shooting close-ups of faces, you can set [**AF**: **Eye detection**] to [**Enable**] to shoot with the subject's eyes in focus.

- **Shoot continuously.**
  The default setting is [] (Low speed continuous). If you keep holding down the shutter button, you can shoot continuously to capture changes in the subject's facial expression and pose.

Smooth Skin Mode

Use [] (Smooth skin) mode to make skin look more attractive. Image processing makes skin look smoother.



Shooting tips

- **Enable the camera to detect faces.**
  Frames are displayed around any main subjects detected for skin smoothing. For more effective skin smoothing, you can move closer to or farther from the subject so that the frame is displayed on the subject's face.

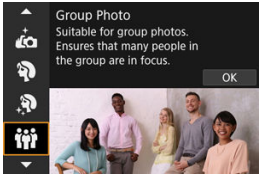
- **Focus on the face.**
  As you focus before shooting, make sure the AF point on the subject's face is green. When shooting close-ups of faces, you can set [**AF**: **Eye detection**] to [**Enable**] to shoot with the subject's eyes in focus.

Caution

- Areas other than people's skin may be modified, depending on the shooting conditions.

Group Photo Mode

Use [👪] (Group Photo) mode to take group photos. You can shoot with people from the front to the back all in focus.





Shooting tips

- **Use a wide-angle lens.**
  With zoom lenses, zooming out near the wide-angle end makes it easier to focus on everyone in front and back at once. You can also increase the depth of field by standing a little farther away from subjects, so that they fit completely in the frame.
- **Take a few shots of the group.**
  It is a good idea to take a few shots, because people sometimes blink.

Note

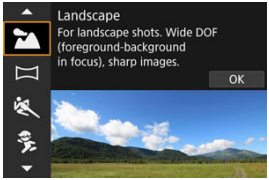
- Hold the camera steady or use a tripod when shooting indoors or under low light.

Caution

- The angle of view changes slightly, due to distortion correction.
- Not all people may be in focus, depending on shooting conditions.

Landscape Mode

Use [🏞] (Landscape) mode for expansive scenery, to keep everything in focus from near to far. For vivid blues and greens, and sharp and crisp images.



Shooting tips

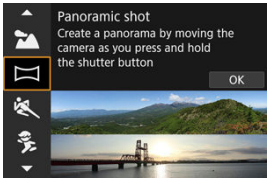
- **With a zoom lens, use the wide-angle end.**
  When using a zoom lens, set the lens to the wide-angle end to make the objects near and far in focus. It also adds breadth to landscapes.
- **Keep the camera steady when shooting night scenes.**
  Using a tripod is recommended.

Caution

- Flash photography is not available.

Panoramic Shot Mode

Use [▭] (Panoramic Shot) mode to shoot panoramas. The panorama is created by combining shots captured in continuous shooting as you move the camera in one direction while pressing the shutter button completely.



1. **Choose a shooting direction.**

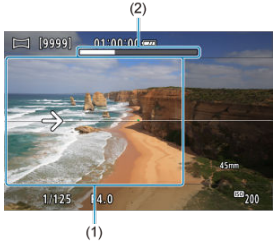


- Press the < [⊹] > button or tap [📷⊹] in the lower right to choose the direction you will shoot.
- An arrow is displayed showing the direction to move the camera.

2. **Press the shutter button halfway.**

- Keeping the shutter button pressed halfway, focus on the subject.

3. Shoot.



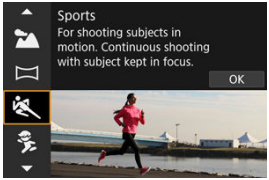
- Press the shutter button completely and move the camera at a constant speed in the direction of the arrow.
- The area displayed clearly (1) is captured.
- A shooting progress indicator (2) is displayed.
- Shooting stops when you release the shutter button, or when all of the progress indicator is white.

Caution

- For details on lenses that can counteract blur from swinging the camera, visit the Canon website ( ).
- In some scenes, images you intended to capture may not be saved as expected, and the panorama may not look as expected.
- Shooting may stop midway if you move the camera too slowly or quickly. However, the panorama created up to that point will still be saved.
- In consideration of the large sizes of < > mode images, use a computer or other device to reduce panorama images if you will print them from a memory card inserted in a Canon printer.
  If panoramas cannot be managed correctly by software or Web services, try resizing them on a computer.
- Shots of the following subjects and scenes may not be combined correctly.
  - Subjects in motion
  - Subjects at close range
  - Scenes where the contrast varies greatly
  - Scenes with long stretches of the same color or pattern, such as the sea or sky
- Shooting is not affected by any correction applied to counteract blur from swinging the camera.
- Move the camera slowly when using a lens with a long focal length, or when shooting night scenes or under low light.

Sports Mode

Use [🏃] (Sports) mode to shoot subjects in motion, such as runners or moving vehicles.



Shooting tips

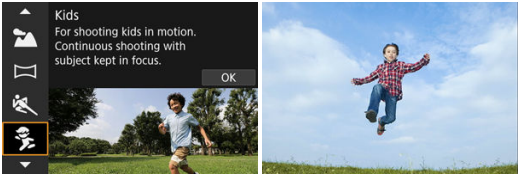
- **Use a telephoto lens.**
  Use of a telephoto lens is recommended to enable shooting from a distance.
- **Track the subject with the Area AF frame.**
  An Area AF frame appears after you press the shutter button halfway. Once the subject is in focus, the AF point turns blue.
- **Shoot continuously.**
  The default setting is [□ᵢH] (High speed continuous). At the decisive moment, press the shutter button completely to take the picture. To track the subject and capture changes as it moves, keep holding down the shutter button to shoot continuously.

Caution

- Under low light where camera shake tends to occur, the shutter speed value in the lower left will blink. Hold the camera steady and shoot.
- Flash photography is not available.

Kids Mode

Use [🏃] (Kids) mode to capture active children who are moving around. Skin tones will look vibrant.





(1)

Shooting tips

- **Track the subject with the Area AF frame.**

  By default, [AF: **AF area**] is set to [**Whole area AF**]. Area AF frames (1) appear when you press the shutter button halfway. Once the subject is in focus, the AF point turns blue.

- **Shoot continuously.**

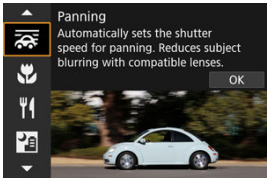
  The default setting is [H] (High speed continuous). At the decisive moment, press the shutter button completely to take the picture. To track the subject and capture changes in facial expression and movement, keep holding down the shutter button to shoot continuously.

Caution

- Using an external flash unit will reduce the continuous shooting speed.

Panning Mode

By panning, you can blur the background to convey a sense of speed.
Attach a lens compatible with [] (Panning) mode to reduce subject blurring and keep subjects clear and sharp.

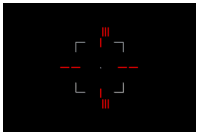
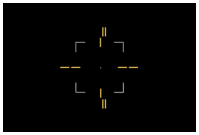
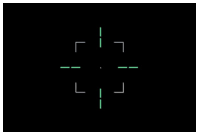
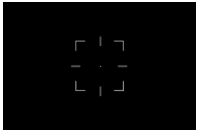


Shooting tips

- **Turn the camera to follow the moving subject.**
  As you shoot, turn the camera smoothly while tracking the moving subject. With the AF point over the part of the moving subject to focus on, press the shutter button halfway, start turning the camera to keep up with the subject, then press the shutter button completely to shoot. Continue tracking the subject with the camera after this.

- **Set the level of background motion blur.**
  In [**Effect**], you can set the level of background motion blur. Set to [**Effect: max**] for a slower shutter speed and more background motion blur around subjects. If subject blur is excessive, reduce it by setting [**Effect**] to [**Effect: med**] or [**Effect: min**].

- **Use the subject blur guide.**
  Set [**Subject blur guide**] to [**On**] to display a guide indicating the extent of subject blur detected while you are pressing the shutter button halfway, or while you are shooting continuously as you turn the camera.
  The guide consists of gray lines and color-coded lines that vary from red to yellow to green, in order of decreasing blurriness.
  You can set the distance between the subject blur guide and the AF point in [**Guide position**].

Note

- The guide appears when a tracking frame is displayed while [AF: **Whole area tracking Servo AF**] is set to [**On**].
- Only the gray lines are shown when the shutter button is not pressed.

Caution

- Dust may be more noticeable in images, because it is easier to stop down the aperture. Consider acquiring Dust Delete Data before shooting. ( )
- For details on lenses compatible with [ ] mode, visit the Canon website ( ).
- Shutter speeds are slower. For this reason, Panning mode is not suitable unless you pan as you shoot.
- AF area options are limited to [**1-point AF**], [**Flexible Zone AF 1**], [**Flexible Zone AF 2**], and [**Flexible Zone AF 3**].
- The default setting is [ ]. Note that [ ] and [ ] are not available.
- Flash photography is not available.
- Although lens IS is applied to images captured with lenses supporting [ ] mode, the effect is not shown on the screen as you shoot. (IS and subject blur correction are activated when you shoot, regardless of the lens IS setting.)
- With lenses that do not support [ ] mode, subject blur is not reduced, but shutter speed is automatically adjusted to match the [**Effect**] setting.
- Your specified panning effect level may not be applied when shooting under bright light (such as on sunny summer days), or when shooting slow subjects.
- The following subjects or shooting conditions may prevent subject blur guide display and suitable subject blur correction with lenses supporting [ ] mode.
  - Subjects with very low contrast.
  - Subjects in low light.
  - Strongly backlit or reflective subjects.
  - Subjects with repetitive patterns.
  - Subjects with few patterns, or with monotone patterns.
  - Subjects with reflections (such as images reflected in glass).
  - Subjects smaller than the Zone AF frame.
  - Multiple subjects moving within a Zone AF frame.
  - Subjects moving in irregular directions or at irregular speeds.
  - Subjects who sometimes move erratically (such as runners who move up and down as they run).
  - Subjects whose speed changes greatly (such as immediately after initial movement, or when moving along a curve).
  - When the camera moves too quickly or slowly.
  - When camera movement does not match subject movement.
  - With long lens focal lengths.

Close-up Mode

Use [🌷] (Close-up) mode for close-ups of small subjects such as flowers. To make small things appear much larger, use a macro lens (sold separately).

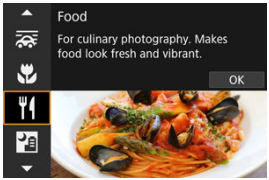


Shooting tips

- **Use a simple background.**
  A simple background makes small objects such as flowers stand out better.
- **Move in as close as possible to the subject.**
  Check the lens for its minimum focusing distance. The lens minimum focusing distance is measured from the < ⊖ > (focal plane) mark on the top of the camera to the subject. Focusing is not possible if you are too close.
- **With a zoom lens, use the telephoto end.**
  If you have a zoom lens, using the telephoto end will make the subject look larger.
- **When [⚡] blinks**
  Manually raise the built-in flash.

Food Mode

Use [🍴] (Food) mode for culinary photography. The photo will look bright and appetizing. Also, the reddish tinge due to the light source will be suppressed in the pictures taken under tungsten lights, etc.



Shooting tips

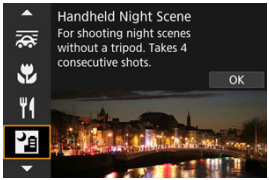
- **Change the color tone.**
  [**Color tone**] can be adjusted. To increase the reddish tinge of food, set toward [**Warm tone**] (red), or set toward [**Cool tone**] (blue) if it looks too red.

Caution

- The warm color cast of subjects may fade.
- When multiple light sources are included in the scene, the warm color cast of the picture may not be reduced.
- In flash photography, [**Color tone**] switches to the standard setting.
- If there are people in the picture, the skin tone may not be reproduced properly.

Handheld Night Scene Mode

[] (Handheld Night Scene) mode enables handheld shooting for night scenes. In this shooting mode, four shots are taken consecutively for each picture, and the resulting image with reduced camera shake is recorded.



Shooting tips

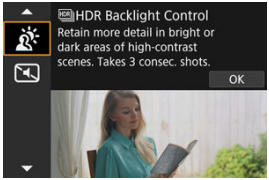
- **Hold the camera steady.**
  Keep your elbows close to your body to hold the camera steady (). In this mode, four shots are aligned and merged into a single image, but if there is significant misalignment in any of the four shots due to camera shake, they may not align properly in the final image.

Caution

- The image area is smaller than in other shooting modes.
- RAW image quality cannot be set.
- Flash photography is not available.
- Autofocusing at night or in dark scenes may be difficult when points of light lie within the AF point. In this case, set the focus mode to MF () and focus manually.
- Shooting moving subjects may result in afterimages from the movement, or darkness around the subject.
- Images may not be aligned correctly if they are patterned (with a lattice or stripes, for example), are generally flat and uniform, or are greatly out of alignment due to camera shake or other issues.
- It takes some time to record images to the card since they are merged after shooting. [**BUSY**] appears on the screen as images are processed, and shooting is not possible until processing is finished.
- Shots will look slightly different from the preview image shown on the screen.

HDR Backlight Control Mode

Use [ ] (HDR Backlight Control) mode for backlit scenes with both bright and dark areas. Shooting once in this mode captures three consecutive images at different exposures, which are combined to create a single HDR image that retains detail in shadows that might otherwise be lost from backlighting.
* HDR stands for High Dynamic Range.



Shooting tips

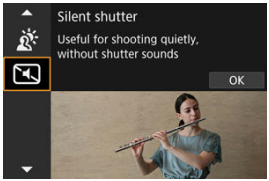
- **Hold the camera steady.**
  Keep your elbows close to your body to hold the camera steady ( ). In this mode, three shots are aligned and merged into a single image. However, if there is significant misalignment in any of the three shots due to camera shake, they may not align properly in the final image.

Caution

- The image area is smaller than in other shooting modes.
- RAW image quality cannot be set.
- Flash photography is not available.
- Note that the image may not be rendered with a smooth gradation and may look uneven or noisy.
- HDR Backlight Control may not be effective for excessively backlit scenes or extremely high-contrast scenes.
- When shooting subjects that are sufficiently bright as they are, for example for normally lit scenes, the image may look unnatural due to the HDR effect.
- Shooting moving subjects may result in afterimages from the movement, or darkness around the subject.
- Images may not be aligned correctly if they are patterned (with a lattice or stripes, for example), are generally flat and uniform, or are greatly out of alignment due to camera shake or other issues.
- It takes some time to record images to the card since they are merged after shooting. [**BUSY**] appears on the screen as images are processed, and shooting is not possible until processing is finished.

Silent Shutter Mode

Where silence is needed, you can shoot without beeps or shutter release sounds.



Shooting tips

- **Take some test shots.**
  Consider taking some test shots in advance, because lens aperture and focusing adjustment may be audible under some shooting conditions.

Caution

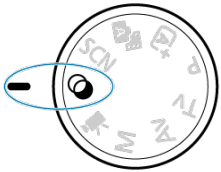
- Be responsible when using silent shooting, and respect subject privacy and portrait rights.
- Images of fast-moving subjects may look distorted.
- Continuous shooting and flash photography are not available.

Creative Filters Mode

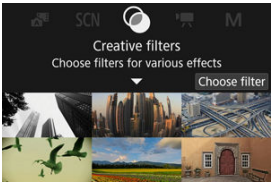
- Creative Filter Characteristics
- Adjusting the Miniature Effect

You can shoot with filter effects applied. Filter effects can be previewed before you shoot.

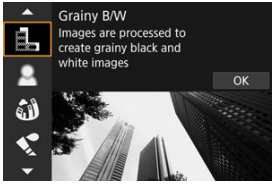
1. **Set the Mode dial to <>.**



2. **Press the <> button.**



3. Select a filter effect.



- Turn the < > dial to select a filter effect ( ), then press the < > button.
- The image is shown with the filter effect applied.

4. Adjust the effect and shoot.



- Press the < > button and select an icon below [**Creative filters**] (except /HDR, HDR, HDR, or HDR).
- Turn the < > dial to adjust the effect, then press the < > button.

Caution

- RAW and RAW+JPEG are not available. When RAW image quality is set, images are captured with L image quality. When RAW+JPEG image quality is set, images are captured with the specified JPEG image quality.
- Continuous shooting is not available when [ ], [ ], [ ], [ ], [ ], or [ ] is set.

Note

- With [**Grainy B/W**], the grainy preview will differ somewhat from the appearance of your shots.
- With [**Soft focus**] or [**Miniature effect**] options, the blurred effect preview may differ somewhat from the appearance of your shots.
- No histogram is displayed.
- A magnified view is not available.
- Some Creative filter settings are available in Creative Zone modes ( ).

Creative Filter Characteristics

- **Grainy B/W**
  Makes the image grainy and black and white. By adjusting the contrast, you can change the black-and-white effect.

- **Soft focus**
  Gives the image a soft look. By adjusting the blur, you can change the degree of softness.

- **Fish-eye effect**
  Gives the effect of a fish-eye lens. The image will have barrel distortion.
  Depending on the level of this filter effect, the area trimmed along the periphery of the image changes. Also, because this filter effect magnifies the center of the image, the apparent resolution at the center may degrade depending on the number of recorded pixels, so set the filter effect while checking the resulting image. One AF point is used, fixed at the center.

- **Water painting effect**
  Makes the photo look like a watercolor painting with soft colors. By adjusting the effect, you can change the color density. Note that night scenes or dark scenes may not be rendered with a smooth gradation and may look uneven or noisy.

- **Toy camera effect**
  Shifts colors to those typical of toy cameras and darkens the four corners of the image. Color tone options can be used to change the color cast.

- **Miniature effect**
  Creates a diorama effect.
  Shooting under the default setting will keep the center looking sharp.
  To move the area that looks sharp (the scene frame), see “Adjusting the Miniature Effect” (🔗).
  [**AF area**] is set to [**1-point AF**]. Shooting with the AF point and scene frame aligned is recommended.

- **HDR art standard**
  Photos retain more detail in highlights and shadows. With reduced contrast and flatter gradation, the finish resembles a painting. The subject outlines will have bright (or dark) edges.

- **HDR art vivid**
  Colors are more saturated than with [**HDR art standard**], and the low contrast and flat gradation resemble graphic art.

- **HDR art bold**
  The colors are the most saturated, making the subject pop out, and the picture looks like an oil painting.

- **HDR art embossed**
  The color saturation, brightness, contrast and gradation are decreased to make the picture look flat, so that the picture looks faded and old. The subject outlines will have intensely bright (or dark) edges.

Caution

Precautions for [HDR], [HDR], [HDR], and [HDR]

- The image area is smaller than in other shooting modes.
- Shots will look slightly different from the filter effect previews shown on the screen.
- Shooting moving subjects may result in afterimages from the movement, or darkness around the subject.
- Images may not be aligned correctly if they are patterned (with a lattice or stripes, for example), are generally flat and uniform, or are greatly out of alignment due to camera shake or other issues.
- Be careful about camera shake in handheld shots.
- Subjects such as the sky or white walls may not be rendered with smooth gradation and may have noise or irregular exposure or colors.
- Shooting under fluorescent or LED lighting may result in unnatural color reproduction of the illuminated areas.
- It takes some time to record images to the card since they are merged after shooting. [**BUSY**] appears on the screen as images are processed, and shooting is not possible until processing is finished.
- Flash photography is not available.

Note

- With [HDR], [HDR], [HDR], and [HDR], you can shoot high dynamic range photos that retain detail in highlights and shadows of high-contrast scenes. Three consecutive images are captured at different brightnesses each time you shoot and used to create a single image. See the precautions for [HDR], [HDR], [HDR], and [HDR].

Adjusting the Miniature Effect

1. **Move the scene frame.**



- Use the scene frame to set an area that will look sharp.
- To make the scene frame movable (displayed in orange), press the < [⊹] > button or tap [⊹] in the lower right of the screen. By tapping [⊹], you can also switch between vertical and horizontal scene frame orientation. Scene frame orientation can also be switched from horizontal orientation by pressing the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys and from vertical orientation with the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys.
- To move the scene frame, use the < ◌ > dial or < ✣ > keys. To center the scene frame again, press the < INFO > button.
- Press the < (SET) > button to confirm the scene frame position and enable movement of the AF point, which turns orange.

2. **Move the AF point as needed and shoot.**



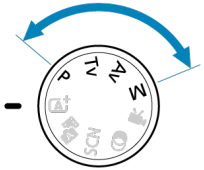
- Use the < > dial or < > keys to move the AF point to the position to focus on.
- Aligning the AF point and scene frame is recommended.
- To return the AF point to the center of the screen, press the < INFO > button.
- To confirm the position of the AF point, press the < > button.

Note

- To switch between moving the scene frame and AF point, press the < > button.

Creative Zone

Creative Zone modes give you the freedom to shoot in a variety of ways by setting your preferred shutter speed, aperture value, exposure, and more.



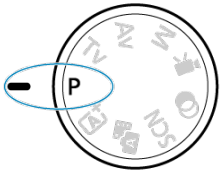
- To clear the shooting mode description displayed when you turn the Mode dial, press the < > button ( ).

- P: Program AE
- Tv: Shutter-Priority AE
- Av: Aperture-Priority AE
- M: Manual Exposure
- Long (Bulb) Exposures

P: Program AE

The camera automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture value to suit subject brightness.
* <**P**> stands for Program.
* AE stands for Auto Exposure.

1. **Set the Mode dial to <P>.**



2. **Focus on the subject.**



- Aim the AF point over the subject and press the shutter button halfway.
- Once the subject is in focus, the AF point turns green (with One-Shot AF).
- The shutter speed and aperture value are set automatically.

3. **Check the display.**

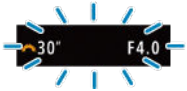


- As long as the exposure value is not blinking, standard exposure will be obtained.

4. Take the picture.

- Compose the shot and press the shutter button completely.

Caution



- If the “**30"**” shutter speed and the lowest aperture value blink, it indicates underexposure.
  Increase the ISO speed or use flash.



- If the “**1/4000**” shutter speed and the highest aperture value blink, it indicates overexposure.
  Lower the ISO speed or use an ND filter (sold separately) to reduce the amount of light entering the lens.

Note

Differences between <P> and < A+ > modes

- < A+ > mode limits available functions and sets the AF area, metering mode, and many other functions automatically to prevent bad shots. In contrast, <**P**> mode only sets the shutter speed and aperture value automatically, and you can freely set the AF area, metering mode, and other functions.

Program shift

- In <**P**> mode, you can freely change the combination (program) of shutter speed and aperture value set automatically by the camera while maintaining the same exposure. This is called Program shift.
- With Program shift, you can press the shutter button halfway, then turn the < ◎ > dial until the desired shutter speed or aperture value is displayed.
- Program shift will be canceled automatically when the metering timer ends (exposure setting display turns off).
- Program shift cannot be used with flash.

Tv: Shutter-Priority AE

In this mode, you set the shutter speed and the camera automatically sets the aperture value to obtain the standard exposure matching the brightness of the subject. A faster shutter speed can freeze the action of a moving subject. A slower shutter speed can create a blurred effect, giving the impression of motion.

* **<Tv>** stands for Time value.



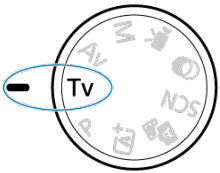
Blurred motion
(Slow speed: 1/30 sec.)



Frozen motion
(Fast speed: 1/2000 sec.)

---

1. **Set the Mode dial to <Tv>.**

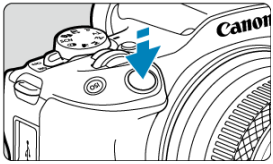


2. **Set the desired shutter speed.**



- Turn the < > dial to set it.

3. **Focus on the subject.**



- Press the shutter button halfway.
- The aperture value is set automatically.

4. **Check the display and shoot.**



- As long as the aperture value is not blinking, the standard exposure will be obtained.

Caution



- If the lowest aperture value blinks, it indicates underexposure.
  Turn the < > dial to set a slower shutter speed until the aperture value stops blinking or set a higher ISO speed.



- If the highest aperture value blinks, it indicates overexposure.
  Turn the < > dial to set a faster shutter speed until the aperture value stops blinking, or set a lower ISO speed.

Note

Shutter speed display

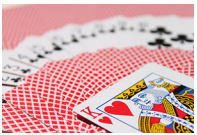
- For example, "**0"5**" indicates 0.5 sec. and "**15"**", 15 sec.

Av: Aperture-Priority AE

Depth-of-Field Preview

In this mode, you set the desired aperture value and the camera sets the shutter speed automatically to obtain the standard exposure matching the subject brightness. A higher f/number (smaller aperture hole) will make more of the foreground and background fall within acceptable focus. On the other hand, a lower f/number (larger aperture hole) will make less of the foreground and background fall within acceptable focus.

* **<Av>** stands for Aperture value (aperture opening).



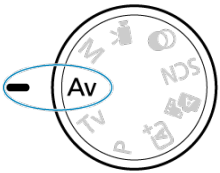
Blurred background
(With a low aperture value: f/5.6)



Sharp foreground and background
(With a high aperture value: f/32)

---

1. **Set the Mode dial to <Av>.**

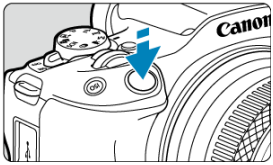


2. **Set the desired aperture value.**



- Turn the < > dial to set it.

3. **Focus on the subject.**



- Press the shutter button halfway.
- The shutter speed is set automatically.

4. **Check the display and shoot.**



- As long as the shutter speed is not blinking, the standard exposure will be obtained.

Caution



- If the “**30"**” shutter speed blinks, it indicates underexposure.
  Turn the < > dial to decrease the aperture value (open the aperture) until the shutter speed blinking stops or set a higher ISO speed.



- If the “**1/4000**” shutter speed blinks, it indicates overexposure.
  Turn the < > dial to increase aperture value (close the aperture) until the shutter speed blinking stops or set a lower ISO speed.

Note

Aperture value display

- The higher the value, the smaller the aperture opening will be. The aperture value displayed varies depending on the lens. If no lens is attached to the camera, "**F00**" will be displayed for the aperture.

Depth-of-Field Preview

The aperture changes only at the moment you shoot, and it remains open at other times. For this reason, the depth of field shown on the screen looks narrow, or shallow. To check the area in focus, assign [] (depth-of-field preview) to a button and press it.

Note

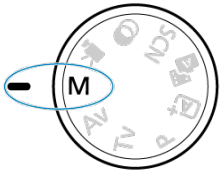
- The larger the aperture value, the wider the area in focus, from the foreground to the background.
- The depth-of-field effect is readily apparent on images as you press the button assigned to depth-of-field preview.
- Exposure is locked (AE lock) as you hold down the button assigned to depth-of-field preview.

M: Manual Exposure

Exposure Compensation with ISO Auto

In this mode, you set both the shutter speed and aperture value as desired. To determine the exposure, refer to the exposure level indicator or use a commercially available exposure meter.
* <**M**> stands for Manual.

1. **Set the Mode dial to <M>.**



2. **Set the ISO speed ( ).**

- Press the < ISO > button to set it.
- With ISO Auto, you can set exposure compensation ( ).

3. **Set the desired shutter speed.**



- Turn the < > dial to set it.

4. **Set the desired aperture value.**



- Press the < ▲ > key to select the aperture value, then turn the < > dial to set a value.

5. **Focus on the subject.**



- Press the shutter button halfway.
- Check the exposure level mark [▮] to see how far the current exposure level is from the standard exposure level.

(1) Standard exposure index
(2) Exposure level mark

6. **Set the exposure and take the picture.**



- Check the exposure level indicator and set the desired shutter speed and aperture value.

Exposure Compensation with ISO Auto

If the ISO speed is set to [**AUTO**] for manual exposure shooting, you can set exposure compensation (🔏) as follows:

- Tap the exposure level indicator
- [📷: **Expo.comp./AEB**]
- Turn the control ring while pressing the shutter button halfway (🔏)

Caution

- Exposure may not be as expected when ISO Auto is set, because the ISO speed is adjusted to ensure standard exposure for your specified shutter speed and aperture value. In this case, set the exposure compensation.
- Exposure compensation is not applied in flash photography with ISO Auto, even if you have set an exposure compensation amount.

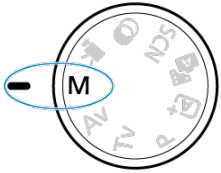
Note

- When ISO Auto is set, you can press the < ✳ > button to lock the ISO speed.
- If you press the < ✳ > button and recompose the shot, you can see the exposure level difference on the exposure level indicator compared to when the < ✳ > button was pressed.
- Any existing exposure compensation amount is maintained if you switch to <**M**> mode with ISO Auto after using exposure compensation in <**P**>, <**Tv**>, or <**Av**> mode ( ).

Long (Bulb) Exposures

In this mode, the shutter stays open as long as you hold down the shutter button completely, and closes when you let go of the shutter button. Use bulb exposures for night scenes, fireworks, astrophotography, and other subjects requiring long exposures.

1. **Set the Mode dial to <M>.**



2. **Set the shutter speed to [BULB].**



- Turn the < > dial to the left to set [**BULB**].

3. **Set the desired aperture value.**

- Press the < ▲ > key to select the aperture value, then turn the < > dial to set a value.

4. **Take the picture.**

- The exposure will continue for as long as you keep the shutter button pressed completely.
- Elapsed exposure time is shown on the screen.

Caution

- Do not point the camera toward an intense light source, such as the sun or an intense artificial light source. Doing so may damage the image sensor or the camera's internal components.
- Long bulb exposures produce more noise in the image than usual.
- ISO 400 is used when the camera is set to ISO Auto.

Note

- You can reduce the noise generated during long exposures by using [: **Long exp. noise reduction**] ( ).
- Using a tripod is recommended for bulb exposures.
- You can also shoot bulb exposures by using Wireless Remote Control BR-E1 (sold separately,). When you press the remote controller's release (transmit) button, the bulb exposure will start immediately or 2 sec. later. Press the button again to stop the bulb exposure.

Flash Photography

This chapter describes how to shoot with the built-in flash or an external flash (EL/EX series Speedlites).
☆ to the right of titles indicates functions only available in Creative Zone modes (<**P**>, <**Tv**>, <**Av**>, or <**M**>).

Caution

- Flash photography is not available with [: **Shutter mode**] set to [**Electronic**].
- Flash cannot be used while you are recording movies.
- AEB is not available in flash photography.

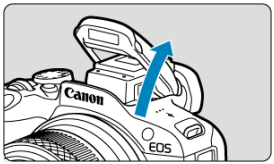
- Shooting with the Built-in Flash
- Flash Function Settings
- Shooting with Speedlites ☆

Shooting with the Built-in Flash

Shooting with FE Lock ☆

Using the built-in flash is recommended when the [ϟ] icon appears in the viewfinder or on the screen, when subjects in daytime shots are backlit, or when shooting under low light.

1. **Manually raise the flash.**

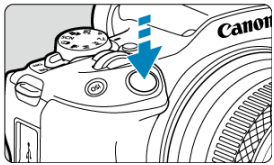


- In Creative Zone modes, shooting with flash is possible whenever the flash is raised.
- [**BUSY**] is displayed on the screen while the flash is charging.

2. **Press the shutter button halfway.**

- Confirm that [ϟ] appears on the screen.

3. **Take the picture.**



- When focus is achieved and you press the shutter button completely, the flash will fire at all times.
- To retract the built-in flash after shooting, push it down with your fingers until it clicks into place.

Shooting tips

- **In bright light, decrease the ISO speed.**
  If the exposure setting in the viewfinder blinks, decrease the ISO speed.
- **Detach the lens hood. Do not get too close to the subject.**
  If the lens has a hood attached or you are too close to the subject, the bottom of the picture may look dark due to the obstructed flash light. For important shots, play back the image and check to make sure the picture does not look unnaturally dark at the bottom part.

Caution

- Do not use the built-in flash unless it is fully raised.

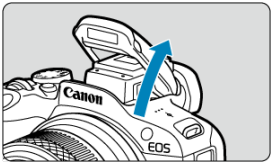
Note

- If the bottom of images is dark when you use super telephoto or large-diameter lenses, consider using an external Speedlite (sold separately,).

Shooting with FE Lock ☆

The background or other factors may make subjects brighter or darker in flash photography with subjects near the edge of the screen. In this case, use FE lock. After setting the flash output for the appropriate subject brightness, you can recompose (put the subject toward the side) and shoot. This feature can also be used with a Canon EL/EX series Speedlite.
* FE stands for Flash Exposure.

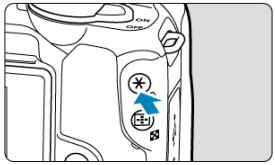
1. **Manually raise the flash.**



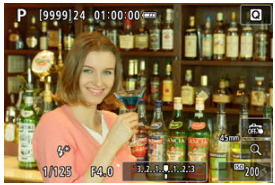
- Press the shutter button halfway and confirm that [ϟ] appears on the screen.

2. **Focus on the subject.**

3. **Press the < ✳ > button (⏱16).**

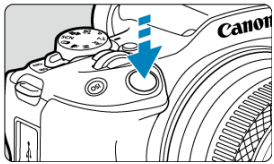


- Center the subject on the screen, then press the < ✳ > button.
- A preflash is fired by the flash, and the flash output required for shooting is retained.



- [FEL] appears briefly on the screen, and [⚡*] is lit.
- Each time you press the < ✳ > button, a preflash is fired, and the flash output required for shooting is retained.

4. **Take the picture.**



- Compose the shot and press the shutter button completely.

Caution

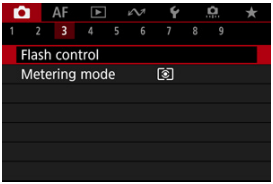
- The [ϟ] icon blinks when subjects are too far away and your shots would be dark. Approach the subject and repeat steps 2 to 4.

Flash Function Settings

- Flash Firing
- E-TTL Balance ☆
- E-TTL II Flash Metering ☆
- Continuous Flash Control ☆
- Red-Eye Reduction
- Slow Synchro ☆
- Built-in Flash Function Settings ☆
- External Flash Function Settings ☆
- External Flash Custom Function Settings ☆
- Clearing Flash Function Settings/Clearing All Speedlite Custom Functions ☆

Functions of the built-in flash or external EL/EX series Speedlites can be set from menu screens on the camera.
Before setting functions of external Speedlites, attach the Speedlite and turn it on.
For details on external Speedlite functions, refer to the Speedlite's instruction manual.

1. **Select [: Flash control].**



2. **Select an option.**

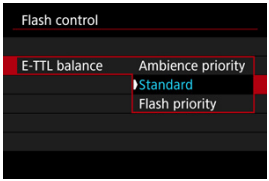


Flash Firing



- Set to [ϟᴬ] (in Basic Zone or <**P**> modes) to have the flash fire automatically, based on shooting conditions.
- Set to [ϟ] to have the flash always fire when you shoot.
- Select [⊘] (in Creative Zone modes) to keep the flash off, or if you will use the AF-assist beam.

E-TTL Balance ☆



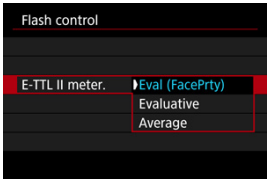
You can set your preferred appearance (balance) for flash shots. This setting enables you to adjust the ratio of ambient light to Speedlite light output.

- Set the balance to [**Ambience priority**] to lower the proportion of flash output and uses ambient light to produce lifelike shots with a natural mood. Especially useful when shooting dark scenes (indoors, for example). After switching to <**Av**> or <**P**> mode, consider setting [**Slow synchro**] in [: **Flash control**] to [**1/250-30sec. auto**] and using slow-sync shooting.
- Set the balance to [**Flash priority**] to make the flash the main source of light. Useful for reducing shadows on subjects and in the background from ambient light.

Caution

- For some scenes, [**Ambience priority**] may yield the same results as [**Standard**].

E-TTL II Flash Metering ☆



- Set to [**Eval (FacePrty)**] for flash metering suitable for shots of people.
- Set to [**Evaluative**] for flash metering that emphasizes firing in continuous shooting.
- If [**Average**] is set, the flash exposure will be averaged for the entire metered scene.

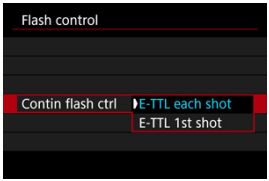
Note

- Depending on the scene, flash exposure compensation may be necessary.

Caution

- Even when [**Eval (FacePrty)**] is set, some subjects and shooting conditions may prevent you from obtaining the expected result.

Continuous Flash Control ☆

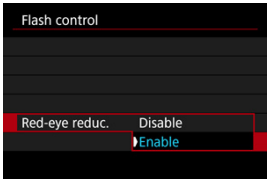


- Set to [**E-TTL each shot**] to perform flash metering for each shot.
- Set to [**E-TTL 1st shot**] to perform flash metering for only the first shot before continuous shooting. The flash output level for the first shot is applied to all subsequent shots. Useful when prioritizing continuous shooting speed without recomposing shots.

Caution

- Any subject movement in continuous shooting may cause exposure problems.
- [**E-TTL 1st shot**] is set automatically in [□H] drive mode when external flash units are used.

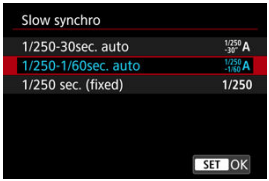
Red-Eye Reduction



Set to [**Enable**] to reduce red-eye by firing the red-eye reduction lamp before firing the flash.

Slow Synchro ☆

You can set the flash-sync speed for flash photography in <**Av**> or <**P**> mode.



- **1/250-30sec. auto (1/250 -30" A)**

  The flash sync speed is set automatically within a range of 1/250 sec. to 30 sec. to suit the scene's brightness. Slow-sync shooting is used in low-light locations (under some shooting conditions), and shutter speed is automatically lowered.

- **1/250-1/60sec. auto (1/250 -1/60 A)**

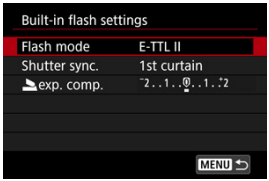
  Prevents a slow shutter speed from being set automatically in low-light conditions. Effective for preventing subject blur and camera shake. Light from the flash provides standard exposure for subjects, but note that backgrounds may be dark.

- **1/250 sec. (fixed) (1/250)**

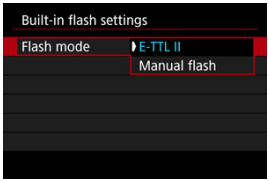
  The shutter speed is fixed at 1/250 sec., which is more effective in preventing subject blur and camera shake than with [**1/250-1/60sec. auto**]. However, in low light, the subject's background will come out darker than with [**1/250-1/60sec. auto**].

Caution

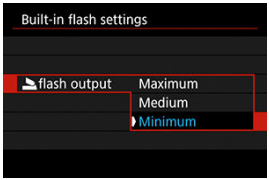
- To use slow-sync shooting in <**P**> or <**Av**> mode, set to [**1/250-30sec. auto**].



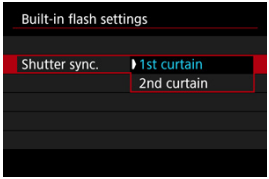
Flash mode



- Set to [**E-TTL II**] to shoot in E-TTL II/E-TTL fully automatic flash mode.
- Set to [**Manual flash**] to specify your preferred flash output in [**flash output**].



Shutter sync.



Normally, set to [**1st curtain**] so that the flash fires immediately after shooting starts.
Set to [**2nd curtain**] and use low shutter speeds for natural-looking shots of subject motion trails, such as car headlights.

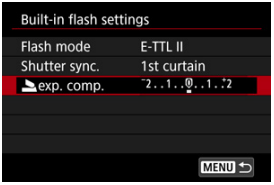
Caution

- When using second-curtain synchronization, set the shutter speed to 1/30 sec. or slower. For shutter speeds exceeding 1/40 sec., first-curtain synchronization is used automatically even if [**2nd curtain**] is set.

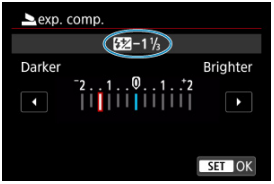
exp. comp.

Set the flash exposure compensation if the brightness of the subject does not come out as desired (so you want to adjust the flash output) in flash photography.

1. **Select [exp. comp.].**



2. **Set the compensation amount.**



- To brighten flash exposure, set the compensation amount toward [**Brighter**] (positive compensation), or to darken it, set toward [**Darker**] (negative compensation).
- After taking the picture, cancel the flash exposure compensation by setting it back to 0.

Caution

- Setting [: **Auto Lighting Optimizer**] ( ) to an option other than [**Disable**] may still cause images to look bright even if you set negative flash exposure compensation for darker exposure.
- If flash exposure compensation is set with a Speedlite (sold separately,), you cannot set the flash exposure compensation with the camera (Quick Control or external flash function setting). Note that the Speedlite's setting overrides the camera's if both are set at the same time.

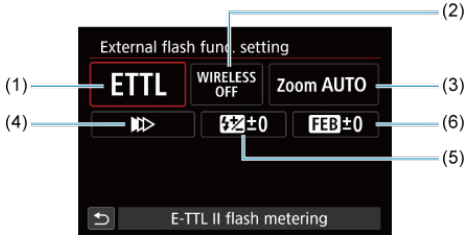
Note

- The exposure compensation amount will remain in effect even after you set the power switch to <OFF>.

External Flash Function Settings ☆

The information displayed on the screen, position of display, and available options vary depending on the Speedlite model, its Custom Function settings, the flash mode, and other factors. Refer to the instruction manual of your flash unit for details on its functions.

Sample display



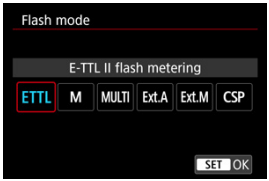
(1)	Flash mode
(2)	Wireless functions/ Firing ratio control (RATIO)
(3)	Flash zoom (flash coverage)
(4)	Shutter synchronization
(5)	Flash exposure compensation
(6)	Flash exposure bracketing

Caution

- Functions are limited when using EX series Speedlites that are not compatible with flash function settings.

Flash mode

You can select the flash mode to suit your desired flash photography.



- [**E-TTL II flash metering**] is the standard mode of EL/EX series Speedlites for automatic flash photography.
- [**Manual flash**] is for setting the Speedlite's [**Flash output level**] yourself.
- [**CSP**] (Continuous shooting priority mode) is available when using a compatible Speedlite. This mode automatically reduces flash output by one stop and increases ISO speed by one stop. Useful in continuous shooting, and helps conserve flash battery power.
- Regarding other flash modes, refer to the Instruction Manual of a Speedlite compatible with the respective flash mode.

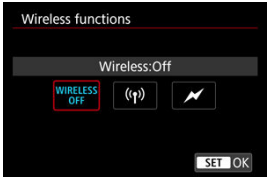
Caution

- Adjust exposure compensation (🖉) as needed in case of overexposure from flash photography with [**CSP**] in <**Tv**> or <**M**> mode.

Note

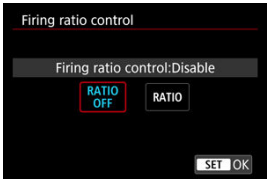
- With [**CSP**], ISO speed is automatically set to [**Auto**].

Wireless functions



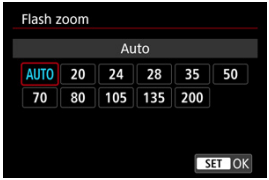
You can use radio or optical wireless transmission to shoot with wireless multiple-flash lighting.
For details on wireless flash, refer to the Instruction Manual of a Speedlite compatible with wireless flash photography.

Firing ratio control (RATIO)



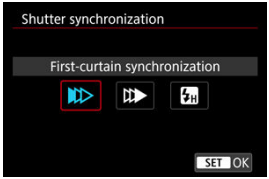
With a macro flash, you can set the firing ratio control.
For details on firing ratio control, refer to the Instruction Manual of the macro flash.

Flash zoom (flash coverage)



With Speedlites having a zooming flash head, you can set the flash coverage.

Shutter synchronization

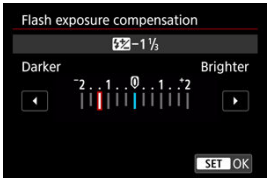


Normally, set this to [**First-curtain synchronization**] so that the flash fires immediately after the shooting starts.
Set to [**Second-curtain synchronization**] and use low shutter speeds for natural-looking shots of subject motion trails, such as car headlights.
Set to [**High-speed synchronization**] for flash photography at higher shutter speeds than the maximum flash sync shutter speed. This is effective when shooting with an open aperture in <**Av**> mode to blur the background behind subjects outdoors in daylight, for example.

Caution

- When using second-curtain synchronization, set the shutter speed to 1/30 sec. or slower. If the shutter speed is 1/40 sec. or faster, first-curtain synchronization will be applied automatically even if [**Second-curtain synchronization**] is set.

Flash exposure compensation

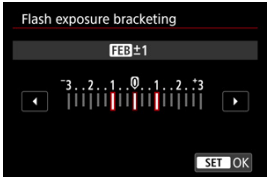


Just as exposure compensation is adjustable, you can also adjust flash output of external Speedlites.

Note

- If flash exposure compensation is set with the Speedlite, you cannot set the flash exposure compensation with the camera. Note that the Speedlite's setting overrides the camera's if both are set at the same time.

Flash exposure bracketing

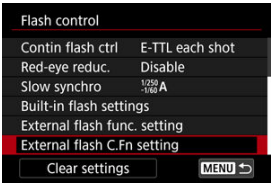


Speedlites equipped with flash exposure bracketing (FEB) can change the external flash output automatically as three shots are taken at once.

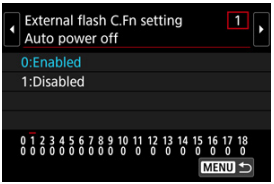
External Flash Custom Function Settings ☆

For details on the external Speedlite's Custom Functions, refer to the Speedlite's Instruction Manual.

1. **Select [External flash C.Fn setting].**



2. **Set the desired functions.**

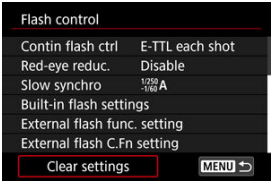


- Select the number.
- Select an option.

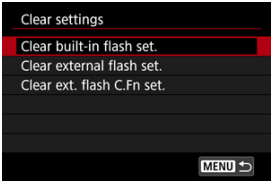
Caution

- With an EL/EX series Speedlite, the Speedlite will always fire at full output if the [**Flash metering mode**] Custom Function is set to [**1:TTL**] (autoflash).
- Setting or clearing Speedlite Personal Functions (P.Fn) is not possible from the camera's [📷: **External flash func. setting**] screen. Set it directly on the Speedlite.

1. **Select [Clear settings].**



2. **Select the settings to be cleared.**



- Select [**Clear built-in flash set.**], [**Clear external flash set.**], or [**Clear ext. flash C.Fn set.**].
- Select [**OK**] on the confirmation screen to clear all flash settings or Custom Function settings.

- EL/EX Series Speedlites for EOS Cameras
- Canon Speedlites Other Than the EL/EX Series
- Non-Canon Flash Units
- Quick Flash Group Control
- FE Memory Function

EL/EX Series Speedlites for EOS Cameras

Features of EL/EX series Speedlites (sold separately) can be used in flash photography with the camera.
For instructions, refer to the EL/EX series Speedlite's Instruction Manual.

Caution

- Use of accessories not designed for a multi-function shoe requires Multi-Function Shoe Adapter AD-E1, sold separately.
- Setting [: **Auto Lighting Optimizer**] ( ) to an option other than [**Disable**] may still cause images to look bright even if you set lower flash exposure compensation for darker images.

Note

- The Speedlite will fire an intermittent AF-assist beam as needed, if autofocusing is difficult under low light.
- You can also set flash exposure compensation in [**External flash func. setting**] in [: **Flash control**] ( ).
- The camera can turn on certain Speedlites automatically when the camera is turned on. For details, refer to the instruction manual of Speedlites that support this feature.

Canon Speedlites Other Than the EL/EX Series

- With an EZ/E/EG/ML/TL series Speedlite set to A-TTL or TTL autoflash mode, the flash can be fired at full output only.
  Set the camera's shooting mode to <**M**> or <**Av**> and adjust the aperture value before shooting.
- When using a Speedlite that has manual flash mode, shoot in manual flash mode.

Non-Canon Flash Units

Sync speed

The camera can synchronize with non-Canon compact flash units at up to 1/250 sec. With large studio flash units, the flash duration is longer than that of a compact flash unit and varies depending on the model. Before shooting, confirm that flash sync is performed correctly by taking some test shots at a sync speed of approx. 1/60 sec. to 1/30 sec.

Caution

- Manually lower the built-in flash before attaching an external flash unit.
- Using the camera with a dedicated flash unit or flash accessory for cameras of other manufacturers poses a risk of malfunction and even damage.
- Do not attach a high-voltage flash unit to the camera's multi-function shoe. It may not fire.

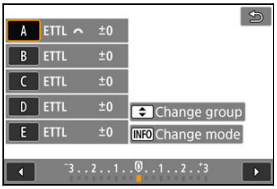
Quick Flash Group Control

As you view the shooting screen in wireless multi-flash photography, you can configure the settings for each flash group by pressing the button assigned to [**Quick flash group control**] in [: **Customize buttons**]. This example is based on assigning the < ISO > button ( ).

1. **Set the flash firing mode to < Gr > (individual group control) to prepare for wireless multi-flash photography.**

   - For details, refer to the instruction manuals of flash units supporting wireless multi-flash photography.

2. **During standby, press the < ISO > button.**



   - A setting screen for each flash group is displayed.
   - Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select a group (A–E) to configure.
   - Press the < INFO > button to set the flash mode.
   - Turn the < > dial to adjust flash output or flash exposure compensation.

Note

- You can access the [**Quick flash group control**] setting screen in <**P**>, <**Tv**>, <**Av**>, or <**M**> mode.
- Pressing the < ISO > button displays the [**External flash func. setting**] screen for Speedlites in flash modes other than < Gr > (individual group control).

FE Memory Function

You can set the flash output captured in the flash mode <**ETTL**> as the flash output for the flash mode <**M**> by pressing the button assigned to [**ETTL ⇄ M**] in [: **Customize buttons**]. This example is based on assigning the < ISO > button ( ).

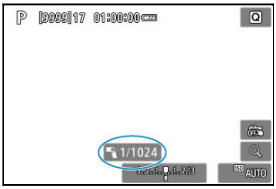
1. **Set the flash Custom Function setting [FE memory] to [2:Enable(MODE ETTL ⇄ M)].**

   - For the setting procedure with the flash, refer to the instruction manuals of flash units (except the EL-1) supporting FE memory.

2. **Shoot with the flash mode set to <ETTL>.**

   - Press the shutter button completely to take the picture.

3. **During standby, press the < ISO > button.**



   - The flash mode switches to <**M**> and the flash output captured in step 2 is displayed.
   - When you press the < ISO > button again after shooting with the flash mode set to <**M**>, the flash mode switches to <**ETTL**> and the flash exposure compensation is displayed.
   - To change the flash output or the flash exposure compensation, perform operations with the flash or set with [**Flash function settings**] ( ).

Note

- The FE memory function is available in <**Fv**>, <**P**>, <**Tv**>, <**Av**>, <**M**>, and <**B**> modes.
- When the flash is set to a flash mode other than <**ETTL**> or <**M**>, the flash mode will not change even if the < ISO > button is pressed.

Shooting and Recording

This chapter describes shooting and recording and introduces menu settings on the shooting [📷] tab.

- Still Photo Shooting
- Movie Recording

Still Photo Shooting

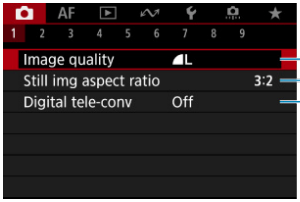
☆ to the right of titles indicates functions only available in Creative Zone modes (**<P>**, **<Tv>**, **<Av>**, or **<M>**).

- Tab Menus: Still Photo Shooting
- Image Quality
- Still Image Aspect Ratio
- Digital Tele-Converter ☆
- Auto Exposure Bracketing (AEB) ☆
- Manual Exposure Compensation ☆
- Exposure Lock (AE Lock) ☆
- ISO Speed Settings for Still Photos ☆
- HDR Shooting ☆
- HDR Mode ☆
- Auto Lighting Optimizer ☆
- Highlight Tone Priority ☆
- Anti-Flicker Shooting ☆
- Metering Mode ☆
- White Balance ☆
- White Balance Correction ☆
- Color Space ☆
- Picture Style Selection ☆
- Picture Style Customization ☆
- Picture Style Registration ☆
- Clarity ☆
- Shooting Creative Filters ☆
- Lens Aberration Correction ☆
- Long Exposure Noise Reduction ☆
- High ISO Speed Noise Reduction ☆
- Dust Delete Data Acquisition ☆
- Focus Bracketing ☆
- Silent Shutter Function ☆
- Shutter Mode ☆
- Releasing Shutter without Card
- Image Stabilizer (IS Mode)
- Customizing Quick Controls ☆
- Shooting with the Touch Shutter
- Image Review

- High-Speed Display ☆
- Metering Timer ☆
- Display Simulation ☆
- Optical Viewfinder Simulation ☆
- Shooting Information Display
- Reverse Display
- Viewfinder Display Format
- Display Performance
- General Still Photo Shooting

Tab Menus: Still Photo Shooting

Shooting 1

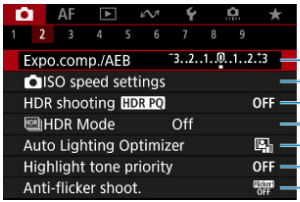


(1) Image quality

(2) Still img aspect ratio

(3) Digital tele-conv ☆

Shooting 2



(1) Expo.comp./AEB ☆

(2) ISO speed settings ☆

(3) HDR shooting HDR PQ ☆

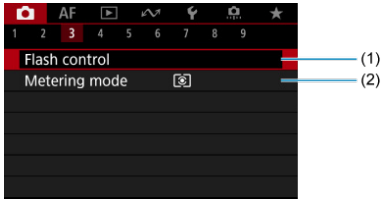
(4) HDR Mode ☆

(5) Auto Lighting Optimizer ☆

(6) Highlight tone priority ☆

(7) Anti-flicker shoot. ☆

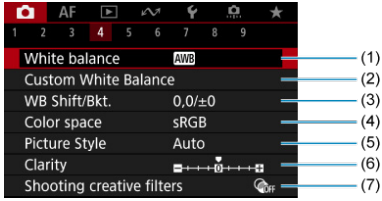
Shooting 3



(1) Flash control

(2) Metering mode ☆

Shooting 4



(1) White balance ☆

(2) Custom White Balance ☆

(3) WB Shift/Bkt. ☆

(4) Color space ☆

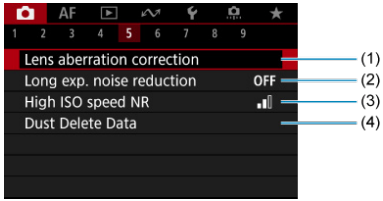
(5) Picture Style

- Picture Style Selection ☆
- Picture Style Customization ☆
- Picture Style Registration ☆

(6) Clarity ☆

(7) Shooting creative filters ☆

Shooting 5



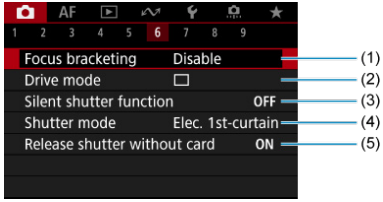
(1) Lens aberration correction ☆

(2) Long exp. noise reduction ☆

(3) High ISO speed NR ☆

(4) Dust Delete Data ☆

Shooting 6



(1) Focus bracketing ☆

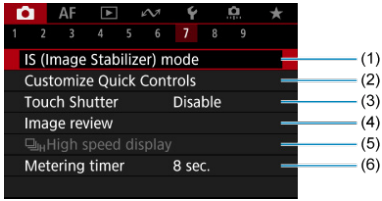
(2) Drive mode

(3) Silent shutter function ☆

(4) Shutter mode ☆

(5) Release shutter without card

Shooting 7



(1) IS (Image Stabilizer) mode

(2) Customize Quick Controls ☆

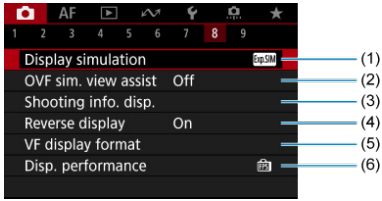
(3) Touch Shutter

(4) Image review

(5) High speed display ☆

(6) Metering timer ☆

Shooting 8



(1) Display simulation ☆

(2) OVF sim. view assist ☆

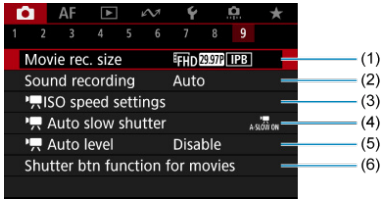
(3) Shooting info. disp.

(4) Reverse display

(5) VF display format

(6) Disp. performance

Shooting 9



(1) Movie rec. size

(2) Sound recording

(3) ISO speed settings ☆

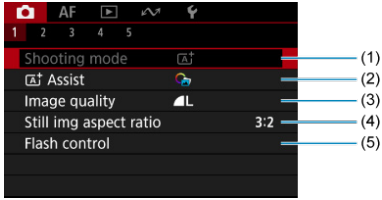
(4) Auto slow shutter ☆

(5) Auto level

(6) Shutter btn function for movies

In Basic Zone modes, the following screens are displayed.

Shooting 1



(1) Shooting mode

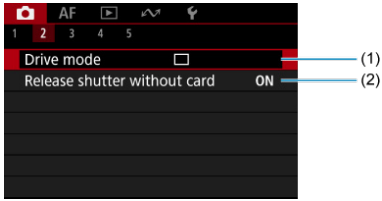
(2) Assist

(3) Image quality

(4) Still img aspect ratio

(5) Flash control

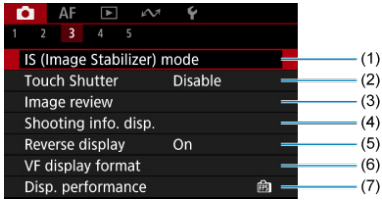
Shooting 2



(1) Drive mode

(2) Release shutter without card

Shooting 3



(1) IS (Image Stabilizer) mode

(2) Touch Shutter

(3) Image review

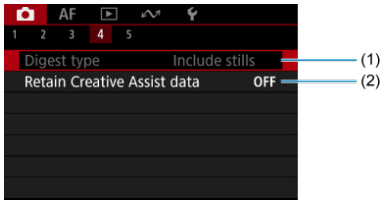
(4) Shooting info. disp.

(5) Reverse display

(6) VF display format

(7) Disp. performance

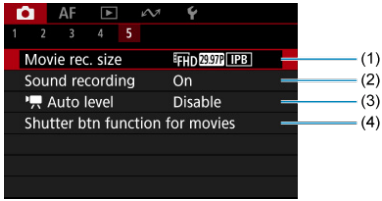
Shooting 4



(1) Digest type

(2) Retain Creative Assist data

Shooting 5



(1) Movie rec. size

(2) Sound recording

(3) Auto level

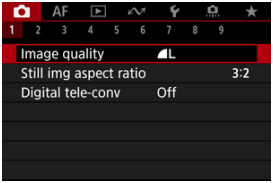
(4) Shutter btn function for movies

Image Quality

- RAW Images
- Guide to Image Quality Settings
- Maximum Burst for Continuous Shooting

You can select the pixel count and the image quality. JPEG/HEIF image quality options are as follows: L / L / M / M / S1 / S1 / S2. For RAW images, you can specify RAW or CRAW as the image quality.

1. **Select [: Image quality].**



2. **Set the image quality.**



- For RAW images, use the < > dial to select the size, and for JPEG/HEIF images, use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys.
- Press the < > button to set it.

Note

- HEIF can be specified when [: **HDR shooting** HDR PQ] is set to [**Enable**]. You can convert these images to JPEG images after shooting ( ).
- L is set if you set both RAW and JPEG/HEIF to [—].
- Two versions of each shot are recorded at your specified image quality when you have selected both RAW and JPEG/HEIF. Both images have the same file number but each has a different file extension, with .JPG for JPEG, .HIF for HEIF and .CR3 for RAW.
- S2 is in (Fine) quality.
- Meaning of image quality icons: RAW RAW, CRAW Compact RAW, JPEG, HEIF, L Large, M Medium, S Small.

RAW Images

RAW images are raw data from the image sensor that are recorded to the card digitally as RAW or C RAW, based on your selection. C RAW produces RAW images with smaller file sizes than RAW.
You can use Digital Photo Professional (EOS software) to process RAW images. You can make various adjustments to images depending upon how they will be used and can generate JPEG, HEIF, or other types of images reflecting the effects of those adjustments.

Note

- To display RAW images on a computer, using Digital Photo Professional (EOS software, hereafter DPP) is recommended.
- Older versions of DPP Ver. 4.x do not support display, processing, editing, or other operations with RAW images captured by this camera. If a previous version of DPP Ver. 4.x is installed on your computer, obtain and install the latest version of DPP from the Canon website to update it ( ), which will overwrite the previous version. Similarly, DPP Ver. 3.x or earlier does not support display, processing, editing, or other operations with RAW images captured by this camera.
- Commercially available software may not be able to display RAW images captured by this camera. For compatibility information, contact the software manufacturer.

Guide to Image Quality Settings

For details on file size, number of shots available, maximum burst, and other estimated values, see Still photo file size / Number of shots available and Maximum burst for continuous shooting [Approx.].

Maximum Burst for Continuous Shooting



The approximate maximum burst is displayed at the upper left of the shooting screen and lower right of the viewfinder.

Note

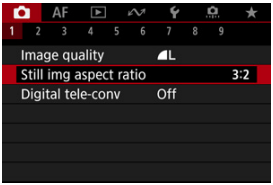
- If the maximum burst is displayed as “**99**”, it indicates that you can shoot 99 or more shots continuously. Fewer shots are available for a value of 98 or lower, and when [**BUSY**] is displayed on the screen, internal memory is full and shooting will stop temporarily. If you stop continuous shooting, the maximum burst will increase. After all captured images have been written to a card, you can once again shoot at the maximum burst listed in Maximum burst for continuous shooting [Approx.].
- Red display of maximum burst indicates that internal memory will be full in 1 sec. or less of continuous shooting, after which [**BUSY**] will appear on the screen and shooting will stop temporarily.
  In this case, you may be able to increase continuous shooting time by adjusting [: **Image quality**] and [: **Drive mode**] settings.
  - In [: **Image quality**], select an option other than [RAW] or [CRAW].
  - Set [: **Drive mode**] to an option other than [] or [].



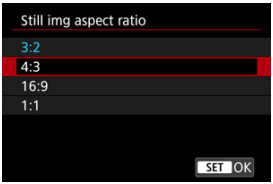
Still Image Aspect Ratio

You can change the image's aspect ratio.

1. **Select [: Still img aspect ratio].**



2. **Set the aspect ratio.**



- Select an aspect ratio.

- **JPEG images**
  The images will be recorded with the set aspect ratio.

- **RAW Images**

  The images will always be recorded in the [**3:2**] aspect ratio. The selected aspect ratio information is added to the RAW image file, which enables Digital Photo Professional (EOS software) to generate an image with the same aspect ratio as set at the time of shooting when you process RAW images with this software.

Aspect ratio		
4:3	**16:9**	**1:1**
		

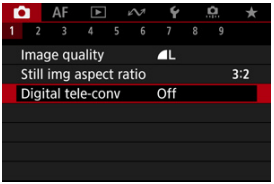
Note

- RAW images shot at an aspect ratio of [**4:3**], [**16:9**], or [**1:1**] are displayed during playback with lines indicating the shooting area, but these lines are not recorded in the image.

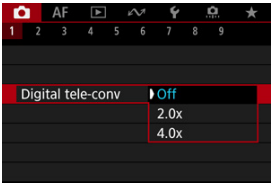
Digital Tele-Converter ☆

Shooting magnification can be increased beyond lens magnification by enlarging the center of the image area.

1. **Select [: Digital tele-conv].**



2. **Select a shooting magnification.**



- Shooting magnification is not adjusted when [**Off**] is selected.

Caution

- Higher shooting magnification results in lower image quality.
- Not available when RAW image quality is selected.

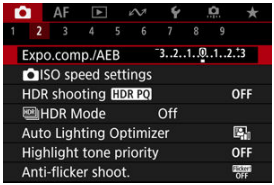
Note

- One AF point is used, fixed at the center. Tracking frames are not displayed.

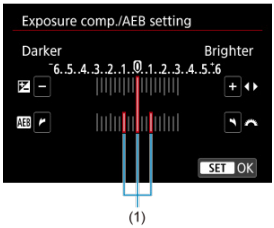
Auto Exposure Bracketing (AEB) ☆

In exposure bracketing, three consecutive images are captured at different exposures within your specified range of up to ±3 stops (in 1/3-stop increments) by automatically adjusting the shutter speed, aperture value, or ISO speed.
* AEB stands for Auto Exposure Bracketing.

1. **Select [: Expo.comp./AEB].**



2. **Set the AEB range.**



(1)

- Turn the < > dial to set the AEB range (1). By using the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys, you can set the amount of exposure compensation.
- Press the < (SET) > button to set it.
- Once an AEB range is set, it is shown on the screen on the exposure level indicator.

3. **Take the picture.**

Standard exposure



Decreased exposure



Increased exposure



- Three bracketed shots are taken, according to the specified drive mode, in this sequence: Standard exposure, decreased exposure, and increased exposure.
- AEB will not be automatically canceled. To cancel AEB, follow step 2 to turn off the AEB range display.

Caution

- Exposure compensation in AEB may be less effective with [: **Auto Lighting Optimizer**] ( ) set to an option other than [**Disable**].

Note

- If the drive mode is set to [ ], press the shutter button three times for each shot. In [ ], [ ], or [ ] mode, holding down the shutter button completely captures three images, one after another, before the camera automatically stops shooting. When [0] or [2] is set, three consecutive shots are captured after a delay of 10 or 2 sec. When set to [C], three times the specified number of shots are taken in continuous shooting.
- You can set AEB in combination with exposure compensation.
- AEB is not available in flash photography or bulb exposures, in HDR mode, or with Multi Shot Noise Reduction, focus bracketing, or shooting creative filters.
- AEB is canceled automatically after the power switch is set to < OFF > and after the flash is fully charged.

Manual Exposure Compensation ☆

Exposure compensation can brighten (increased exposure) or darken (decreased exposure) the standard exposure set by the camera.
Exposure compensation is available in <**P**>, <**Tv**>, <**Av**>, and <**M**> modes.
For details on exposure compensation when <**M**> mode and ISO Auto are both set, see M: Manual Exposure.

1. **Check the exposure.**

   - Press the shutter button halfway and check the exposure level indicator.

2. **Set the compensation amount.**
   Increased exposure, to brighten images



   Decreased exposure, to darken images



   - To set the amount, press the < ▲ > key to select exposure compensation and watch the screen as you turn the < ◌ > dial.
   - A [±] icon is displayed to indicate exposure compensation.

3. **Take the picture.**

   - To cancel exposure compensation, set the exposure level [▮] to the standard exposure index ([▮]).

Caution

- If [📷: **Auto Lighting Optimizer**] (🖼) is set to any setting other than [**Disable**], the image may still look bright even if decreased exposure compensation is set to darken images.

Note

- The exposure compensation amount will remain in effect even after you set the power switch to <OFF>.

Exposure Lock (AE Lock) ☆

Effect of AE Lock

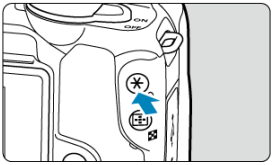
You can lock the exposure when you want to set the focus and exposure separately or when you will take multiple shots at the same exposure setting. Press the < ✳ > button to lock the exposure, then recompose and take the picture. This is called AE lock. It is effective for shooting backlit subjects, etc.

---

1. **Focus on the subject.**

   - Press the shutter button halfway.
   - The exposure value will be displayed.

2. **Press the < ✳ > button.**



   - A [✳] icon is displayed in the lower left of the screen to indicate that exposure is locked (AE lock).

3. **Recompose and take the picture.**



   - To cancel AE lock, press the < ✳ > button.

Note

- AE lock is not possible with bulb exposures.

Effect of AE Lock

Metering Mode Selection	AF Point Selection	
	Automatic Selection	Manual Selection
	Exposure centered on the AF point in focus is locked.	Exposure centered on the selected AF point is locked.
	Center-weighted exposure is locked.	

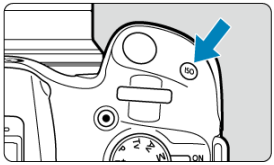
* Center-weighted exposure is locked when [] is set with the camera configured for manual focusing ().

ISO Speed Settings for Still Photos ☆

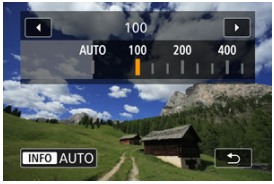
Maximum Auto ISO Speed

Set the ISO speed (image sensor's sensitivity to light) to suit the ambient light level. In Basic Zone modes, ISO speed is set automatically.
For details on ISO speed in movie recording, see ISO Speed in Movie Recording.

1. **Press the <ISO> button.**



2. **Set the ISO speed.**



- Turn the <dial> dial to set it.
- ISO speed can be set within ISO 100–32000 in 1/3-stop increments.
- With [**AUTO**] selected, ISO speed is set automatically.
- When [**AUTO**] is selected, pressing the shutter button halfway will display the ISO speed actually set.
- You can also press the <INFO> button to set the speed to [**AUTO**].

ISO speed guide

- Low ISO speeds reduce image noise but may increase the risk of camera/subject shake or reduce the area in focus (shallower depth of field), in some shooting conditions.
- High ISO speeds enable low-light shooting, a larger area in focus (deeper depth of field), and longer flash range but may increase image noise.

Note

- Can also be set on the [**ISO speed**] screen in [: **ISO speed settings**].
- Setting [: **ISO expansion**] to [**Enable**] ( ) expands the maximum speed to H (equivalent to ISO 51200).

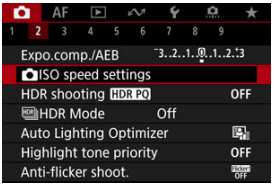
Caution

- Image noise (such as graininess, dots of light, or banding), irregular colors, or color shift may be noticeable at high ISO speeds, in high temperatures, or with long exposures.
- When shooting in conditions that produce an extreme amount of noise, such as a combination of high ISO speed, high temperature, and long exposure, images may not be recorded properly.
- If you use a high ISO speed and flash to shoot a close subject, overexposure may result.

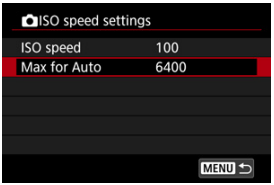
Maximum Auto ISO Speed

For ISO Auto, you can set the maximum ISO speed limit within ISO 400–32000.

1. **Select [: ISO speed settings].**

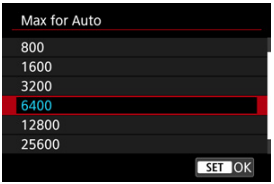


2. **Select [Max for Auto].**



- Select [**Max for Auto**], then press the < (SET) > button.

3. **Select the ISO speed.**

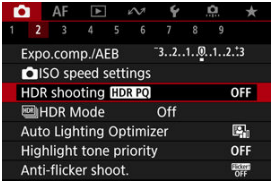


- Select an ISO speed, then press the < (SET) > button.

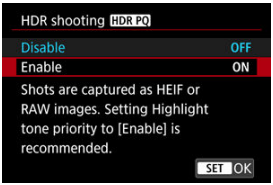
HDR Shooting ☆

PQ in HDR PQ refers to the gamma curve of the input signal for displaying HDR images. HDR PQ settings enable the camera to produce HDR images conforming to the PQ specification defined in ITU-R BT.2100 and SMPTE ST.2084. (Actual display depends on monitor performance.)
Shots are captured as HEIF or RAW images.
* HDR stands for High Dynamic Range.
* PQ stands for Perceptual Quantization.

1. **Select [: HDR shooting HDR PQ].**



2. **Select [Enable].**



- On the screen during shooting and playback, converted images are displayed that resemble how the images would look on an HDR display device.

Caution

- Some scenes may look different from how they appear on an HDR display device.
- Unused signal values are roughly indicated by image areas in gray in the histogram when [📷: **HDR shooting HDR PQ**] is set to [**Enable**].
- [📷: **Disp. performance**] is not available when [📷: **HDR shooting HDR PQ**] is set to [**Enable**]. It is set to [**Smooth**].
- For images captured with [📷: **HDR shooting HDR PQ**] set to [**Enable**], before playback on an HDR display device, set [▶: **HDMI HDR output**] to [**On**] (🔗). Note that regardless of the [▶: **HDMI HDR output**] setting, HDR images are used for display on HDR display devices.

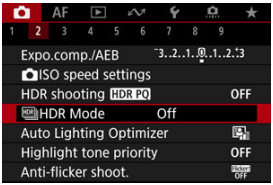
HDR Mode ☆

You can shoot still photos with clipped highlights and shadows reduced for a high dynamic range of tones even in high-contrast scenes. HDR shooting is effective for landscape and still-life shots.

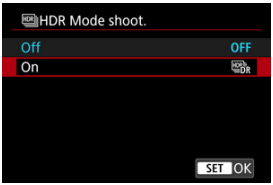
HDR shooting enhances gradation in dark image areas by merging three images deliberately captured at different exposures (standard, underexposed, and overexposed) to produce an HDR image that compensates for loss of detail in dark image areas. HDR images are captured as HEIFs or JPEGs.

* HDR stands for High Dynamic Range.

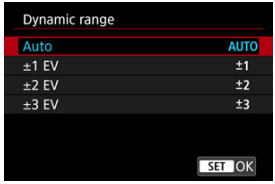
1. **Select [: HDR Mode].**



2. **Select [On].**

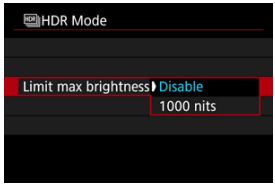


3. **Set [Dynamic range].**



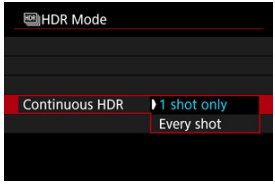
- Selecting [**Auto**] will have the dynamic range set automatically depending on the image's overall tonal range.
- The higher the number, the wider the dynamic range will be.
- To cancel HDR shooting, select [**Off**] in step 2.

4. **Set [Limit max brightness] (only with [: HDR shooting HDR PQ] set to [Enable]).**



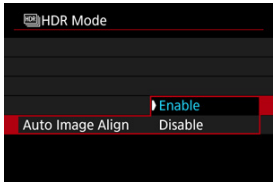
- With [**Disable**], maximum brightness is not limited. Recommended when you will review images on a monitor supporting display at brightnesses exceeding 1000 nits.
- With [**1000 nits**], maximum brightness is limited to approx. 1000 nits.

5. **Set [Continuous HDR].**



- With [**1 shot only**], HDR shooting is canceled automatically after you finish shooting.
- With [**Every shot**], HDR shooting continues until the setting in step 2 is set to [**Disable HDR**].

6. **Set [Auto Image Align].**



- For handheld shooting, select [**Enable**]. When using a tripod, select [**Disable**].

7. **Take the picture.**

- When you press the shutter button completely, three consecutive images will be captured, and the HDR image will be recorded to the card.

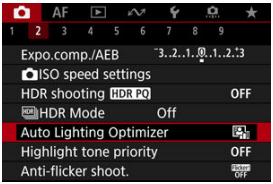
Caution

- Expanded ISO speeds (H) are not available in HDR shooting.
- The flash will not fire during HDR shooting.
- RAW image quality cannot be set.
- AEB is not available.
- In HDR shooting, three images are captured with settings such as shutter speed automatically adjusted. For this reason, even in **<Tv>** or **<M>** mode, the shutter speed and ISO speed will change, relative to your specified speed.
- To prevent camera shake, the camera may set a high ISO speed.
- When shooting HDR images with [**Auto Image Align**] set to [**Enable**], AF point display information ( ) and Dust Delete Data ( ) will not be appended to the image.
- If you perform handheld HDR shooting with [**Auto Image Align**] set to [**Enable**], image periphery will be slightly trimmed and resolution will be slightly lowered. Also, if the images cannot be aligned properly due to camera shake, etc., auto image alignment may not take effect. Note that when shooting with excessively bright (or dark) exposure settings, auto image alignment may not work properly.
- If you perform handheld HDR shooting with [**Auto Image Align**] set to [**Disable**], the three images may not be properly aligned and the HDR effect may be reduced. Using a tripod is recommended.
- Auto image alignment may not function properly with repetitive patterns (lattice, stripes, etc.) or flat, single-tone images.
- Subjects such as the sky or white walls may not be rendered with smooth gradation and may have noise or irregular exposure or colors.
- HDR shooting under fluorescent or LED lighting may cause issues such as irregular exposure or colors in HDR images, due to the flickering light source. Effects of flickering may be reduced by setting [**Anti-flicker shoot.**] to [**Enable**].
- With HDR shooting, the images will be merged, then saved to the card, so it may take some time. [**BUSY**] appears on the screen as images are processed, and shooting is not possible until processing is finished.

Auto Lighting Optimizer ☆

Brightness and contrast can be corrected automatically if shots look dark or contrast is too low or high.

1. **Select [: Auto Lighting Optimizer].**



2. **Set a correction option.**



Caution

- Noise may increase and apparent resolution may change, under some shooting conditions.
- If the effect of Auto Lighting Optimizer is too strong and results are not at your preferred brightness, set to [**Low**] or [**Disable**].
- If a setting other than [**Disable**] is set and you use exposure compensation or flash exposure compensation to darken the exposure, the image may still come out bright. If you want a darker exposure, set this function to [**Disable**].

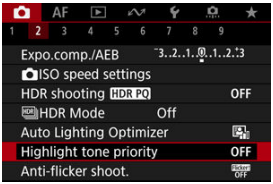
Note

- To enable [: **Auto Lighting Optimizer**] to be set even in <**M**> mode, press the < INFO > button in step 2 to clear the checkmark [✓] for [**Disable during man expo**].

Highlight Tone Priority ☆

You can reduce overexposed, clipped highlights.

1. **Select [: Highlight tone priority].**



2. **Set an option.**



- [**Enable**]: Improves gradation in highlights. The gradation between the grays and highlights becomes smoother.
- [**Enhanced**]: Reduces overexposed highlights even more than [**Enable**], under some shooting conditions.

Caution

- Noise may increase slightly.
- The available ISO range starts at ISO 200. Expanded ISO speeds cannot be set.
- With [**Enhanced**], results in some scenes may not look as expected.

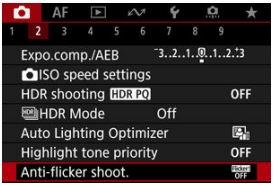
Note

- [📷: **Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**] and cannot be changed after you set [📷: **HDR shooting HDR PQ**] to [**Enable**] by pressing the < ⊡ > button to add a checkmark to this setting.
- [📷: **Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Disable**] when [📷: HDR**HDR Mode**] is set to [**On**], even if you set [📷: **HDR shooting HDR PQ**] to [**Enable**].

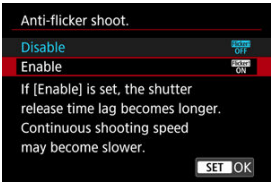
Anti-Flicker Shooting ☆

Uneven exposure and color may appear in continuous shooting at fast shutter speeds under flickering light sources such as fluorescent lights, due to uneven vertical exposure. Anti-flicker shooting enables you to take pictures when exposure and colors are less affected by flickering.

1. **Select [: Anti-flicker shoot.].**



2. **Select [Enable].**



3. **Take the picture.**

Caution

- When [**Enable**] is set and you shoot under a flickering light source, the shutter-release time lag may become longer. Also, the continuous shooting speed may become slower, and the shooting interval may become irregular.
- Flicker at a frequency other than 100Hz or 120Hz cannot be detected. Also, if the flickering frequency of the light source changes during continuous shooting, effects of the flicker cannot be reduced.
- In <**P**> or <**Av**> mode, color tone of captured images may vary if the shutter speed changes during continuous shooting or if you take multiple shots of the same scene at different shutter speeds. To avoid inconsistent color tone, shoot in <**M**> or <**Tv**> mode at a fixed shutter speed.
- Color tone of captured images may vary between [**Enable**] and [**Disable**].
- Shutter speed, aperture value, and ISO speed may change when you start shooting with AE lock.
- If the subject is against a dark background or if there is a bright light in the image, flicker may not be properly detected.
- Flicker reduction may not be possible under special lighting.
- Depending on the light source, flicker may not be detected properly.
- Depending on the light sources or shooting conditions, the expected result may not be obtained even if you use this function.

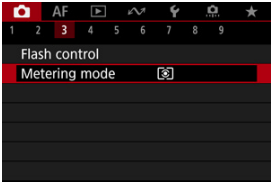
Note

- Taking test shots in advance is recommended.
- Detect flicker manually if the screen flickers (as when the light source changes) by pressing the < ⏱ > button, selecting [**Anti-flicker shoot.**], then pressing the < INFO > button.
- Flicker is not reduced in Basic Zone modes.
- Flicker reduction also works with flash photography. However, the expected result may not be obtained for wireless flash photography.

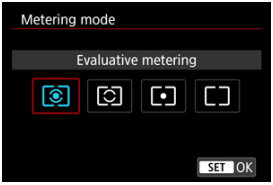
Metering Mode ☆

Four methods (metering modes) to measure the subject's brightness are provided. Normally, evaluative metering is recommended. Evaluative metering is set automatically in Basic Zone modes (except in < : > mode, which uses center-weighted average metering).

1. **Select [: Metering mode].**



2. **Select an option.**



- **: Evaluative metering**
  General-purpose metering mode suited even for backlit subjects. The camera adjusts the exposure automatically to suit the scene.

- **: Partial metering**
  Effective where there are much brighter lights around the subject due to backlight, etc. The partial metering area is indicated on the screen.

- **: Spot metering**
  Effective when metering a specific part of the subject. The spot metering area is indicated on the screen.

- **: Center-weighted average**
  The metering across the screen is averaged, with the center of the screen weighted more heavily.

Caution

- With [◉] (evaluative metering), holding down the shutter button halfway when shooting with [**One-Shot AF**] locks the exposure value (AE lock). With [•] (partial metering), [•] (spot metering), or [▁] (center-weighted average metering), exposure is set at the moment the picture is taken (without locking the exposure value when the shutter button is pressed halfway).

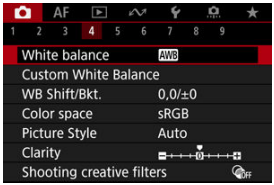
White Balance ☆

- White Balance
- [AWB] Auto White Balance
- [Custom White Balance ☆
- [K] Color Temperature

White balance (WB) is for making the white areas look white. Normally, the Auto [AWB] (Ambience priority) or [AWBW] (White priority) setting will obtain the correct white balance. If natural-looking colors cannot be obtained with Auto, you can select the white balance to match the light source or set it manually by shooting a white object.
In Basic Zone modes, [AWB] (Ambience priority) is set automatically. ([AWBW] (White priority) is set in < > mode.)

---

1. **Select [: White balance].**



2. **Select an option.**



- Turn the < > dial to select a white balance option.

Note

- For [AWB] and [AWBW] setting instructions, see [AWB] Auto White Balance.
- To set your preferred color temperature, select [K] in [: **White balance**], press the [] button, then turn the < > dial.

(Approx.)

Display	Mode	Color Temperature (K: Kelvin)
AWB	Auto (Ambience priority)	3000–7000
AWBW	Auto (White priority)	
☀	Daylight	5200
	Shade	7000
☁	Cloudy, twilight, sunset	6000
	Tungsten light	3200
	White fluorescent light	4000
ϟ	When using Flash	Automatically set*
	Custom	2000–10000
K	Color temperature	2500–10000

* Applicable with Speedlites having a color temperature transmission function. Otherwise, it will be fixed to approx. 6000K.

White Balance

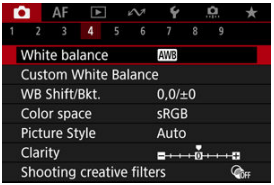
The human eye adapts to changes in lighting so that white objects look white under all kinds of lighting. Cameras determine white from the color temperature of lighting and, based on this, apply image processing to make color tones look natural in your shots.

[AWB] Auto White Balance

With [AWB] (Ambience priority), you can slightly increase the intensity of the image's warm color cast when shooting a tungsten-light scene.

If you select [AWBW] (White priority), you can reduce the intensity of the image's warm color cast.

1. **Select [: White balance].**



2. **Select [AWB].**



- With [AWB] selected, press the < > button.

3. **Select an option.**



Caution

Precautions when set to [AWBW] (White priority)

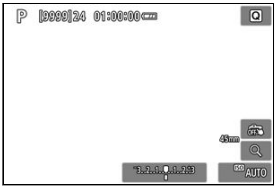
- The warm color cast of subjects may fade.
- When multiple light sources are included in the scene, the warm color cast of the picture may not be reduced.
- When using flash, the color tone will be the same as with [AWB] (Ambience priority).

[ ] Custom White Balance ☆

With custom white balance, you can manually set the white balance for the specific light source of the shooting location. Make sure to perform this procedure under the light source at the actual location of the shoot.

Registration from an image on a card

1. **Shoot a white object.**

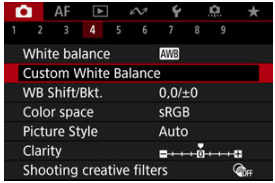


- Aim the camera at a plain white object, so that white fills the screen.
- Set the camera to manual focus ( ) and shoot so that the white object has standard exposure.
- You can use any of the white balance settings.

Caution

- Correct white balance may not be obtained if the exposure of your image differs greatly from standard exposure.
- These images cannot be selected: images captured with the Picture Style set to [**Monochrome**], images that are cropped or have a Creative filter applied, or images from other cameras.

2. **Select [: Custom White Balance].**



3. **Import the white balance data.**



- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select the image captured in step 1, then press the < (SET) > button.
- Select [**OK**] to import the data.

4. **Select [: White balance].**

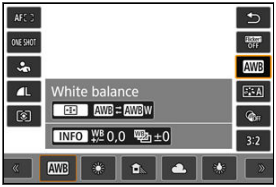
5. **Select [].**



Shooting and registering white balances

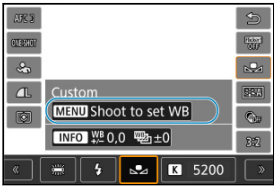
1. **Press the < > button.**

2. **Select a white balance setting.**



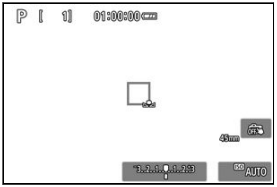
- Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys for selection.

3. **Select [Shoot to set WB].**

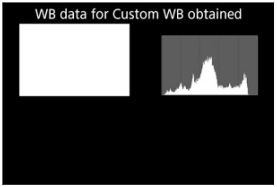


- Turn the < > dial to select [ ], then press the < MENU > button.

4. Shoot a white object.



- Aim the camera at a plain white object, so that white fills the screen.
- Set the camera to manual focus ( ) and shoot so that the white object has standard exposure.
- The custom white balance is registered to the camera.



Caution

- Correct white balance may not be obtained if the exposure of your image differs greatly from standard exposure.

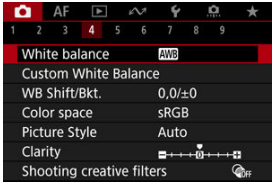
Note

- Instead of shooting a white object, you can also shoot a gray card or standard 18% gray reflector (commercially available).

[K] Color Temperature

A value can be set representing the white balance color temperature.

1. **Select [: White balance].**

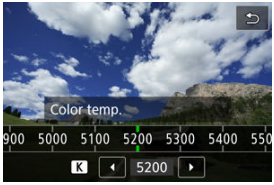


2. **Select a color temperature.**



- With [K] selected, press the < > button.

3. **Set the color temperature.**



- Turn the < > dial to set a color temperature, then press the < > button.
- The color temperature can be set from approx. 2500K to 10000K in 100K increments.

Note

- When setting the color temperature for an artificial light source, set the white balance correction (magenta or green bias) as necessary.
- When setting [K] to a value measured with a commercially available color temperature meter, take some test shots in advance and adjust the setting as needed to compensate for any difference between the color temperature meter and the camera.

White Balance Correction ☆

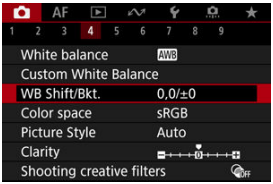
White Balance Correction

White Balance Auto Bracketing

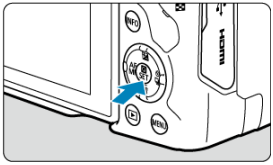
You can correct the white balance that is set. This adjustment will have the same effect as using a commercially available color temperature conversion filter or color compensating filter.

White Balance Correction

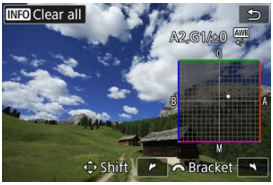
1. **Select [: WB Shift/Bkt.].**



2. Set the white balance correction.



Sample setting: A2, G1



- Press the < ✥ > keys to move the [■] mark on the screen to your preferred position.
- B is for blue, A for amber, M for magenta, and G for green. White balance is corrected in the direction you move the mark.
- The direction and amount of correction are indicated in the upper right of the screen.
- Pressing the < INFO > button will cancel all the [**WB Shift/Bkt.**] settings.
- Press the < SET > button to exit setup.

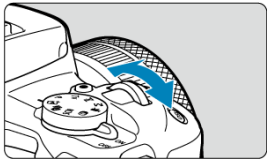
Note

- One level of the blue/amber correction is equivalent to approx. 5 mireds of a color temperature conversion filter. (Mired: Unit of measure for color temperature used to indicate values such as the density of a color temperature conversion filter.)

White Balance Auto Bracketing

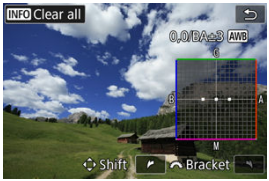
White balance bracketing enables you to capture three images at once with different color tones.

Setting the white balance bracketing amount



- In step 2 for White Balance Correction, when you turn the < > dial, the "■" mark on the screen will change to "■ ■ ■" (3 points).
  Turning the dial clockwise sets the B/A bracketing, and turning it counterclockwise sets the M/G bracketing.

B/A bias ±3 levels



- The direction and amount of bracketing are indicated in the upper right of the screen.
- Pressing the < INFO > button will cancel all the **[WB Shift/Bkt.]** settings.
- Press the < > button to exit setup.

Caution

- During white balance bracketing, the maximum burst for continuous shooting will be lower.
- Since three images are recorded for one shot, it takes longer to record the image to the card.

Note

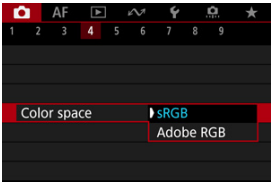
- The images will be bracketed in the following sequence: 1. Standard white balance, 2. Blue (B) bias, and 3. Amber (A) bias, or 1. Standard white balance, 2. Magenta (M) bias, and 3. Green (G) bias.
- You can also set white balance correction and AEB together with white balance bracketing. If you set AEB in combination with white balance bracketing, a total of nine images will be recorded for a single shot.
- The white balance icon blinks to indicate that white balance bracketing has been set.
- **Bracket** stands for bracketing.

Color Space ☆

The range of reproducible colors is called the “color space.” For normal shooting, sRGB is recommended.
In Basic Zone, [**sRGB**] is set automatically.

1. **Select [: Color space].**

2. **Set a color space option.**



- Select [**sRGB**] or [**Adobe RGB**], then press the < > button.

Adobe RGB

This color space is mainly used for commercial printing and other professional applications. Recommended when using equipment such as Adobe RGB-compatible monitors or DCF 2.0 (Exif 2.21 or later) compatible printers.

Note

- File names of still photos shot in the Adobe RGB color space begin with “_”.
- The ICC profile is not appended. For the descriptions about the ICC profile, refer to the Digital Photo Professional Instruction Manual (EOS software).

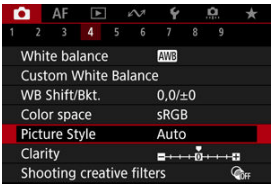
Picture Style Selection ☆

Picture Style Characteristics

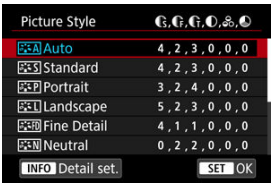
Symbols

Just by selecting a preset Picture Style, you can obtain image characteristics effectively matching your photographic expression or the subject.

1. **Select [: Picture Style].**



2. **Select a Picture Style.**



Picture Style Characteristics

- **Auto**
  The color tone will be adjusted automatically to suit the scene. The colors will look vivid for blue skies, greenery and sunsets, particularly in nature, outdoor, and sunset scenes.

  Note

  - If the desired color tone is not obtained with [**Auto**], use another Picture Style.

- **Standard**
  The image looks vivid, sharp, and crisp. Suitable for most scenes.

- **Portrait**
  For smooth skin tones, with slightly less sharpness. Suited for close-up portraits. Skin tone can be adjusted by changing [**Color tone**] as described in Settings and Effects.

- **Landscape**
  For vivid blues and greens, and very sharp and crisp images. Effective for impressive landscapes.

- **Fine Detail**
  For detailed rendering of fine subject contours and subtle textures. The colors will be slightly vivid.

- **Neutral**
  For retouching later on a computer. Makes images subdued, with lower contrast and natural color tones.

- **Faithful**
  For retouching later on a computer. Faithfully reproduces the actual colors of subjects as measured in daylight with a color temperature of 5200K. Makes images subdued, with lower contrast.

- **Monochrome**
  Creates black-and-white images.

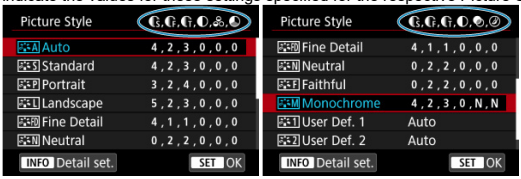
  Caution

  - Color images cannot be recovered from JPEG/HEIF images shot with the [**Monochrome**] Picture Style.

- **User Def. 1–3**
  You can add a new style based on presets such as [**Portrait**] or [**Landscape**] or a Picture Style file, then adjust it as needed ( ). Shots taken with a style you have not customized yet will have the same characteristics as the default [**Auto**] setting.

Symbols

Icons on the Picture Style selection screen represent [**Strength**], [**Fineness**], and [**Threshold**] for [**Sharpness**] as well as [**Contrast**] and other parameters. The numbers indicate the values for these settings specified for the respective Picture Style.



	Sharpness	
		Strength
		Fineness
		Threshold
	Contrast	
	Saturation	
	Color tone	
	Filter effect (Monochrome)	
	Toning effect (Monochrome)	

Caution

- For movie recording, "*, *" is indicated for the [**Fineness**] and [**Threshold**] parameters of [**Sharpness**]. [**Fineness**] and [**Threshold**] cannot be set for movie recording.

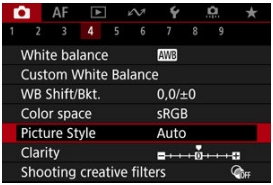
Picture Style Customization ☆

Settings and Effects

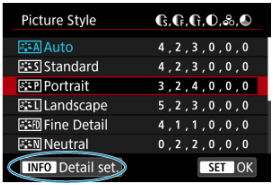
Monochrome Adjustment

You can customize any Picture Style by changing it from the default settings. For details on customizing [**Monochrome**], see Monochrome Adjustment.

1. **Select [: Picture Style].**

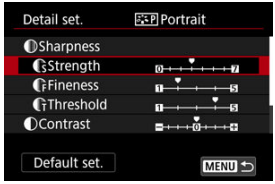


2. **Select a Picture Style.**



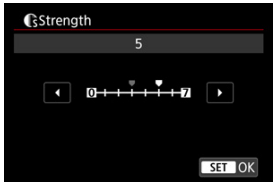
- Select the Picture Style to adjust, then press the <INFO> button.

3. Select an option.

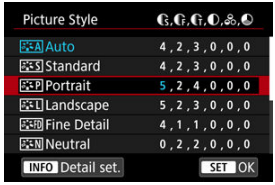


- Select an option, then press the < (SET) > button.
- For details on settings and effects, see Settings and Effects.

4. Set the effect level.



- Adjust the effect level, then press the < (SET) > button.



- Press the < MENU > button to save the adjusted setting and return to the Picture Style selection screen.
- Any settings you change from default values are displayed in blue.

Note

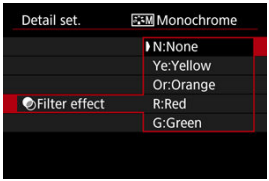
- For movie recording, [**Fineness**] and [**Threshold**] for [**Sharpness**] cannot be set (not displayed).
- By selecting [**Default set.**] in step 3, you can restore the parameter settings of the respective Picture Style to the defaults.
- To shoot with the Picture Style you adjusted, first select the adjusted Picture Style, then shoot.

Settings and Effects

	Sharpness			
		Strength	0: Weak outline emphasis	7: Strong outline emphasis
		Fineness*1	1: Fine	5: Grainy
		Threshold*2	1: Low	5: High
	Contrast		–4: Low contrast	+4: High contrast
	Saturation		–4: Low saturation	+4: High saturation
	Color tone		–4: Reddish skin tone	+4: Yellowish skin tone

* 1: Indicates the edge thinness that enhancement applies to. The smaller the number, the finer the outlines that can be emphasized.
* 2: Contrast threshold between edges and surrounding image areas, which determines edge enhancement. The smaller the number, the more the outline will be emphasized when the contrast difference is low. However, noise tends to be more noticeable when the number is smaller.

Filter effect



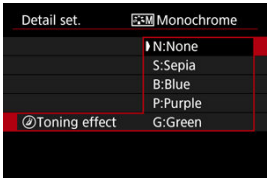
With a filter effect applied to a monochrome image, you can make white clouds or green trees stand out more.

Filter	Sample Effects
N:None	Normal black-and-white image with no filter effects.
Ye:Yellow	Blue sky will look more natural, and white clouds will look crisper.
Or:Orange	The blue sky will look slightly darker. The sunset will look more brilliant.
R:Red	The blue sky will look quite dark. Fall leaves will look crisper and brighter.
G:Green	Skin tones and lips will appear muted. Green tree leaves will look crisper and brighter.

Note

- Increasing [**Contrast**] will make the filter effect more pronounced.

Toning effect

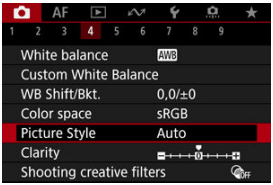


By applying a toning effect, you can create a monochrome image in the selected color. Effective when you want to create memorable images.

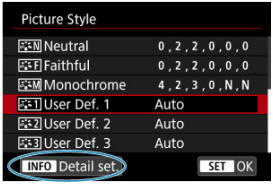
Picture Style Registration ☆

You can select a base Picture Style such as [**Portrait**] or [**Landscape**], adjust it as desired, and register it under [**User Def. 1**] – [**User Def. 3**]. Useful when creating several Picture Styles with different settings.
Picture Styles that you have registered on the camera using EOS Utility (EOS software,) can also be modified here.

1. **Select [: Picture Style].**

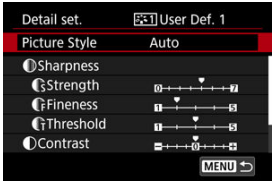


2. **Select [User Def.].**



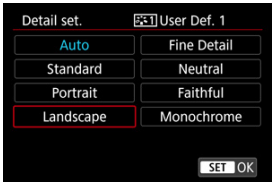
- Select [**User Def. ***], then press the < INFO > button.

3. **Press the < (SET) > button.**



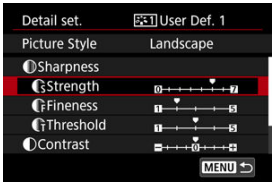
- With [**Picture Style**] selected, press the < (SET) > button.

4. **Select a base Picture Style.**



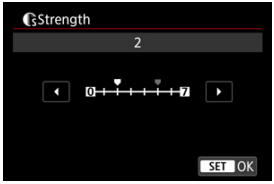
- Select the base Picture Style, then press the < (SET) > button.
- Also select styles this way when adjusting styles registered to the camera with EOS Utility (EOS software).

5. **Select an option.**

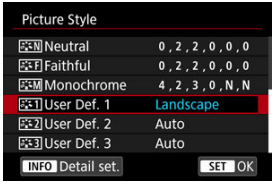


- Select an option, then press the < (SET) > button.

6. **Set the effect level.**



- Adjust the effect level, then press the < (SET) > button.
- For details, see Picture Style Customization.



- Press the < MENU > button to save the adjusted setting and return to the Picture Style selection screen.
- The base Picture Style will be indicated on the right of [**User Def. ***].
- Blue style names in [**User Def. ***] have been changed from default values.

Caution

- If a Picture Style is already registered under [**User Def. ***], changing the base Picture Style will clear the parameter settings of the previously registered User Defined Picture Style.
- You can restore the default [**User Def. ***] style and settings by selecting [**Basic settings**] in [: **Reset camera**].

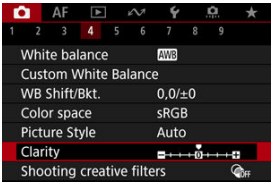
Note

- To shoot with a registered Picture Style, select the registered [**User Def. ***], then shoot.
- For instructions on registering a Picture Style file to the camera, refer to the EOS Utility Instruction Manual.

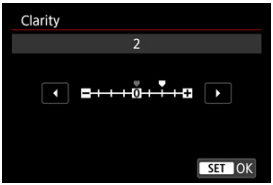
Clarity ☆

You can adjust image clarity, as determined by the contrast of image edges.
Set toward the negative end to make images look softer or toward the positive end for a sharper appearance.

1. **Select [: Clarity].**



2. **Set the effect level.**



Caution

- Setting clarity may darken or lighten the areas around boundaries in high-contrast images.
- The effect of this setting is not shown in images on the screen in still photo shooting.

Shooting Creative Filters ☆

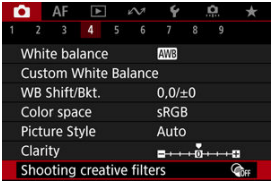
Configuring Shooting Creative Filters

Characteristics of Shooting Creative Filters

You can shoot with filter effects applied. Note that only images with the filter effects applied are saved.

Configuring Shooting Creative Filters

1. **Select [: Shooting creative filters].**



Caution

- The camera shoots in single shooting mode when a Creative filter is set, regardless of the drive mode setting (< >, < >, or < >).

2. Select a filter effect.



- Turn the < > dial to select a filter effect ( ).
- The image is shown with the filter effect applied.

Caution

- Some items on the AF tab are not available with [**Fish-eye effect**] or [**Miniature effect**] selected.

3. Adjust the filter effect.



- Press the < INFO > button.
- Turn the < > dial to adjust the filter effect ( ).

4. Take the picture.

- The images captured have the filter effect applied.

Note

- Different creative filter effects are available in movie recording ( ).

Characteristics of Shooting Creative Filters

- **Grainy B/W**
  Makes the image grainy and black and white. By adjusting the contrast, you can change the black-and-white effect.

- **Soft focus**
  Gives the image a soft look. By adjusting the blur, you can change the degree of softness.

- **Fish-eye effect**
  Gives the effect of a fish-eye lens. The image will have barrel distortion.
  Depending on the level of this filter effect, the area trimmed along the periphery of the image changes. Also, because this filter effect magnifies the center of the image, the apparent resolution at the center may degrade depending on the number of recorded pixels, so set the filter effect while checking the resulting image.
  [**AF area**] is set to [**1-point AF**].

- **Art bold effect**
  Makes the photo look like an oil painting and the subject look more three-dimensional. By adjusting the effect, you can change the contrast and saturation. Note that subjects such as the sky or white walls may not be rendered with a smooth gradation and may look uneven or noisy.

- **Water painting effect**
  Makes the photo look like a watercolor painting with soft colors. By adjusting the effect, you can change the color density. Note that night scenes or dark scenes may not be rendered with a smooth gradation and may look uneven or noisy.

- **Toy camera effect**
  Shifts colors to those typical of toy cameras and darkens the four corners of the image. Color tone options can be used to change the color cast.

- **Miniature effect**
  Creates a diorama effect.
  Shooting under the default setting will keep the center looking sharp.
  To move the area that looks sharp (the scene frame), see “Adjusting the Miniature Effect” (🔗).
  [**AF area**] is set to [**1-point AF**]. Shooting with the AF point and scene frame aligned is recommended.

Caution

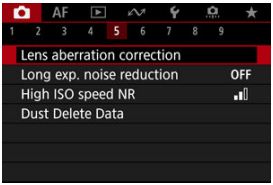
- With [**Grainy B/W**], the grainy preview will differ somewhat from the appearance of your shots.
- With [**Soft focus**] or [**Miniature effect**] options, the blurred effect preview may differ somewhat from the appearance of your shots.
- No histogram is displayed.
- A magnified view is not available.

Lens Aberration Correction ☆

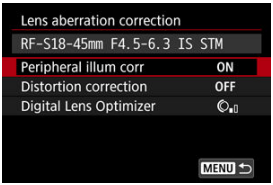
- Peripheral Illumination Correction
- Distortion Correction
- Focus Breathing Correction
- Digital Lens Optimizer
- Chromatic Aberration Correction
- Diffraction Correction

Vignetting, image distortion, and other issues may be caused by lens optical characteristics. The camera can compensate for these phenomena by using [**Lens aberration correction**].

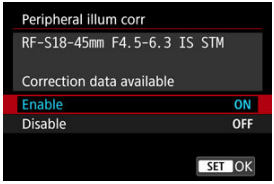
1. **Select [: Lens aberration correction].**



2. **Select an option.**



3. **Select a setting.**



- Confirm that the name of the attached lens and [**Correction data available**] are displayed.
- If [**Correction data not available**] or [ ] is displayed, see Digital Lens Optimizer.

Peripheral Illumination Correction

Vignetting (dark image corners) can be corrected.

Caution

- Depending on shooting conditions, noise may appear on the image periphery.
- The higher the ISO speed, the lower the amount of correction will be.

Note

- The amount of correction applied will be lower than the maximum correction amount applied with Digital Photo Professional (EOS software).

Distortion Correction

Distortion (image warping) can be corrected.

Caution

- Specifying distortion correction may subtly change the angle of view, resulting in images that are cropped a little and seem slightly less sharp.
- The amount of image cropped may vary between still photos and movies.

Note

- With RF lenses, distortion correction during movie recording is supported.

Focus Breathing Correction

Angle of view fluctuations from changes in focal position during movie recording can be reduced.
This feature can be configured when [**Distortion correction**] is set to [**Enable**].

Caution

- [**Focus breathing correction**] is not displayed in still photo shooting.
- Applying focus breathing correction will narrow the angle of view. The extent of narrowing depends on shooting conditions.
- Test focus breathing correction before use, because the image processing may affect apparent image resolution and noise.
- Optimal correction is applied based on the position of the focusing distance range switch on the lens. (The correction is also applied in MF mode.) Correction is not applied to any difference between the actual focusing distance and the range of the switch.
- Movies with abrupt changes to the angle of view may be recorded if you move the focusing distance range switch during recording.
- Correction artifacts may occur, depending on the lens and shooting conditions.
- For details on lenses compatible with this feature, visit the Canon website ( ).

Digital Lens Optimizer

Various aberrations from lens optical characteristics can be corrected, along with diffraction and low-pass filter-induced loss of resolution.
If [**Correction data not available**] or [] is displayed by [**Digital Lens Optimizer**], you can use EOS Utility to add the lens correction data to the camera. For details, refer to the EOS Utility Instruction Manual.

Caution

- Image processing after you shoot takes longer when set to [**High**] (which causes the access lamp to be illuminated longer).
- Maximum burst is lower with [**High**]. Image recording to the card also takes longer.
- Depending on shooting conditions, noise may be intensified together with the effects of correction. Image edges may also be emphasized. Adjust Picture Style sharpness or set [**Digital Lens Optimizer**] to [**Disable**] as needed before shooting.
- The higher the ISO speed, the lower the amount of correction will be.
- For movie recording, [**Digital Lens Optimizer**] will not appear. (Correction is not possible.)
- The effect of Digital Lens Optimizer cannot be checked on the screen at the time of shooting.

Note

- With [**Digital Lens Optimizer**] set to [**Standard**] or [**High**], [**Chromatic aberr corr**] and [**Diffraction correction**] are not displayed, but they are both set to [**Enable**] for shooting.

Chromatic Aberration Correction

Chromatic aberration (color fringing around subjects) can be corrected.

Note

- [**Chromatic aberr corr**] is not displayed when [**Digital Lens Optimizer**] is set to [**Standard**] or [**High**].

Diffraction Correction

Diffraction (loss of sharpness caused by the aperture) can be corrected.

Caution

- Depending on shooting conditions, noise may be intensified together with the effects of correction.
- The higher the ISO speed, the lower the amount of correction will be.
- For movie recording, [**Diffraction correction**] will not appear. (Correction is not possible.)
- The effect of diffraction correction cannot be checked on the screen at the time of shooting.

Note

- “Diffraction correction” corrects degraded resolution not only from diffraction but also from the low-pass filter and other factors. Thus, correction is also effective for exposures with the aperture wide open.
- [**Diffraction correction**] is not displayed when [**Digital Lens Optimizer**] is set to [**Standard**] or [**High**].

Caution

General precautions for lens aberration correction

- Lens aberration correction cannot be applied to existing JPEG/HEIF images.
- When using a non-Canon lens, setting the corrections to [**Disable**] is recommended even if [**Correction data available**] is displayed.
- Magnifying the periphery of the image may display parts of the image that will not be recorded.
- The amount of correction (except diffraction correction) is less for lenses that do not provide distance information.

Note

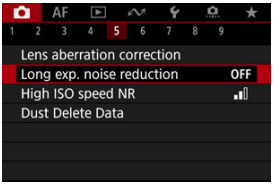
General notes for lens aberration correction

- Effects of lens aberration correction vary by lens and shooting conditions. Also, the effect may be difficult to discern depending on the lens used, shooting conditions, etc.
- If the correction is difficult to discern, magnifying and checking the image after shooting is recommended.
- Corrections are applied even when an extender or life-size converter is attached.
- If the correction data for the attached lens is not registered to the camera, the result will be the same as when the correction is set to [**Disable**] (except for diffraction correction).
- If necessary, refer to the EOS Utility Instruction Manual as well.

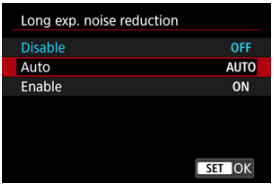
Long Exposure Noise Reduction ☆

Noise such as dots of light or banding that tends to occur in long exposures at shutter speeds of one sec. or slower can be reduced.

1. **Select [: Long exp. noise reduction].**



2. **Set a reduction option.**



- **Auto**
  For images exposed for 1 sec. or longer, noise reduction is performed automatically if noise typical of long exposures is detected. This setting is effective enough in most cases.

- **Enable**
  Noise reduction is performed for all images exposed for 1 sec. or longer. The [**Enable**] setting may reduce noise that cannot be detected with the [**Auto**] setting.

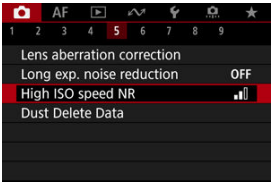
Caution

- With [**Auto**] or [**Enable**] set, noise reduction after you shoot may take as long as exposure for the shot.
- Images may look grainier with the [**Enable**] setting than with the [**Disable**] or [**Auto**] setting.
- [**BUSY**] is displayed as noise is reduced, and the shooting screen is not displayed until processing is finished, when you can shoot again.

High ISO Speed Noise Reduction ☆

You can reduce the image noise generated. This function is especially effective when shooting at high ISO speeds. When shooting at low ISO speeds, the noise in the darker parts of the image (shadow areas) can further be reduced.

1. **Select [: High ISO speed NR].**



2. **Set the level.**



- **Low, Standard, High**
  The camera applies an amount of noise reduction corresponding to your specified level.

- **Multi Shot Noise Reduction**
  Applies noise reduction with higher image quality than [**High**]. For a single photo, four shots are taken continuously and aligned and merged automatically into a single JPEG image.
  Note that [**Multi Shot Noise Reduction**] is not available with image quality set to RAW or RAW+JPEG.

Caution

Precautions on Multi Shot Noise Reduction

- If there is significant misalignment in the image due to camera shake, the noise reduction effect may become smaller.
- Be careful about camera shake in handheld shots. Using a tripod is recommended.
- If you shoot a moving subject, the moving subject may leave afterimages.
- Auto image alignment may not function properly with repetitive patterns (lattice, stripes, etc.) or flat, single-tone images.
- If the subject's brightness changes as the four consecutive shots are taken, irregular exposure in the image may result.
- After shooting, it may take some time to record an image to the card after performing noise reduction and merging the images. "**BUSY**" is displayed as images are processed, and shooting is not possible until processing is finished.
- [**Multi Shot Noise Reduction**] is not available with any of these features: bulb exposures, AEB, WB bracketing, RAW/RAW+JPEG, long exposure noise reduction, HDR mode/HDR PQ settings, focus bracketing or Creative filter shooting.
- Flash photography is not available. Note that the AF-assist beam of Speedlites may be fired, depending on the [**AF**: **AF-assist beam firing**] setting.
- The camera automatically switches to [**Standard**] when RAW or RAW+JPEG image quality is set.
- Automatically switches to [**Standard**] if you set the power switch to < OFF >, replace the battery or card, or switch to Basic Zone modes, bulb exposure, or movie recording.

Dust Delete Data Acquisition ☆

Preparation

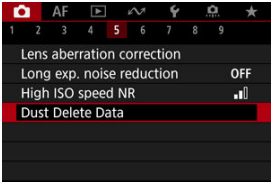
Dust Delete Data Appending

Dust Delete Data used to erase dust spots can be appended to images. The Dust Delete Data is used by Digital Photo Professional (EOS software) to erase the dust spots automatically.

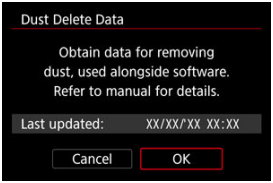
Preparation

- Use an RF or EF lens.
- Prepare a solid white object such as a sheet of paper.
- Set the lens focal length to 50 mm or longer.
- Set the focus mode to MF ( ) and focus manually at infinity (∞). If the lens has no distance scale, rotate the camera to face toward you and turn the focusing ring clockwise all the way.

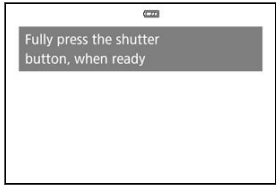
1. **Select [: Dust Delete Data].**



2. **Select [OK].**



3. **Shoot a plain white object.**



- Shoot with a plain white object (such as a new sheet of white paper) filling the screen, at a distance of 20–30 cm (0.7–1.0 ft.).
- Since the image will not be saved, the data can still be obtained even if there is no card in the camera.



- When the picture is taken, the camera will start collecting the Dust Delete Data. When the Dust Delete Data is obtained, a message will appear.
- If the data is not obtained successfully, an error message will appear. Check the information in Preparation, select [**OK**], and shoot again.

Dust Delete Data Appending

The camera will append the Dust Delete Data obtained to all shots from now on. Acquiring Dust Delete Data before shooting is recommended.
For details about using Digital Photo Professional (EOS software) to erase dust spots automatically, refer to the Digital Photo Professional Instruction Manual.
File size is essentially unaffected by Dust Delete Data appended to images.

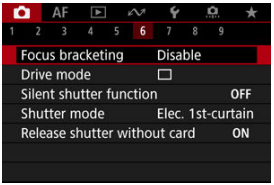
Caution

- If the object has any pattern or design, it may be recognized as dust data and affect the accuracy of the dust deletion with the Digital Photo Professional (EOS software).
- Dust Delete Data is not added to shots taken under the following conditions.
  - In [ ] or [ ] (< SCN > mode) shooting
  - In [ ] (< > mode) shooting
  - When multi-shot noise reduction is set
  - In HDR mode shooting
  - When [**Distortion correction**] in [: **Lens aberration correction**] is set to [**Enable**]

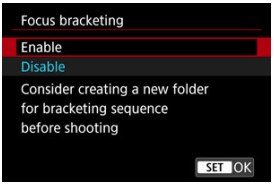
Focus Bracketing ☆

Focus bracketing enables continuous shooting with the focal distance changed automatically after each shot. These images enable you to create a single image in focus over a deep depth of field. Compositing is also possible using an application that supports depth compositing, such as Digital Photo Professional (EOS software).

1. **Select [: Focus bracketing].**



2. **Set [Focus bracketing].**



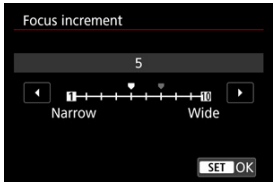
- Select [**Enable**].

3. **Set [Number of shots].**



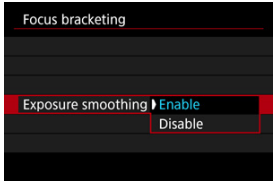
- Specify the number of images captured per shot.
- Can be set in a range of [**2**]–[**999**].

4. **Set [Focus increment].**



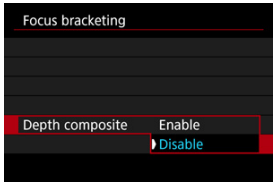
- Specify how much to shift the focus. This amount is automatically adjusted to suit the aperture value at the time of shooting.
  Larger aperture values increase the focus shift and make focus bracketing cover a wider range under the same focus increment and number of shots.
- After completing the settings, press the <(SET)> button.

5. **Set [Exposure smoothing].**



- You can compensate for changes in image brightness during focus bracketing by selecting [**Enable**], so that the camera makes adjustments based on differences between the displayed and actual aperture value (effective f/number), which varies by focal position.
- Select [**Disable**] if you prefer not to compensate for changes in image brightness during focus bracketing. Use this option for purposes other than depth compositing of the captured images in applications such as DPP.

6. **Set [Depth composite].**

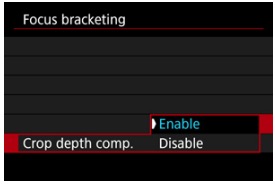


- Select [**Enable**] for in-camera depth compositing. The depth-composited image is saved.
- Select [**Disable**] if you prefer not to perform in-camera depth compositing. Only captured images are saved.

Caution

- Depth-composited images are saved as JPEGs.
- M/M/S1/S1/S2 image quality is not available. Settings are adjusted so that the resulting image is L for M/S1/S2 or L for M/S1.

7. Set [Crop depth comp.].



- Select [**Enable**] for cropping before compositing, to prepare any images without a sufficient angle of view for compositing alignment by cropping them to correct the angle of view.
- Select [**Disable**] if you prefer not to crop these images. In this case, areas without a sufficient angle of view are covered by a black border in the saved images. You can crop the images manually or edit them as needed.

8. Take the picture.

- To save your shots in a new folder, tap [ ] and select [**OK**].
- Focus at the nearer end of your preferred focal range, then press the shutter button completely.
- Once shooting begins, release the shutter button.
- The camera shoots continuously, shifting the focal position toward infinity.
- Shooting ends after your specified number of images, or at the far end of the focal range.
- To cancel shooting, press the shutter button completely again.

Caution

- Focus bracketing is intended for still photo shooting on a tripod.
- Shooting with a wider angle of view is recommended. After depth compositing, you can crop the image if necessary.
- For details on lenses compatible with this feature, visit the Canon website ( ).
- Suitable [**Focus increment**] settings vary by subject. An unsuitable [**Focus increment**] setting may cause unevenness in composite images, or shooting may take more time because more shots are taken. Take some test shots to decide a suitable [**Focus increment**] setting.
- Flash photography is not available.
- Shooting under flickering light may cause uneven images. In this case, lowering the shutter speed may give better results.
- Focus bracketing is not available when the camera is set to manual focus ( ).
- Canceling shooting in progress may cause exposure problems in the last image. Avoid using the last image when combining the images in Digital Photo Professional.
- Depth compositing is canceled if you open the card/battery compartment cover, or if the remaining battery capacity becomes too low. After cancellation, composited images are not saved.
- Depth compositing may fail for patterned images (with a lattice or stripes, for example) or images that are generally flat and uniform.
- When taking several shots, start by focusing closer, then gradually focus farther away.
- Too great a distance when moving the focal position between multiple shots may cause unevenness in depth-composited images, or it may cause compositing to fail.
- Depth compositing is intended for subjects that are not moving. For this reason, shooting subjects in motion may prevent effective compositing.
- Depth compositing of images with multiple subjects may fail if your shots are composed with the subjects far apart from each other, for example.
- In depth compositing, optimal images from the shots are selected and combined by the camera. Not all of the shots are combined to create the composite image.

Note

- Consider using a tripod, wireless remote control (sold separately,), or other means of securing the camera.
- For best results, set the aperture value in a range of f/5.6–11 before shooting.
- Details such as shutter speed, aperture value, and ISO speed are determined by conditions for the first shot.
- [: **Focus bracketing**] reverts to [**Disable**] when the power switch is set to <OFF>.

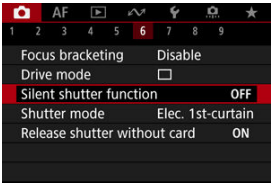
Silent Shutter Function ☆

Disables shutter release sounds, operating sounds, and firing and illumination of the flash and other light sources.
The following settings are used and cannot be changed.

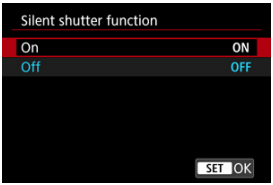
- Anti-flicker shooting: [**Disable**]
- Flash firing: [**Off**]
- Shooting creative filters: [**Off**]
- Long exposure noise reduction: [**Disable**]
- Shutter mode: [**Electronic**]
- AF-assist beam firing: [**Disable**]
- Beep: [**Disable**]
- Self-timer lamp: not illuminated
- Remote control lamp: not illuminated

When using lenses equipped with focus preset, consider turning off the focus preset beep.

1. **Select [: Silent shutter function].**



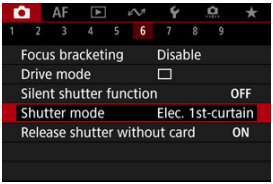
2. **Select [On].**



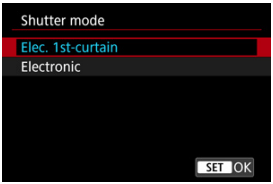
Shutter Mode ☆

You can choose the method of shutter release.

1. **Select [: Shutter mode].**



2. **Select an option.**



- **Elec. 1st-curtain**
  Electronic shutter is used for first curtain and mechanical for the second.

- **Electronic**
  Enables reduced sound and vibration from shutter operations, compared to electronic first-curtain.
  Recommended when shooting with the aperture of a bright lens wide open.
  Maximum shutter speed can be set higher than for electronic first-curtain.
  - A white frame is displayed around the screen at the time of shooting when [: **Drive mode**] is set to [] or [].
  - Shutter operations are accompanied by beeps. Beeping can be disabled in [: **Beep**] or [: **Volume**].

Caution

- Defocused image areas may be incomplete when shooting near maximum aperture at high shutter speeds, depending on shooting conditions. If you dislike the appearance of defocused image areas, shooting as follows may give better results.
  - Shoot with [**Electronic**].
  - Lower the shutter speed.
  - Increase the aperture value.
- Setting [: **Silent shutter function**] to [**On**] sets the shutter mode to [**Electronic**].
- Zooming during continuous shooting may cause changes in exposure even at the same f/number. For details, refer to the Canon website ( ).

Precautions when set to [Elec. 1st-curtain]

- Camera vibration blur is more likely to occur with [] than with [] or [].

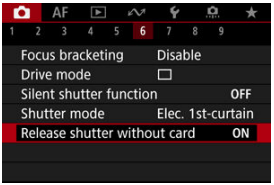
Precautions when set to [Electronic]

- The continuous shooting speed may become slower depending on the shooting conditions.
- Images of fast-moving subjects may look distorted.
- Images may lack suitable exposure if the aperture value changes in <**P**> (Program AE) or <**Tv**> (Shutter-priority AE) mode.
- With some lenses and under some shooting conditions, lens focusing and aperture adjustment may be audible.
- Bands of light may be displayed and captured images may be affected by light and dark banding if you shoot with electronic shutter during flash firing by other cameras or under fluorescent lighting or other flickering light sources.
- Banding may appear in the viewfinder or on the screen if you shoot under flickering light sources.
- The camera shoots in [] mode, even when [: **Drive mode**] is set to [].

Releasing Shutter without Card

You can set the camera not to shoot unless there is a card in the camera. The default setting is [**Enable**].

1. **Select [: Release shutter without card].**

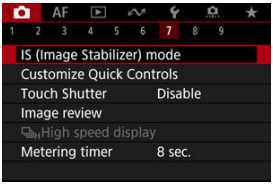


2. **Select [Disable].**

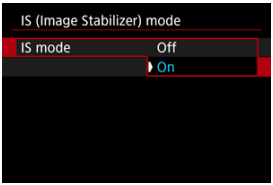
Image Stabilizer (IS Mode)

Image stabilization by the lens reduces camera shake at the time of shooting. To activate lens IS when using IS lenses without an IS switch, set [**IS mode**] to [**On**] as follows. Note that the [**IS mode**] setting is not displayed when you are using IS lenses that have an IS switch. In that case, setting the lens IS switch to < ON > activates stabilization by the lens.

1. **Select [: IS (Image Stabilizer) mode].**



2. **Select an [IS mode] option.**



- **[Off]**
  Deactivates image stabilization.
- **[On]**
  Camera shake will be corrected.

Caution

- In some cases, this may not provide sufficient stabilization for certain lenses.

Note

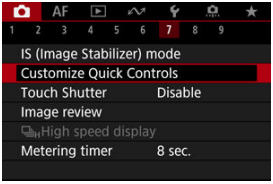
- For details on image stabilization for movie recording, see Movie Digital IS.

Customizing Quick Controls ☆

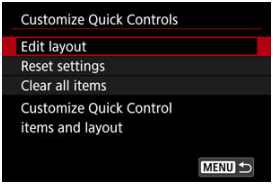
Resetting the Custom Quick Control Screen or Clearing All Items

Quick Control items and the layout are customizable.

1. **Select [: Customize Quick Controls].**



2. **Select [Edit layout].**



3. Select items to remove.



- Use the < > dial or < > keys to select an item to remove, then press the < > button.
- Items shown on the Quick Control screen are labeled with a checkmark. Items without a checkmark will be removed.

4. Select items to add.



- Use the < > dial or < > keys to select an item to add, then press the < > button.
- To change the layout, press the < INFO > button.

5. Change the layout.

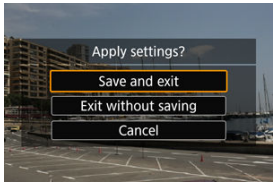


- Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select an item to move, then press the < (SET) > button.



- Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to move the item, then press the < (SET) > button.
- Press the < MENU > button to exit setup.

6. Select [Save and exit].

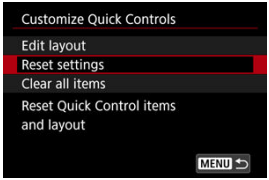


7. **Review the screen.**



- Press the < (SET) > button to check the screen with your settings applied.

Resetting the Custom Quick Control Screen or Clearing All Items



- Select [**Reset settings**] to restore the default Quick Control screen items and layout.
- Select [**Clear all items**] to remove all items from the layout, so that no Quick Control screen is displayed when the < (SET) > button is pressed.

Shooting with the Touch Shutter

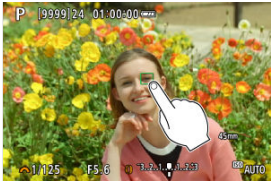
Just by tapping the screen, you can focus and take the picture automatically.

1. **Enable the Touch Shutter.**



- Tap [OFF] on the screen.
- Each time you tap the icon, it will toggle between [OFF] and [ON].
- [ON] (Touch Shutter: Enable)
  The camera will focus on the spot you tap, then the picture will be taken.
- [OFF] (Touch Shutter: Disable)
  You can tap a spot to perform focusing on the spot. Press the shutter button completely to take the picture.

2. **Tap the screen to shoot.**



- Tap the face or subject on the screen.
- On the point you tap, the camera focuses (Touch AF) using your specified AF Area.
- When [ON] is set, the AF point turns green when focus is achieved, then the picture is taken automatically.
- If focus is not achieved, the AF point turns orange and the picture cannot be taken. Tap the face or subject on the screen again.

Caution

- The camera shoots in single shooting mode regardless of the drive mode setting ([ ], [H], or [ ]).
- Tapping the screen focuses with [**One-Shot AF**], even if [AF: **AF operation**] is set to [**Servo AF**].
- Tapping the screen in magnified view will not focus or take the picture.
- When shooting by tapping with [**Review duration**] in [: **Image review**] set to [**Hold**], you can take the next shot by pressing the shutter button halfway or tapping [ ].

Note

- To shoot with bulb exposure, tap the screen twice. Tap once to start exposure and again to stop it. Be careful not to shake the camera when tapping the screen.

Image Review

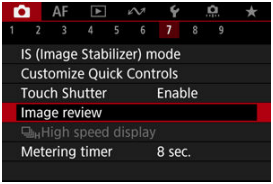
Review Duration

Viewfinder Display

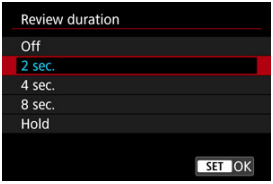
Review Duration

To keep the image displayed immediately after you shoot, set to [**Hold**], and if you prefer not to have the image displayed, set to [**Off**].

1. **Select [: Image review].**



2. **Select [Review duration].**



3. **Set a time option.**

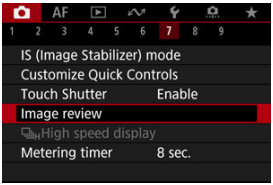
Note

- When [**Hold**] is set, images are displayed as long as the time set in the [**Screen off**] option of [: **Power saving**].

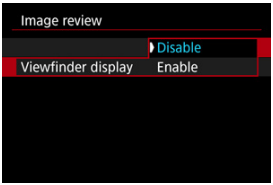
Viewfinder Display

Set to [**Enable**] for viewfinder display of your shots immediately after you shoot.

1. **Select [: Image review].**



2. **Select [Viewfinder display].**



3. **Select an option.**

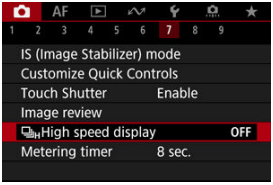
Note

- [**Viewfinder display**] settings take effect when [**Review duration**] is set to an option other than [**Off**].

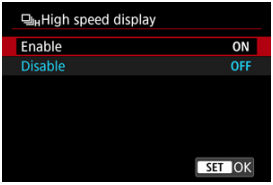
High-Speed Display ☆

High-speed display that switches between each shot and the live image is available when shooting in [H] (high-speed continuous shooting) drive mode and in a shutter mode other than electronic shutter.

1. **Select [: HHigh speed display].**



2. **Select an option.**



- Select [**Enable**] for display that switches between each shot and the live image.

Caution

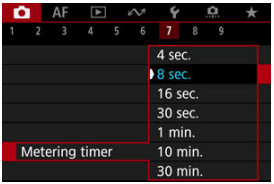
- Images may waver or flicker during high-speed display. This occurs more often at high shutter speeds. However, this does not affect shooting results.
- High-speed display is not performed for shutter speeds slower than 1/30 sec., aperture values higher than f/11, conditions that make autofocusing difficult, flash photography, or high ISO expansion. It may also stop as you are shooting.
- High-speed display is not available in the following cases.
  - With [📷: **OVF sim. view assist**] set to [**On**]
  - With [📷: **Display simulation**] set to [**Disable**] or [**Exposure only during DOF**]

Metering Timer ☆

You can set how long the metering timer runs (which determines the duration of exposure value display) after it is triggered automatically by an action such as pressing the shutter button halfway.

1. **Select [: Metering timer].**

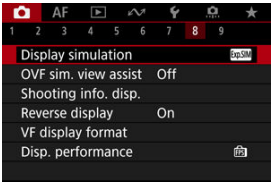
2. **Set a time option.**



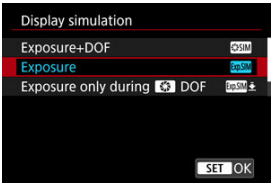
Display Simulation ☆

With display simulation, display of image brightness and depth of field more closely matches the actual brightness (exposure) of your shots.

1. **Select [: Display simulation].**



2. **Select an option.**



- **Exposure+DOF (SIM)**
  Image brightness and depth of field as displayed closely matches the actual brightness (exposure) of your shots. If you set exposure compensation, the image brightness will change accordingly. Similarly, changes to the aperture value will alter the depth of field.

- **Exposure (Exp.SIM)**
  Image brightness as displayed closely matches the actual brightness (exposure) of your shots. If you set exposure compensation, the image brightness will change accordingly.

- **Exposure only during DOF (Exp.SIM)**
  Normally, the image is displayed at standard brightness, so it is easy to see. Only when you press and hold the button assigned to depth-of-field preview will image brightness resemble actual brightness (exposure) of your shot, and you can check depth of field ( ).

- **Disable (OFF)**
  The image is displayed at standard brightness, so it is easy to see. Even if you set exposure compensation, the image is displayed at the standard brightness.

Caution

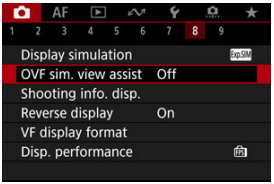
Notes on [Exposure+DOF]

- Display may flicker at some shutter speeds.
- With EF lenses, this setting may increase the shutter-release time lag.
- The depth of field shown is only a guideline. For more precise indication of the depth of field, press the button assigned to depth-of-field preview ( ).
- [**Exposure+DOF**] is not available with some lenses.
- [SIM] blinks if either exposure or depth of field cannot be simulated, or if neither can be simulated.
- [SIM] is dimmed if either exposure or depth of field simulation stops, or if both simulations stop.

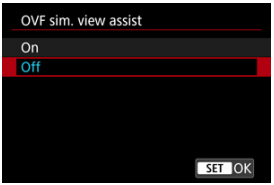
Optical Viewfinder Simulation ☆

Natural-looking viewfinder and screen display, resembling the view from an optical viewfinder, is available in still photo shooting. Note that images displayed with this feature set to [**On**] may differ from actual shooting results.

1. **Select [: OVF sim. view assist].**



2. **Select an option.**



Caution

- Setting this feature to [**On**] sets [: **Display simulation**] to [**Disable**].
- Optical viewfinder simulation is used for display when this feature is set to [**On**] in HDR shooting.
- Creative filter display is used when shooting with Creative filters, even if this feature set to [**On**].
- Image brightness before and after One-Shot AF is more likely to change when set to [**On**] than when set to [**Off**].
- Optical viewfinder simulation is not used during display to external monitors, including in display to both an external monitor and the camera screen.
- Depending on setting screens, optical viewfinder simulation may not be used for display.
- Display may not resemble an optical viewfinder in some cases.
- The display appearance may change during continuous shooting, with some combinations of drive and shutter modes.

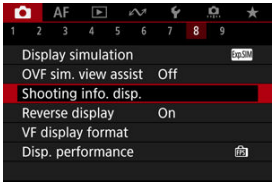
Shooting Information Display

- Customizing Information on the Screen
- Customizing Information in the Viewfinder
- Viewfinder Vertical Display
- Grid
- Histogram
- Lens Information Display
- 3D Cropping Frame
- Clearing Settings

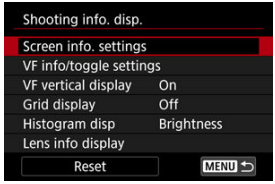
You can customize the details and screens of information shown on the screen or in the viewfinder when you shoot.

Customizing Information on the Screen

1. **Select [: Shooting info. disp.].**



2. **Select [Screen info. settings].**



3. **Select screens.**



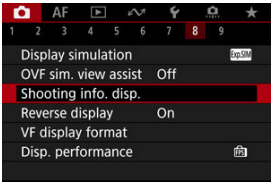
- Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select screens of information to show on the camera.
- For information you prefer not to display, press the < (SET) > button to clear the checkmark [✓].
- To edit the screen, press the < INFO > button.

4. **Edit the screen.**

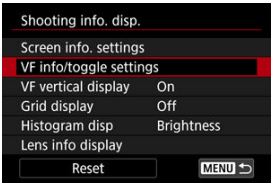


- Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select options to show on the information screen.
- For items you prefer not to display, press the < (SET) > button to clear the checkmark [✓].
- Select [**OK**] to register the setting.

1. **Select [: Shooting info. disp.].**



2. **Select [VF info/toggle settings].**



3. **Select screens.**



- Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select screens of information to show on the camera.
- For information you prefer not to display, press the < (SET) > button to clear the checkmark [✓].
- To edit the screen, press the < INFO > button.

4. Edit the screen.

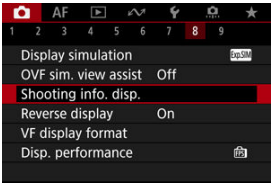


- Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select options to show on the information screen.
- For items you prefer not to display, press the < (SET) > button to clear the checkmark [✓].
- Select [**OK**] to register the setting.

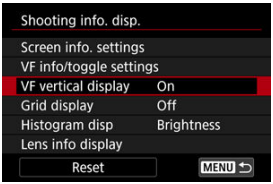
Viewfinder Vertical Display

You can select how viewfinder information is displayed when you are shooting still photos vertically.

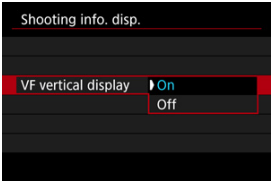
1. **Select [: Shooting info. disp.].**



2. **Select [VF vertical display].**



3. **Select an option.**



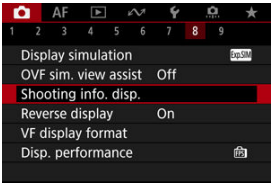
- **On**
  Information is automatically rotated, making it easier to read.

- **Off**
  Information is not automatically rotated.

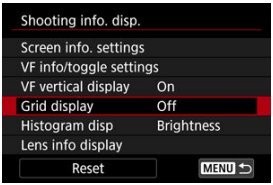
Grid

A grid can be displayed on the screen and viewfinder.

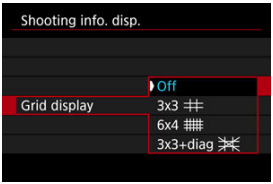
1. **Select [: Shooting info. disp.].**



2. **Select [Grid display].**



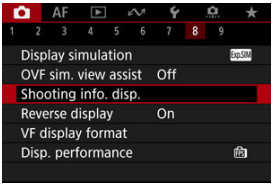
3. **Select an option.**



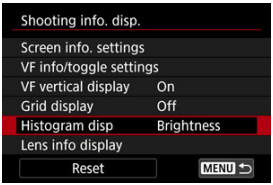
Histogram

You can select the content and display size of the histogram.

1. **Select [: Shooting info. disp.].**



2. **Select [Histogram disp].**



3. **Select an option.**

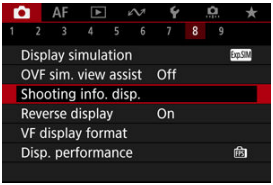


- Select the content ([**Brightness**] or [**RGB**]) and display size ([**Large**] or [**Small**]).

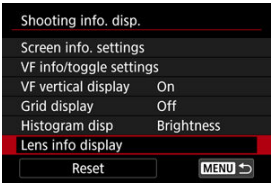
Lens Information Display

You can display information about the lens in use.

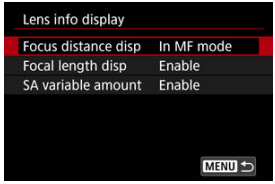
1. **Select [: Shooting info. disp.].**



2. **Select [Lens info display].**



3. **Select an option.**



- **Focus distance disp**
  You can display focus distance when using RF lenses. In focus distance display, you can select the timing and unit of measurement.

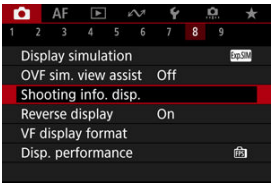
- **Focal length disp**
  You can display the focal length of the lens in use.

- **SA variable amount**
  You can display the amount of correction set when using lenses featuring spherical aberration control.
  * SA: spherical aberration

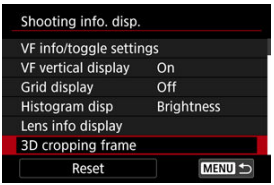
3D Cropping Frame

If you will crop movies recorded using RF-S7.8mm F4 STM DUAL, you can display a 3D cropping frame on the movie recording screen (during standby and recording) to be aware of the final angle of view after editing.

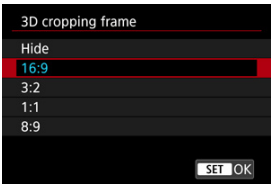
1. **Select [: Shooting info. disp.].**



2. **Select [3D cropping frame].**



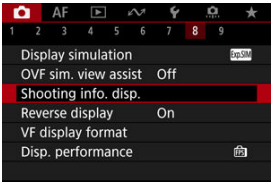
3. **Select an option.**



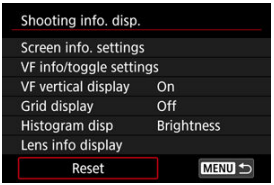
- Select a display option.

Clearing Settings

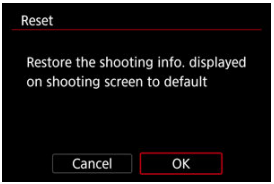
1. **Select [: Shooting info. disp.].**



2. **Select [Reset].**



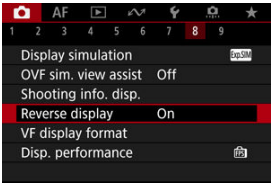
3. **Select [OK].**



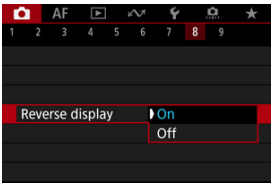
Reverse Display

A mirror image can be displayed when you shoot with the screen rotated toward the subject (toward the front of the camera).

1. **Select [: Reverse display].**



2. **Select [On].**

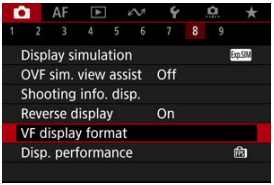


- Select [**Off**] if you prefer not to reverse display when the screen is facing the subject.

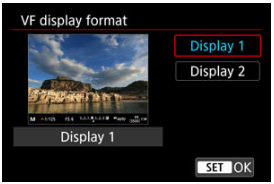
Viewfinder Display Format

You can select how information is presented in the viewfinder.

1. **Select [: VF display format].**



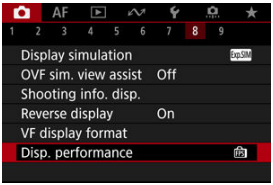
2. **Select an option.**



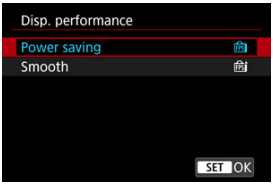
Display Performance

You can select the performance parameter to prioritize in shooting screen display for still photos.

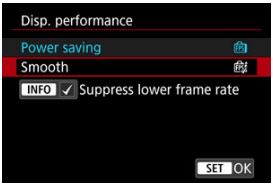
1. **Select [: Disp. performance].**



2. **Select an option.**



When set to [Smooth]



- By pressing the < INFO > button to add a checkmark, you can include low-light locations in the scenarios for suppressing lower display frame rates.
- The high frame rate (119.88 fps) display of the **[Smooth]** option is used for shooting standby in viewfinder shooting.

Caution

- Some shooting conditions and camera operations may prevent smooth, high frame rate display, even when set to [**Smooth**].
- Shooting under low light with [**Suppress lower frame rate**] set for shooting screen display may affect performance as follows.
  - Faster battery consumption
  - Fewer shots available
  - Lower image display brightness
  - Difficulty in autofocusing
  - Lower metering precision
  - Lower flicker detection precision
  - Lower subject detection precision

General Still Photo Shooting

Information Display

General Still Photo Shooting Precautions

Information Display

For details on the icons displayed for still photo shooting, see Information Display.

Note

- White display of the [Exp.SIM] icon indicates that your shots will be about as bright as the image displayed.
- If the [Exp.SIM] icon is blinking, it indicates that the image is displayed at a brightness that differs from the actual shooting result because of low- or bright-light conditions. However, the actual image recorded will reflect the exposure setting. Note that the noise may be more noticeable than the actual image recorded.
- Display simulation may not be performed under some shooting settings. The [Exp.SIM] icon and histogram will be displayed in gray. The image will be displayed on the screen at the standard brightness. The histogram may not be properly displayed in low- or bright-light conditions.
- No histogram is displayed when [: **Display simulation**] ( ) is set to [**Disable**] or [**Exposure only during DOF**].

General Still Photo Shooting Precautions

Caution

- Do not point the camera toward an intense light source, such as the sun or an intense artificial light source. Doing so may damage the image sensor or the camera's internal components.

Image quality

- When you shoot at high ISO speeds, noise (such as dots of light and banding) may become noticeable.
- Shooting in high temperatures may cause noise and irregular colors in the image.
- Frequent shooting over an extended period may cause high internal temperatures and affect image quality. When you are not shooting, always turn off the camera.
- If you shoot a long exposure while the camera's internal temperature is high, image quality may decline. Stop shooting and wait a few minutes before shooting again.

White [ ] internal temperature warning icon

- A white [ ] icon indicates high internal camera temperature, caused by factors such as extended shooting or use in hot environments.
- The white [ ] icon indicates that the image quality of still photos will decline. Stop shooting for a while and allow the camera to cool down.
- Shooting at low ISO speeds instead of high speeds is recommended when the white [ ] icon is displayed.
- Shooting in hot environments over extended periods will cause the white [ ] or red [ ] icon to appear sooner. When you are not shooting, always turn off the camera.
- If the camera's internal temperature is high, the quality of images shot with a high ISO speed or long exposure may decline even before the white [ ] icon is displayed.

Camera overheating indicator

- A temperature indicator [ ] is displayed when the camera begins to become hot.
  For details on how indicator display corresponds to camera operation, see Warning Indicator Display During Shooting or Recording.

Shooting results

- In magnified view, the shutter speed and aperture value will be displayed in orange. If you take the picture in magnified view, the exposure may not come out as desired. Return to the normal view before taking the picture.
- Even if you take the picture in magnified view, the image will be captured with the image area of the normal view.

Images and display

- Under low- or bright-light conditions, the displayed image may not reflect the brightness of the captured image.
- Although noise may be noticeable in images under low light (even at low ISO speeds), there will be less noise in your shots, due to differences in image quality between displayed and captured images.
- The screen may flicker if the light source (lighting) changes. In this case, stop shooting temporarily and resume under the light source you will use.
- Pointing the camera at different direction may momentarily prevent correct display of brightness. Wait until the brightness level stabilizes before shooting.
- If there is a very bright light source in the image, the bright area may appear black on the screen. However, the actual captured image will correctly show the bright area.
- Under low light, bright [: **Screen brightness**] settings may cause noise or irregular colors in images. However, the noise or irregular colors will not be recorded in the captured image.
- When you magnify the image, the image sharpness may look more pronounced than in the actual image.

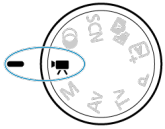
Lens

- If the attached lens has an Image Stabilizer and you set the Image Stabilizer switch to < ON >, the Image Stabilizer will operate at all times even if you do not press the shutter button halfway. The Image Stabilizer consumes battery power and may decrease the number of available shots depending on the shooting conditions. When the Image Stabilizer is not necessary, such as when using a tripod, it is recommended that you set the Image Stabilizer switch to < OFF >.
- With EF lenses, focus preset during shooting is only available when using (super) telephoto lenses equipped with this function released in and after the second half of 2011.

Note

- The field of view is approx. 100% (with image quality set to JPEG).
- If the camera is idle over an extended period, the screen turns off automatically after the time set in [**Screen off**] or [**Viewfinder off**] under [: **Power saving**], and the camera itself turns off automatically after the time set in [**Auto power off**] ( ).
- Using a commercially available HDMI cable, you can display images on a television ( ). Note that no sound will be output.

Movie Recording



For movie recording, set the Mode dial to <>.

Caution

- When switching from still photo shooting to movie recording, check the camera settings again before recording movies.

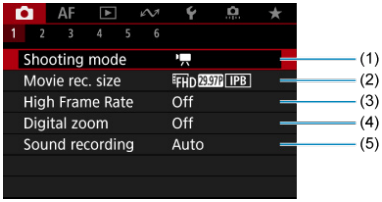
Note

- You can record movies by pressing the movie shooting button during still photo shooting.

- Tab Menus: Movie Recording
- Movie Recording
- Movie Recording Size
- High Frame Rate
- Digital Zoom
- Sound Recording
- Shooting Creative Filters
- Time-Lapse Movies
- Movie Self-Timer
- Image Stabilizer (IS Mode)
- Auto Level
- Shutter Button Function for Movies
- Zebra Settings
- Shooting Information Display
- Time Code
- Other Menu Functions
- General Movie Recording Precautions

Tab Menus: Movie Recording

Shooting 1



(1) Shooting mode

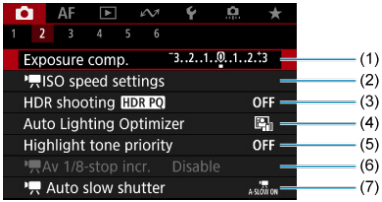
(2) Movie rec. size

(3) High Frame Rate

(4) Digital zoom

(5) Sound recording

Shooting 2



(1) Exposure comp.

(2) ISO speed settings

(3) HDR shooting HDR PQ

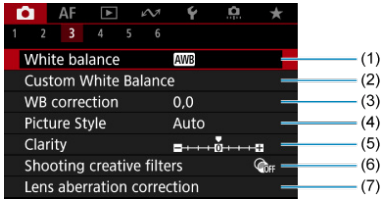
(4) Auto Lighting Optimizer

(5) Highlight tone priority

(6) Av 1/8-stop incr.

(7) Auto slow shutter

Shooting 3



(1) White balance

(2) Custom White Balance

(3) WB correction

(4) Picture Style

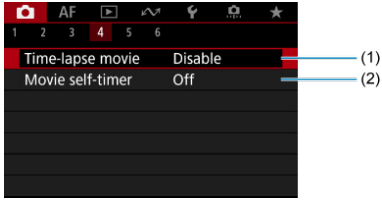
- Picture Style Selection
- Picture Style Customization
- Picture Style Registration

(5) Clarity

(6) Shooting creative filters

(7) Lens aberration correction

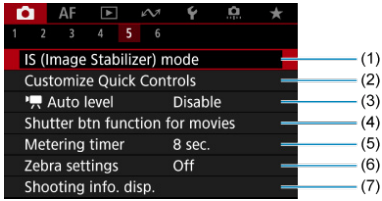
Shooting 4



(1) Time-lapse movie

(2) Movie self-timer

Shooting 5



(1) IS (Image Stabilizer) mode

(2) Customize Quick Controls

(3) Auto level

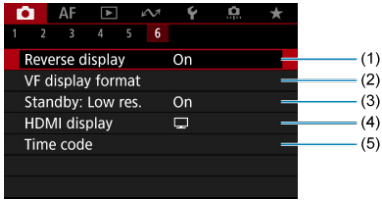
(4) Shutter btn function for movies

(5) Metering timer

(6) Zebra settings

(7) Shooting info. disp.

Shooting 6



(1) Reverse display

(2) VF display format

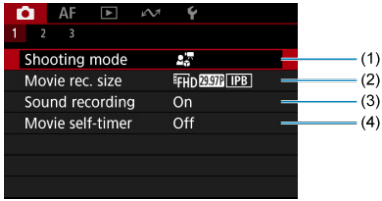
(3) Standby: Low res.

(4) HDMI display

(5) Time code

In < >, < >, and < > modes, the following screens are displayed.

Shooting 1



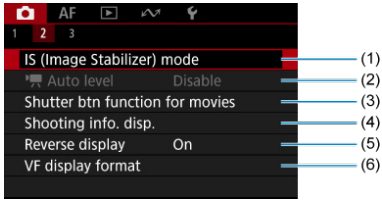
(1) Shooting mode

(2) Movie rec. size

(3) Sound recording

(4) Movie self-timer

Shooting 2



(1) IS (Image Stabilizer) mode

(2) Auto level

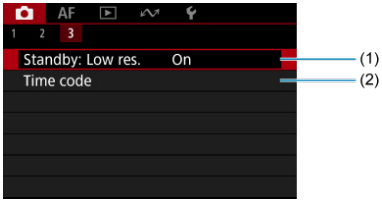
(3) Shutter btn function for movies

(4) Shooting info. disp.

(5) Reverse display

(6) VF display format

Shooting 3



(1) Standby: Low res.

(2) Time code

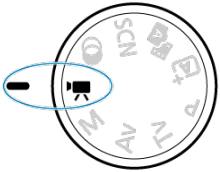
Movie Recording

- Autoexposure Movie Recording
- ISO Speed in [ ] Mode
- Manual Exposure Movie Recording
- ISO Speed in [ ] Mode
- Shutter Speed
- Close-Up Demo Movie Recording
- IS Mode Movie Recording
- HDR Movie Recording
- Custom Shooting Mode
- Still Photo Shooting
- Information Display (Movie Recording)

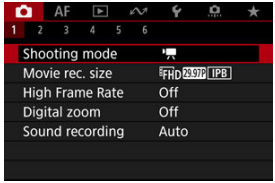
Autoexposure Movie Recording

Exposure is controlled automatically to suit the brightness.

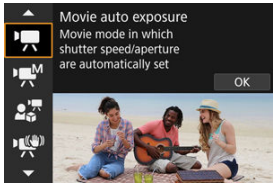
1. **Set the Mode dial to < >.**



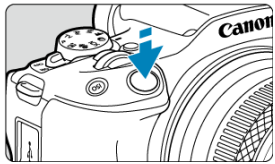
2. **Select [📷: Shooting mode].**



3. **Select [Movie auto exposure].**

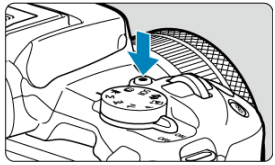


4. **Focus on the subject.**



- Before recording a movie, focus with AF (🔗) or manual focus (🔗).
- By default, [**AF**: **Movie Servo AF**] is set to [**Enable**] so that the camera always keeps focusing (🔗).
- When you press the shutter button halfway, the camera focuses using your specified AF area.

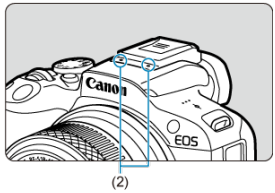
5. Record the movie.



- Press the movie shooting button to start recording a movie. You can also start recording a movie by tapping [●] on the screen.



- [●**REC**] (1) is displayed in the upper right while movie recording is in progress, and a red frame around the screen blinks.



- Sound is recorded with the movie microphone (2).
- To stop recording the movie, press the movie shooting button again. You can also stop recording a movie by tapping [■] on the screen.

ISO Speed in [🎥] Mode

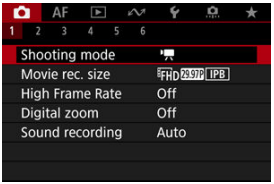
ISO speed is set automatically. See ISO Speed in Movie Recording.

Manual Exposure Movie Recording

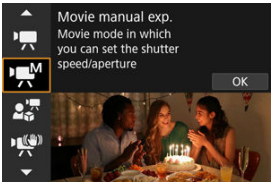
You can manually set the shutter speed, aperture value, and ISO speed for movie recording.

1. **Set the Mode dial to <M>.**

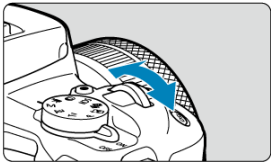
2. **Select [: Shooting mode].**



3. **Select [Movie manual exp.].**



4. Set the shutter speed, aperture value, and ISO speed.





- Press the shutter button halfway and check the exposure level indicator.
- Press the < ▲ > key to select shutter speed, aperture value, exposure level, or ISO speed, then turn the < ⁂ > dial to set a value.
- ISO speed can also be set by pressing the < ISO > button.
- Available shutter speeds vary by frame rate ( ).

5. Focus and record the movie.

- Same as steps 4 and 5 for Autoexposure Movie Recording.

Caution

- During movie recording, avoid changing the shutter speed, aperture value, or ISO speed, which may record changes in the exposure or create more noise at high ISO speeds.
- When recording a movie of a moving subject, a shutter speed of approx. 1/25 sec. to 1/125 sec. is recommended. The faster the shutter speed, the less smooth the subject's movement will look.
- If you change the shutter speed while recording under fluorescent or LED lighting, image flicker may be recorded.

Note

- When ISO Auto is set, you can press the < ✳ > button to lock the ISO speed. After locking during movie recording, ISO speed lock can be canceled by pressing the < ✳ > button again.
- If you press the < ✳ > button and recompose the shot, you can see the exposure level difference on the exposure level indicator ( ) compared to when the < ✳ > button was pressed.

ISO Speed in [M] Mode

You can set the ISO speed manually or select [AUTO] to set it automatically. For details on ISO speed, see ISO Speed in Movie Recording.

Shutter Speed

Available shutter speeds in [M] mode vary depending on the frame rate you have set for your specified movie recording size.

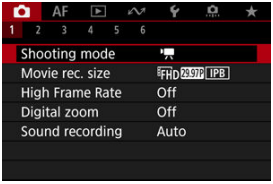
Frame Rate	Shutter Speed (Sec.)	
	Normal Movie Recording	High Frame Rate Movie Recording
119.9P	–	1/4000–1/125
100.0P		1/4000–1/100
59.94P	1/4000–1/8	–
50.00P		
29.97P		
25.00P		
23.98P		

Close-Up Demo Movie Recording

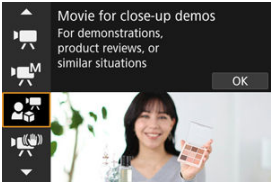
Subjects near the camera can be given priority for focusing. This is useful for demonstrations, product reviews, or similar situations.

1. **Set the Mode dial to <>.**

2. **Select [: Shooting mode].**



3. **Select [Movie for close-up demos].**



4. **Record the close-up demo movie.**

- Record the movie in the same way as normal movie recording.

Caution

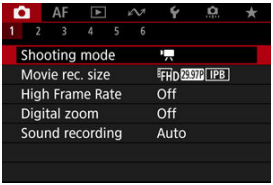
- No AF points are displayed.
- Subjects cannot be selected manually.

IS Mode Movie Recording

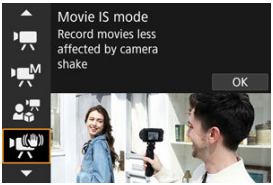
You can reduce camera shake as movies are recorded. This can provide effective stabilization even when non-IS lenses are used. When using an IS lens, set the Image Stabilizer switch to <ON>.

1. **Set the Mode dial to <>.**

2. **Select [: Shooting mode].**



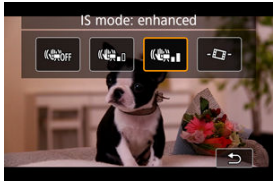
3. **Select [Movie IS mode].**



Caution

- By default, [**Digital IS**] is set to [**Enhanced**].

4. Select a stabilization option.



- Press the < ✳ > button.
- Off (OFF): Deactivates image stabilization. Movies are recorded with a normal angle of view.
- On (): Activates image stabilization. The image will be slightly magnified.
- Enhanced (): Activates stronger image stabilization than for [**On**]. The image will be more magnified.
- Auto level (): Keeps images horizontally level during movie recording.

Note

- To avoid close-ups of your face when the screen is facing the front of the camera for recording that will include your face, you can switch the IS mode from [] (enhanced) to [] (on) to [OFF] (off), which zooms out each time. Otherwise, you can tap [] to change the setting directly.

5. Record the movie.

- Record the movie in the same way as normal movie recording.

HDR Movie Recording

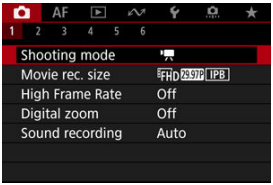
You can record high dynamic range movies that retain detail in highlights of high-contrast scenes.

Note

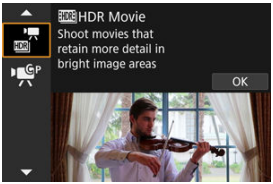
- Movies are recorded at FHD 29.97P IPB (NTSC) or FHD 25.00P IPB (PAL).

1. **Set the Mode dial to <>.**

2. **Select [: Shooting mode].**



3. **Select [HDR Movie].**



4. **Record an HDR movie.**

- Record the movie in the same way as normal movie recording.
- For details on file sizes and the recording time available, see Movie recording.

Caution

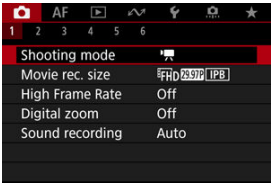
- Since multiple frames are merged to create an HDR movie, certain parts of the movie may look distorted. This is more noticeable in handheld recording affected by camera shake, so consider using a tripod. Note that even if a tripod is used for recording, afterimages or noise may become more noticeable, compared to normal playback, when the HDR movie is played back frame-by-frame or in slow motion.
- Image color and brightness may change significantly for a moment if you change settings for HDR movie recording. Also, the movie will not be updated for a moment, and the frame stops momentarily. Be aware of this when recording movies to external devices via HDMI.

Custom Shooting Mode

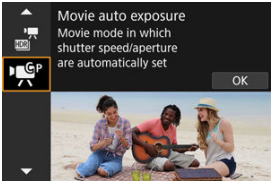
You can record using the settings registered to [: **Custom shooting mode (C mode)**] ( ).
By default, [**Movie auto exposure**] recording is used.

1. **Set the Mode dial to <>.**

2. **Select [: Shooting mode].**



3. **Select [] or [].**



[] is displayed when [**Movie auto exposure**] is registered to [**Custom shooting mode (C mode)**], and [] is displayed when [**Movie manual exp.**] is registered.

4. **Focus and record the movie.**

- For details, see the instructions for your registered shooting mode.

Still Photo Shooting

Still photo shooting is not supported in movie recording mode. To shoot still photos, turn the Mode dial to switch to another shooting mode.

Information Display (Movie Recording)

For details on the icons on the movie recording screen, see Information Display.

Caution

- The remaining time displayed for movie recording is only a guideline.
- Movie recording may stop before the initially displayed recording time elapses if the red [ ] icon appears due to high internal camera temperature during recording ( ).

Movie Recording Size

- 4K Movie Recording
- Image Area
- Cards That Can Record Movies
- Movie Files Exceeding 4 GB
- Total Movie Recording Time and File Size Per Minute
- Movie Recording Time Limit

You can set the recording size, frame rate, and compression method in [: **Movie rec. size**].
Note that the frame rate is updated automatically to match the [: **Video system**] setting ( ).

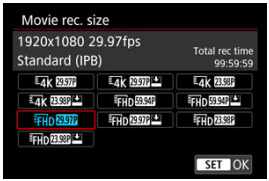


Image Size		Aspect Ratio
4K	3840×2160	16:9
FHD	1920×1080	16:9

Caution

- If you change the [: **Video system**] setting, also set [: **Movie rec. size**] again.
- Other devices may not play movies such as 4K, FHD 59.94P/50.00P, and High Frame Rate movies normally, because playback is processing-intensive.
- Sharpness and noise vary slightly depending on the movie recording size setting and lens used.

Note

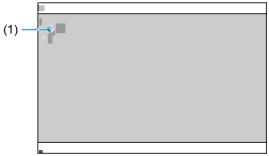
- To obtain better performance with the card, formatting the card with the camera before recording movies is recommended ( ).
- Movies cannot be recorded in HD or VGA quality.

4K Movie Recording

- Recording 4K movies requires a stable card with a fast writing speed. For details, see Cards That Can Record Movies.
- 4K movie recording greatly increases the processing load, which may increase the internal camera temperature faster or higher than for regular movies. **If a white [ ] or red [ ] icon appears during movie recording, the card may be hot, so stop recording the movie and let the camera cool down before removing the card. (Do not remove the card immediately.)**
- From a 4K movie, you can select any frame to save to the card as a JPEG still image ( ).

Image Area

The movie image area varies depending on the movie recording size setting.



(1) 4K (3840×2160) / FHD (1920×1080)

Caution

- Recording with Movie digital IS ( ) further crops the image around the center of the screen.

Frame rate (fps: frames per second)

- **[119.9P] 119.9 fps/[59.94P] 59.94 fps/[29.97P] 29.97 fps**
  For areas where the TV system is NTSC (North America, Japan, South Korea, Mexico, etc.). For [119.9P], see High Frame Rate.

- **[100.0P] 100.00 fps/[50.00P] 50.00 fps/[25.00P] 25.00 fps**
  For areas where the TV system is PAL (Europe, Russia, China, Australia, etc.). For [100.0P], see High Frame Rate.

- **[23.98P] 23.98 fps**
  Mainly for cinematic purposes. Available when [: **Video system**] is set to [**For NTSC**].

Compression method

- **[IPB] IPB** (Standard)
  Compresses multiple frames at a time efficiently for recording.

- **[IPB] IPB** (Light)
  Since the movie is recorded at a bit rate lower than with IPB (Standard), the file size will be smaller than with IPB (Standard) and the playback compatibility will be higher. This will make the available recording time longer than with IPB (Standard) (with a card of the same capacity).

Movie recording format

- **[MP4] MP4**
  All movies you record with the camera are recorded as movie files in MP4 format (file extension ".MP4").

Cards That Can Record Movies

See Card performance requirements for details on cards supporting all movie recording sizes.
Test cards by recording a few movies to make sure they can record correctly at your specified size ( ).

Caution

- Before recording 4K movies, format cards by selecting [**Low level format**] in [: **Format card**] ( ).
- If you use a slow-writing card when recording movies, the movie may not be recorded properly. Also, if you play back a movie on a card with a slow reading speed, the movie may not be played back properly.
- When recording movies, use high-performance cards with a writing speed sufficiently higher than the bit rate.
- When movies cannot be recorded properly, format the card and try again. If formatting the card does not resolve the problem, refer to the card manufacturer's website, etc.

Note

- To obtain better performance with the card, formatting the card with the camera before recording movies is recommended ( ).
- To check the card's writing/reading speed, refer to the card manufacturer's website, etc.

Movie Files Exceeding 4 GB

- **Using SDHC cards formatted with the camera**

  If you use the camera to format an SDHC card, the camera will format it in FAT32. With a FAT32-formatted card, if you record a movie and the file size exceeds 4 GB, a new movie file will be created automatically.
  When you play back the movie, you will have to play back each movie file individually. Movie files cannot be played back automatically in consecutive order. After the movie playback ends, select the next movie and play it back.

- **Using SDXC cards formatted with the camera**

  If you use the camera to format an SDXC card, the camera will format it in exFAT. When using an exFAT-formatted card, even if the file size exceeds 4 GB during movie recording, the movie will be saved as a single file (rather than being split into multiple files).

Caution

- When importing movie files exceeding 4 GB to a computer, use either EOS Utility or a card reader ( ). It may not be possible to save movie files exceeding 4 GB if you attempt this using standard features of the computer's operating system.

Total Movie Recording Time and File Size Per Minute

For details, see Movie recording.

Movie Recording Time Limit

When recording non-High Frame Rate movies

The maximum recording time per movie is 1 hr. Once 1 hr. is reached, recording stops automatically. You can start recording a movie again by pressing the movie shooting button (which records the movie as a new file).

When recording High Frame Rate movies

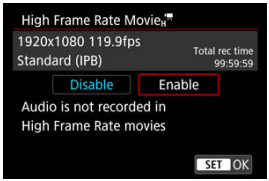
The maximum recording time per movie is 15 min. Once 15 min. is reached, recording stops automatically. You can start recording a High Frame Rate movie again by pressing the movie shooting button (which records the movie as a new file).

Caution

- The camera's internal temperature may rise and less recording time may be available after extended movie playback/Live View display.

High Frame Rate

You can record movies at a high frame rate of 119.9 fps or 100.0 fps. This is ideal for recording movies that will be played back in slow motion. Note that the maximum recording time per movie is 15 min.



- Movies are recorded in FHD 119.9P IPB (IPB) or FHD 100.0P IPB (IPB) quality.
- Sound is not recorded in High Frame Rate movies.
- Time code display during movie recording advances 4 sec. per second.
- Because High Frame Rate movies are recorded as 29.97 fps/25.00 fps movie files, they are played in slow motion at 1/4 speed.

Caution

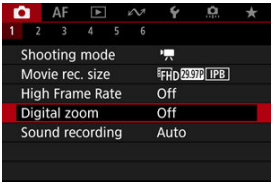
Precautions when set to [High Frame Rate: On]

- Time codes are not recorded when [**Count up**] is set to [**Free run**] in [: **Time code**] ( ).
- Check the [: **Movie rec. size**] setting if you return this setting to [**Disable**].
- The screen may flicker if you record High Frame Rate movies under fluorescent or LED lighting.
- For a moment when you start or stop recording High Frame Rate movies, the movie is not updated, and the frame stops momentarily. Be aware of this when recording movies to external devices via HDMI.
- Movie frame rates shown on the screen as you record High Frame Rate movies do not correspond to the frame rate of the movie recorded.
- ISO speed can be set within ISO 100–12800. Setting [: **ISO expansion**] to [**Enable**] ( ) expands the maximum speed to H (equivalent to ISO 25600).
- The frame rate of HDMI video output is 59.94 fps or 50.00 fps.
- The camera's internal temperature may rise and less recording time may be available after extended movie playback or image display.

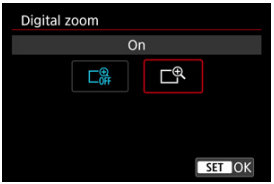
Digital Zoom

With the recording size set to [FHD 29.97P]/[FHD 23.98P] (NTSC) or [FHD 25.00P] (PAL), you can shoot with approx. 1–10× digital zoom.

1. **Select [: Digital zoom].**



2. **Select an option.**



- Select [**Enable**], then press the < (SET) > button.
- Press the < MENU > button to close the menu.

3. **Use digital zoom.**



- Tap [**W**/**T**] in the lower right.
- The digital zoom bar will appear.
- Tap [**▲T**] or press the < ▲ > key to zoom in, and tap [**▼W**] or press the < ▼ > key to zoom out.
- Pressing the shutter button halfway focuses with [**1-point AF**] (fixed at center).
- To cancel digital zoom, select [**Off**] in step 2.

Caution

- Using a tripod to prevent camera shake is recommended.
- Maximum ISO speed is ISO 12800.
- A magnified view is not available.
- Since Movie digital zoom processes the image digitally, the image will look grainier at higher magnifications. Noise, dots of light, etc. may also become noticeable.
- Also see Shooting Conditions That Make Focusing Difficult.
- The camera's internal temperature may rise and reduce the available recording time.
- [: **Standby: Low res.**] is set to [**Disable**] and cannot be changed ( ).

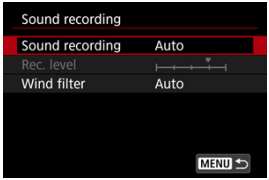
Sound Recording

Sound Recording/Sound-Recording Level

Wind Filter

You can record movies while recording sound with the built-in stereo microphone or an external stereo microphone. You can also freely adjust the sound-recording level.

Use [: **Sound recording**] to set sound recording functions.



Caution

- Sounds from Wi-Fi operations may be captured with built-in or external microphones. During sound recording, using the wireless communication function is not recommended.
- The camera's built-in microphone may also record mechanical sounds of the lens or sounds of camera/lens operations if AF operations are performed or the camera or lens is operated during movie recording. If so, it may help reduce these sounds if you use an external microphone equipped with an output plug and position it away from the camera and lens.
- Do not connect anything other than an external microphone to the camera's external microphone IN terminal.

Note

- In Basic Zone modes, the settings available for [: **Sound recording**] are [**On**] and [**Disable**]. Set to [**On**] for automatic adjustment of the recording level.
- Audio is also output when the camera is connected to televisions via HDMI, unless [**Sound recording**] is set to [**Off**]. In case of feedback from television audio output, move the camera away from the television or turn down the volume.
- The volume balance between L/R (left/right) cannot be adjusted.
- Sound is recorded at a 48 kHz/16-bit sampling rate.

Sound Recording/Sound-Recording Level

Auto

The sound-recording level is adjusted automatically. Auto level control will take effect automatically in response to the sound level.

Manual

You can adjust the sound-recording level as needed. Select [**Rec. level**] and press the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys while looking at the level meter to adjust the sound-recording level. Look at the peak hold indicator, and adjust so that the level meter sometimes lights up on the right of the “12” (–12 dB) mark for the loudest sounds. If it exceeds “0”, the sound will be distorted.

Disable

Sound will not be recorded.

Wind Filter

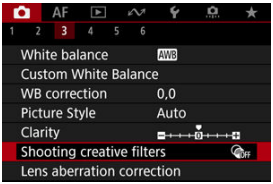
Set to [**Auto**] to reduce audio distortion in windy outdoor scenes. Disabled when external microphones are connected to the external microphone IN terminal. When the wind filter function takes effect, part of the low bass sounds will also be reduced.

Shooting Creative Filters

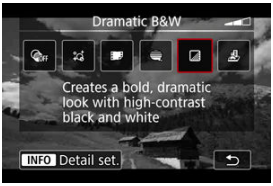
Creative Filter Characteristics

You can record movies with one of five filter effects applied: Dream, Old movies, Memory, Dramatic B&W, or Miniature effect movie.
Recording size can be set to FHD 29.97P/FHD 23.98P (NTSC) or FHD 25.00P (PAL).

1. **Select [: Shooting creative filters].**



2. **Select a filter effect.**



- Turn the < > dial to select a filter effect ( ).
- For Miniature effect movies, move the AF point to the position to focus on. Move the scene frame if the AF point is outside of it, so that the AF point is aligned with it.

3. **Adjust the filter effect level.**



- Press the < INFO > button.
- Turn the < ⟳ > dial to select a filter effect level, then press the < (SET) > button.
- When setting up miniature effect movies, select the playback speed.

4. **Record the movie.**

Caution

- A magnified view is not available.
- No histogram is displayed.
- Subjects such as the sky or white walls may not be rendered with smooth gradation and may have noise or irregular exposure or colors.

Creative Filter Characteristics

- **Dream**
  Applies a soft, dreamy, otherworldly appearance. Gives the movie a soft look overall, blurring the periphery of the screen. You can adjust the blurry areas along the screen edges.

- **Old movies**
  Creates an atmosphere like an old film by adding wavering, scratches, and flickering effects to the image. The top and bottom of the screen are masked in black. You can modify the wavering and scratch effects by adjusting the filter effect.

- **Memory**
  Creates the atmosphere of a distant memory. Gives the movie a soft look overall, reducing brightness of the periphery of the screen. You can modify the overall saturation and the dark areas along the screen edges by adjusting the filter effect.

- **Dramatic B&W**
  Creates an atmosphere of dramatic realism with high-contrast black and white. You can adjust the graininess and black-and-white effect.

- **Miniature effect movies**
  You can record movies with a miniature (diorama) effect. Select the playback speed and record.
  Shooting under the default setting will keep the center looking sharp.
  To move the area that looks sharp (the scene frame), see “Adjusting the Miniature Effect” ( ). 1-point AF is used as the AF area. Shooting with the AF point and scene frame aligned is recommended. The AF point and scene frame are hidden during recording.
  In step 5, set the playback speed to [**5x**], [**10x**], or [**20x**] before recording.

Speed and playback time (for a 1-minute movie)

Speed	Playback Time
5x	Approx. 12 sec.
10x	Approx. 6 sec.
20x	Approx. 3 sec.

Caution

[🖶] (Miniature effect movies)

- Sound is not recorded.
- Movie Servo AF is disabled.
- Editing is not available for miniature effect movies with a playback time less than 1 sec. (🖻).

Time-Lapse Movies

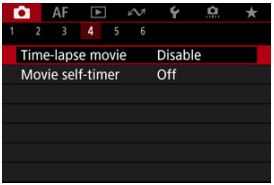
Approx. Time Available for Recording Time-Lapse Movies

Still photos captured at your specified interval can be automatically combined to create a Full HD time-lapse movie. A time-lapse movie shows how a subject changes in a much shorter period of time than the actual time it took. It is effective for a fixed-point observation of changing scenery, growing plants, celestial motion, etc.

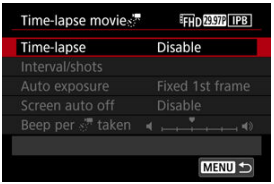
Time-lapse movies are recorded in MP4 format at FHD 29.97P ALL-I quality for NTSC or FHD 25.00P ALL-I quality for PAL in Full HD recording.

Note that the frame rate is updated automatically to match the [: **Video system**] setting ( ).

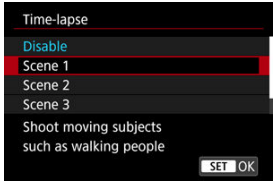
1. **Select [: Time-lapse movie].**



2. **Select [Time-lapse].**

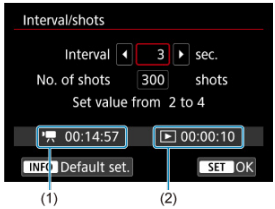


3. Select a scene.



- Select a scene to suit the shooting situation.
- For greater freedom when setting the shooting interval and number of shots manually, select [**Custom**].

4. Set the shooting interval.



- Select [**Interval/shots**].
- Select [**Interval**] (sec.). Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to set a value, then press the < (SET) > button.
- Refer to [: **Time required**] (1) and [▶: **Playback time**] (2) as you set it.

When [Custom] is set

- Select [**Interval**] (min.:sec.).
- Press the < (SET) > button to display < >.
- Use the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to set a value, then press the < (SET) > button. (Returns to < □ >.)
- Select [**OK**] to register the setting.

5. Set the number of shots.



- Select [**No. of shots**]. Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to set a value, then press the < (SET) > button.
- Refer to [: **Time required**] and [▶: **Playback time**] as you set the number.

When [Custom] is set

- Select the digit.
- Press the < (SET) > button to display < ⇕ >.
- Use the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to set a value, then press the < (SET) > button. (Returns to < □ >.)
- Make sure [▶: **Playback time**] is not displayed in red.
- Select [**OK**] to register the setting.

Note

- With [**Scene ***], available intervals and numbers of shots are restricted, to suit the type of scene.
- For details on cards that can record time-lapse movies (card performance requirements), see Card performance requirements.
- If the number of shots is set to 3600, the time-lapse movie will be approx. 2 min. in NTSC and approx. 2 min. 24 sec. in PAL.

6. **Set [Auto exposure].**



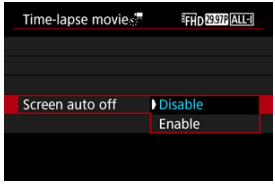
- **Fixed 1st frame**
  When taking the first shot, metering is performed to set the exposure automatically to match the brightness. The exposure setting for the first shot will be applied to subsequent shots. Other shooting-related settings for the first shot will also be applied for subsequent shots.

- **Each frame**
  Metering is also performed for each subsequent shot to set the exposure automatically to match the brightness. Note that any functions such as Picture Style and white balance that are set to [**Auto**] will be set automatically for each subsequent shot.

Caution

- Significant changes in brightness between shots may prevent the camera from shooting at the specified interval when [**Interval**] is set to less than 3 sec. and [**Auto exposure**] is set to [**Each frame**].

7. Set [Screen auto off].



- **Disable**
  Even during time-lapse movie recording, the image will be displayed. (The screen turns off only at the time of shooting.) Note that the screen will turn off when approx. 30 min. elapse after the shooting started.

- **Enable**
  Note that the screen will turn off when approx. 10 sec. elapse after the shooting started.

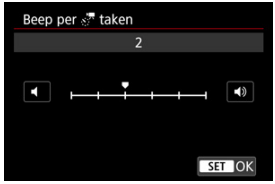
Caution

- Even if [**Screen auto off**] is set to [**Disable**], the screen turns off during exposure. Also note that images may not be displayed if the interval between shots is too brief.

Note

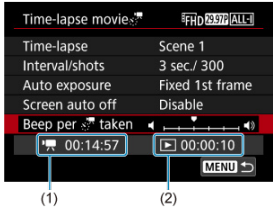
- During time-lapse movie recording, you can press the < INFO > button to turn on/off the screen.

8. **Set [Beep per taken].**



- Set to [**0**] to prevent the camera from beeping for each shot.

9. **Check the settings.**



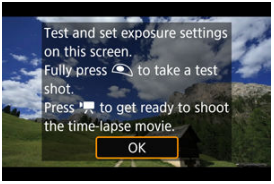
- **Time required (1)**
  Indicates the time required to shoot the set number of shots with the set interval. If it exceeds 24 hours, "*** days" will be displayed.

- **Playback time (2)**
  Indicates the movie recording time (equivalent to the time required for playback) once the Full HD movie is created from still photos taken at regular intervals.

10. **Close the menu.**

- Press the < MENU > button to turn off the menu screen.

11. **Read the message.**



- Read the message and select [**OK**].

12. Take a test shot.

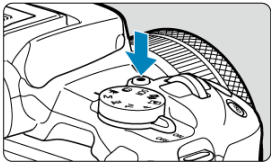


- Press the < INFO > button and double-check the Time required (1) and Interval (2) shown on the screen.
- As in still photo shooting, set the exposure and shooting functions, then press the shutter button halfway to focus.
- Press the shutter button completely to take a test shot, which is recorded to the card as a still photo.
- If there are no problems with the test shot, go to the next step.
- To take more test shots, repeat this step.

Note

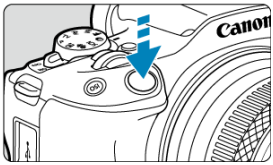
- Test shots are captured in JPEG L quality.
- Shutter speeds available in [M] mode vary depending on [**Time-lapse**] settings. The range is 1/4000 to 30 sec. in [**Custom**] mode or otherwise 1/4000 to 1/30 sec.
- You can set the maximum limit for Auto ISO in [] mode or in [M] mode with ISO Auto, in the [: **Max for Auto**] option of [: **ISO speed settings**] ( ).
- If you have set [**Half-press**] in [: **Shutter btn function for movies**] to [**Meter.+ Servo AF**], it is automatically changed to [**Meter.+One-Shot AF**] when you set up time-lapse movie recording.

13. Press the movie shooting button.



- The camera is now ready to start recording a time-lapse movie.
- To return to step 12, press the movie shooting button again.

14. Record the time-lapse movie.



- **Press the shutter button completely to start recording the time-lapse movie.**
- AF will not work during time-lapse movie recording.
- A recording icon “●” is displayed on the screen as the time-lapse movie is recorded.
- When the set number of shots are taken, the time-lapse movie recording ends.
- **To cancel recording time-lapse movies, set [Time-lapse] to [Disable].**

Note

- Using a tripod is recommended.
- Taking test shots as in step 12 and recording test movies for time-lapse movies beforehand is recommended.
- Field of view (coverage) is approx. 100%.
- To cancel time-lapse movie recording in progress, either press the shutter button completely or press the movie shooting button. The time-lapse movie shot so far will be recorded on the card.
- If the time required for recording is more than 24 hours but not more than 48 hours, “2 days” will be indicated. If three or more days are required, the number of days will be indicated in 24-hour increments.
- Even if the time-lapse movie's playback time is less than 1 sec., a movie file will still be created. In this case, “00'00"" is indicated in [**Playback time**].
- If the shooting time is long, using the household power outlet accessories (sold separately) is recommended.
- YCbCr 4:2:0 (8-bit) color sampling and the BT.709 color space are used for Full HD time-lapse movies.

Caution

- Do not point the camera toward an intense light source, such as the sun or an intense artificial light source. Doing so may damage the image sensor or the camera's internal components.
- Time-lapse movies cannot be recorded when the camera is connected to a computer with the interface cable, or when an HDMI cable is connected.
- Movie Servo AF will not function.
- If the shutter speed is 1/30 sec. or slower, the exposure of the movie may not be displayed properly (may differ from that of the resulting movie).
- Do not zoom the lens during time-lapse movie recording. Zooming the lens may cause the image to be out of focus, the exposure to change, or the lens aberration correction not to function properly.
- Recording time-lapse movies under flickering light may cause noticeable screen flickering, and images may be captured with horizontal stripes (noise) or irregular exposure.
- Images displayed as time-lapse movies are recorded may look different from the resulting movie (in details such as inconsistent brightness from flickering light sources, or noise from a high ISO speed).
- When recording a time-lapse movie under low light, the image displayed during shooting may look different from what is actually recorded in the movie. In such cases, the [Exp.SIM] icon will blink.
- If you move the camera from left to right (panning) or shoot a moving subject during time-lapse movie recording, the image may look extremely distorted.
- During time-lapse movie recording, auto power off will not take effect. Also, you cannot adjust the shooting function and menu function settings, play back images, etc.
- Sound is not recorded for time-lapse movies.
- To start or stop time-lapse movie recording, you can press the shutter button completely, regardless of the [: **Shutter btn function for movies**] setting.
- Significant changes in brightness between shots may prevent the camera from shooting at the specified interval when [**Interval**] is set to less than 3 sec. and [**Auto exposure**] is set to [**Each frame**].
- If the shutter speed exceeds the shooting interval (such as for long exposures), or if a slow shutter speed is set automatically, the camera may not be able to shoot at the set interval. Shooting may also be prevented by shooting intervals nearly the same as the shutter speed.
- If the next scheduled shot is not possible, it will be skipped. This may shorten the recording time of the created time-lapse movie.
- If the time it takes to record to the card exceeds the shooting interval due to the shooting functions set or card performance, some of the shots may not be taken with the set intervals.
- The captured images are not recorded as still photos. Even if you cancel the time-lapse movie recording after only one shot is taken, it will be recorded as a movie file.
- Set [: **Time-lapse movie**] to [**Disable**] if you will connect the camera to a computer with the interface cable and use EOS Utility (EOS software). Options other than [**Disable**] will prevent the camera from communicating with the computer.

- Image stabilization is not applied in time-lapse movie recording.
- Time-lapse movie shooting ends if the power switch is set to <OFF>, for example, and the setting is changed to [**Disable**].
- Even if a flash is used, it will not fire.
- The following operations cancel standby for time-lapse movie recording and switch the setting to [**Disable**].
  - Selecting [**Basic settings**] in [**Reset camera**]
  - Turning the Mode dial
- If you start time-lapse movie recording while the white [🌡] (🔗) icon is displayed, the image quality of the time-lapse movie may deteriorate. It is recommended that you start time-lapse movie recording after the white [🌡] icon disappears (camera's internal temperature decreases).
- With [**Auto exposure**] set to [**Each frame**], the ISO speed, shutter speed, and aperture value may not be recorded in the time-lapse movie Exif information in some shooting modes.

Note

- You can use Wireless Remote Control BR-E1 (sold separately) to start and stop time-lapse movie recording.

With Wireless Remote Control BR-E1

- First, pair Wireless Remote Control BR-E1 with the camera (🔗).
- After you take some test shots and the camera is ready to shoot (as in step 13, 🔗), set the release timing/movie shooting switch on the BR-E1 to <●> (immediate release) or <2> (2-sec. delay).
- If the remote control's switch has been set to <📺>, the time-lapse movie recording cannot start.

Camera Status/Remote Control Setting	<●> Immediate Release <2> 2-sec. Delay	<📺> Movie Recording
Test-recording screen	Test recording	To recording standby
Recording standby	Starts recording	To test-recording screen
During time-lapse movie recording	Ends recording	Ends recording

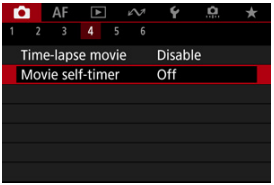
Approx. Time Available for Recording Time-Lapse Movies

For guidelines on how long you can record time-lapse movies (until the battery runs out), see Movie recording.

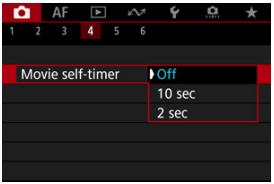
Movie Self-Timer

Movie recording can be started by the self-timer.

1. **Select [: Movie self-timer].**



2. **Select an option.**



3. **Record the movie.**

- After you press the movie shooting button or tap [●], the camera displays the number of seconds left before recording and beeps.

Note

- To cancel the self-timer, either tap the screen or press the < > button.

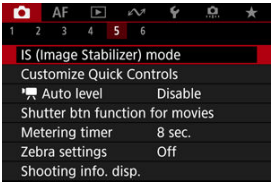
Image Stabilizer (IS Mode)

Movie Digital IS

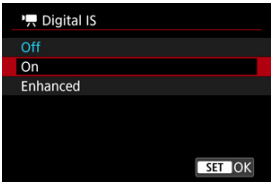
Movie digital IS reduces camera shake as movies are recorded. This can provide effective stabilization even when non-IS lenses are used.
When using an IS lens, set the Image Stabilizer switch to <ON>.

Movie Digital IS

1. **Select [: IS (Image Stabilizer) mode].**



2. **Select a [Digital IS] option.**



- **Off ()**
  Image stabilization with Movie digital IS is disabled.
- **On ()**
  Camera shake will be corrected. The image will be slightly magnified.

- **Enhanced (((🤳)))**
  Compared to when [**On**] is set, stronger camera shake can be corrected. The image will be more magnified.

Caution

- Movie digital IS will not function when the lens's optical Image Stabilizer switch is set to < OFF >.
- Stabilization by Movie digital IS may be less effective at some movie recording sizes.
- The wider the angle of view (wide angle), the more effective the image stabilization will be. The narrower the angle of view (telephoto), the less effective the image stabilization will be.
- When using a tripod, setting Movie digital IS to [**Off**] is recommended.
- Depending on the subject and shooting conditions, the subject may blur noticeably (the subject momentarily looks out of focus) due to the effects of the Movie digital IS.
- Consider setting to [**Off**] when using a TS-E lens or fish-eye lens.
- Since Movie digital IS magnifies the image, the image looks more grainy. Noise, dots of light, etc. may also become noticeable.

Note

- For details configuring image stabilization, see Image Stabilizer (IS Mode).

Auto Level

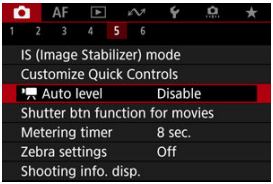
Auto leveling helps keep movies straight during recording.

Caution

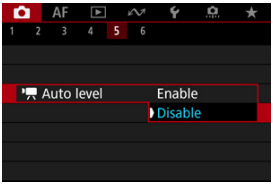
- Set [**Digital IS**] in [**: IS (Image Stabilizer) mode**] to [**Off**].

---

1. **Select [: Auto level].**



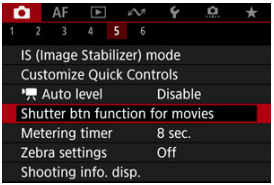
2. **Select an option.**



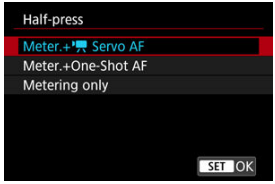
Shutter Button Function for Movies

You can set the functions performed by pressing the shutter button halfway or completely during movie recording.

1. **Select [: Shutter btn function for movies].**

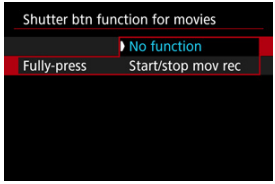


2. **Select an option.**



- **Half-press**
  Specify the function performed by pressing the shutter button halfway.

- **Fully-press**
  Specify the function performed by pressing the shutter button completely.

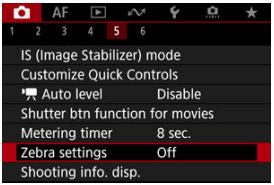


With [**Fully-press**] set to [**Start/stop mov rec**], you can start/stop movie recording not only with the movie shooting button but also by pressing the shutter button completely, or by using Wireless Remote Control BR-E1 (sold separately).

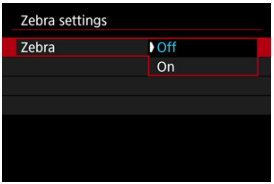
Zebra Settings

To help you adjust exposure before or during movie recording, you can display a striped pattern over or around image areas of a specified brightness.

1. **Select [: Zebra settings].**

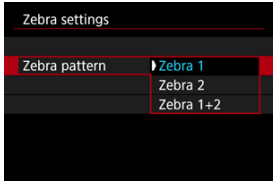


2. **Select [Zebra].**



- Select [**On**].

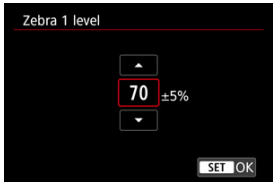
3. Select [Zebra pattern].



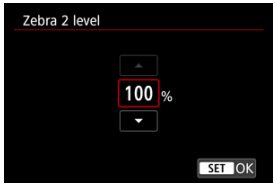
- [**Zebra 1**]: Displays left-slanting stripes around areas of the specified brightness.
- [**Zebra 2**]: Displays right-slanting stripes over areas that exceed the specified brightness.
- [**Zebra 1+2**]: Displays both [**Zebra 1**] and [**Zebra 2**].
  [**Zebra 1**] display takes precedence where [**Zebra 1**] and [**Zebra 2**] display areas overlap.

4. Set the level.

Zebra 1 level



Zebra 2 level



- Set with the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys.

Note

- The maximum brightness value does not reach 100% when HDR-PQ is set. Note that the maximum brightness value varies depending on [: **Highlight tone priority**] and [: **Picture Style**] settings.
- Checking the zebra display level in advance is recommended when you will set [**Zebra pattern**].

Shooting Information Display

Recording Emphasis

Aspect Marker

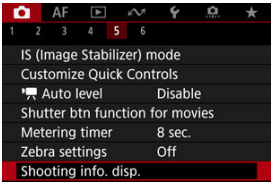
You can customize the details and screens of information shown on the screen or in the viewfinder during movie recording.

Note

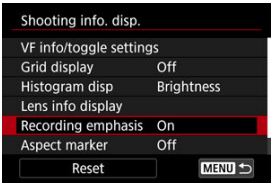
- For details on the following topics, see Shooting Information Display in Still Photo Shooting.
  - Customizing Information on the Screen
  - Customizing Information in the Viewfinder
  - Viewfinder Vertical Display
  - Grid
  - Histogram
  - Lens Information Display
  - 3D Cropping Frame
  - Clearing Settings

Recording Emphasis

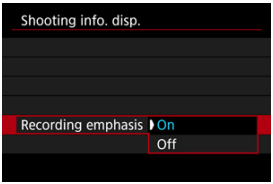
1. **Select [: Shooting info. disp.].**



2. **Select [Recording emphasis].**



3. **Select an option.**



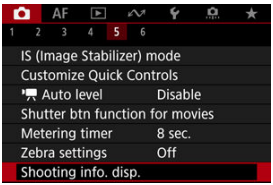
- **On**
  A red frame around the screen blinks while movie recording is in progress.

- **Off**
  No frame is displayed to call attention to recording in progress.

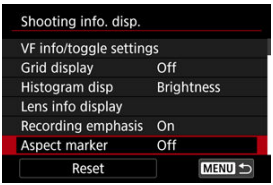
Aspect Marker

If you will change the image aspect ratio when editing the recorded movie, you can display aspect markers on the movie recording screen (during standby and recording) to be aware of the final angle of view after editing.

1. **Select [: Shooting info. disp.].**



2. **Select [Aspect marker].**



3. **Select an option.**



- Select a display option.

Note

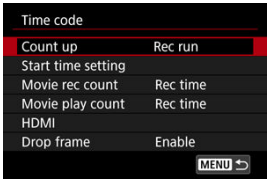
- Markers are not shown during movie playback (recorded movies are not tagged with aspect marker information).

Time Code

- Count Up
- Start Time Setting
- Movie Recording Count
- Movie Play Count
- HDMI
- Drop Frame

Time codes record the time automatically as movies are recorded. Time codes always record elapsed hours, minutes, seconds, and frames. They are mainly used when movies are edited.

To set up the time code, use [: **Time code**].



Caution

- Time codes may not be displayed correctly if your movies are played back on devices other than the camera.

Count Up

- **Rec run**
  The time code advances only during movie recording. Time codes in each movie file recorded continue from the last time code in the previous file.

- **Free run**
  The time code keeps advancing, even when you are not recording.

Caution

- When set to [**Free run**], time codes are not added to High Frame Rate movies.
- When set to [**Free run**], time codes will be affected by any changes to settings for time, zone, or daylight saving time (🔗).

Start Time Setting

You can set the initial time of the time code.

- **Manual input setting**
  Enables you to set any starting hour, minute, second, and frame.
- **Reset**
  Resets the time set with [**Manual input setting**] or [**Set to camera time**] to “00:00:00.” or “00:00:00:” ( ).
- **Set to camera time**
  Matches the hour, minute, and second set as the time on the camera. Sets the frame value to “00.”

Movie Recording Count

You can select how time is displayed on the movie recording screen.

- **Rec time**
  During recording standby, displays the available recording time. During recording, displays the time that has elapsed since movie recording began (1).

- **Time code**
  Displays the time code during movie recording (2).



Movie Play Count

You can select how time is displayed on the movie playback screen.

- **Rec time**
  Displays the recording or playback time during movie playback.

- **Time code**
  Displays the time code during movie playback.



Note

- Time codes are always recorded to movie files (except when High Frame Rate movies are set to [**Free run**]), regardless of the [**Movie rec count**] setting.
- The [**Movie play count**] setting in [📷: **Time code**] is linked to the [▶: **Movie play count**], so that these settings always match.
- The “frame” count is not displayed during movie recording or playback.

HDMI

- **Time code**
  Time codes can be added to movies as you record them to an external device via HDMI.

  - **Off**
    No time code is added to HDMI video output.

  - **On**
    Time codes are added to HDMI video output. When [**On**] is set, [**Rec Command**] is displayed.

- **Rec Command**
  For HDMI video output recorded by an external device, you can synchronize recording to when you start and stop recording movies on the camera.

  - **Off**
    Recording is started and stopped by the external device.

  - **On**
    Recording by an external device is synchronized to starting/stopping recording on the camera.

Caution

- Time codes are not added to HDMI video output when you record High Frame Rate movies with [**Count up**] in [**Time code**] set to [**Free run**].
- To determine compatibility of external recording devices with [**Time code**] and [**Rec Command**] functions, check with the device manufacturer.
- Even with [**Time code**] set to [**Off**], external recording devices may add time codes to movies, depending on their specifications. For details on device specifications relevant to adding time code to HDMI input, check with the device manufacturer.

Drop Frame

The time code's frame count will cause a discrepancy between the actual time and the time code if the frame rate is set to 119.9P (119.9 fps), 59.94P (59.94 fps), or 29.97P (29.97 fps). The discrepancy is corrected automatically when [**Enable**] is set.

- **Enable**
  Corrects the discrepancy automatically by skipping time code numbers (DF: drop frame).

- **Disable**
  The discrepancy is not corrected (NDF: non-drop frame).
  Time codes are displayed as follows.

  - **Enable (DF)**
    00:00:00. (Playback: 00:00:00.00)

  - **Disable (NDF)**
    00:00:00: (Playback: 00:00:00:00)

Note

- The [**Drop frame**] setting item is not displayed when the frame rate is set to 23.98P (23.98 fps), or when [: **Video system**] is set to [**For PAL**].

Other Menu Functions

- [📷2]
- [📷3]
- [📷5]
- [📷6]

[📷2]

Exposure comp.

Exposure compensation can be adjusted in a range of ±3 stops, in 1/3-stop increments. For details on exposure compensation, see Manual Exposure Compensation.

ISO speed settings

- **ISO speed**
  In [M] mode, you can set the ISO speed manually. You can also select ISO Auto.
- **Max for Auto**
  You can set the maximum limit for ISO Auto in movie recording in [] mode or in [M] mode with ISO Auto.
- **Max for Auto**
  You can set the maximum limit for ISO Auto in time-lapse movie recording in [] mode or in [M] mode with ISO Auto.

HDR shooting HDR PQ

For details on HDR shooting HDR PQ, see HDR Shooting.

Auto Lighting Optimizer

Brightness and contrast can be corrected automatically. For details on Auto Lighting Optimizer, see Auto Lighting Optimizer.

Highlight tone priority

You can reduce overexposed, clipped highlights as you record movies. For details on Highlight tone priority, see Highlight Tone Priority.

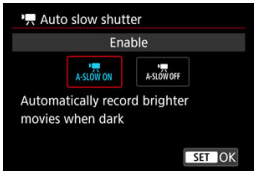
Av 1/8-stop incr.

- You can set aperture values on a finer scale when recording movies with an RF lens.
  This feature is available when the camera is set to [M].
  Select [**Enable**] to change the aperture increment from 1/3 stop (or 1/2 stop) to 1/8 stop.

Caution

- [**Av 1/8-stop incr.**] is not available (not displayed) when EF or EF-S lenses are used.

Auto slow shutter



You can choose whether to record movies that are brighter and less affected by image noise than when set to [**Disable**] by automatically slowing the shutter speed under low light.
Available in [] recording mode. Applies when the frame rate of the movie recording size is 59.94P or 50.00P.

- **Disable**
  Enables you to record movies with smoother, more natural movement, less affected by subject shake than when set to [**Enable**]. Note that under low light, movies may be darker than when set to [**Enable**].

- **Enable**
  Enables you to record brighter movies than when set to [**Disable**] by automatically reducing the shutter speed to 1/30 sec. (NTSC) or 1/25 sec. (PAL) under low light.

Note

- Setting to [**Disable**] is recommended when recording moving subjects under low light, or when afterimages such as trails may occur.

[📷3]

White balance

For details on white balance, see White Balance.

Custom White Balance

For details on custom white balance, see Custom White Balance.

WB correction

For details on white balance correction, see White Balance Correction.

Picture Style

For details on Picture Styles, see Picture Style Selection.

Clarity

For details on clarity, see Clarity.

Lens aberration correction

Peripheral illumination, distortion, focus breathing, and chromatic aberration can be corrected as you record movies. For details on lens aberration correction, see Lens Aberration Correction.

[📷5]

Customize Quick Controls

For details on customizing Quick Controls, see Customizing Quick Controls.

Metering timer

For details on the metering timer, see Metering Timer.

[📷6]

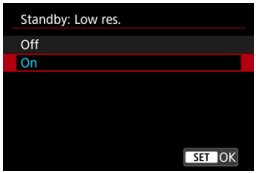
Reverse display

For details on reverse display, see Reverse Display.

VF display format

For details on the viewfinder display format, see Viewfinder Display Format.

Standby: Low res.

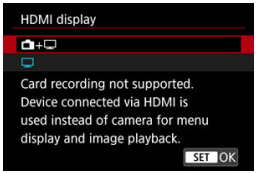


Set to [**On**] to conserve battery power and control the rise of camera temperature during standby.
As a result, it may enable you to record movies over a longer period.

Caution

- Image quality on the standby screen may differ from image quality on the screen during movie recording.
- Briefly when you start recording movies, image display may remain on the current frame instead of being updated.
- With digital zoom set to an option other than [**Disable**], overheat control is set to [**Off**] and cannot be changed ( ).

HDMI display



You can specify how movies are displayed as they are recorded via HDMI to an external device. Movie output itself corresponds to the [**Movie rec. size**] setting.
The default setting is [ ].

- **+**
  Enables movie display both on the camera screen and on the other device, via HDMI output.
  Camera operations such as image playback or menu display are shown on the other device via HDMI, not on the camera screen.
-
  Deactivates the camera screen during output via HDMI, so that the screen is blank. Shooting information, AF points, and other information is shown on the external device via HDMI, but you can stop output of this information by pressing the < INFO > button.
  Before recording movies externally, confirm that no information is being sent by the camera by making sure no shooting information, AF points, and so on is displayed on external monitors or other devices.

Caution

- Card recording is not performed with [**HDMI display**] set to [**+**]. Camera menus and image playback are only displayed on the screen connected via HDMI.
- The HDMI output resolution and frame rate are automatically adjusted to suit the movie recording size.

? For longer HDMI output

To continue HDMI output for longer than 30 min., select [**+**], then set [**Auto power off**] in [**: Power saving**] to [**Disable**] ( ). HDMI output will continue after the camera screen turns off when the time set in [**Screen off**] elapses.

Caution

- HDMI output without information prevents display of warnings about the card space, battery level, or high internal temperature ( ) via HDMI.
- During HDMI output, display of the next image may take some time if you switch between movies of different recording sizes or frame rates.
- Avoid operating the camera when recording movies to external devices, which may cause information to be displayed in the HDMI video output.
- Brightness and color of movies recorded with the camera may look different from that of HDMI video output recorded by external devices, depending on the viewing environment.

Note

- By pressing the < INFO > button, you can change the information displayed.
- Time codes can be added to HDMI video output ( ).
- Audio is also output via HDMI, except when [**Sound rec.**] is set to [**Disable**].

General Movie Recording Precautions

Guidance Display Before Recording

Warning Indicator Display During Shooting or Recording

Guidance Display Before Recording

Guidance may be displayed when the camera starts up, after settings are adjusted, or in other situations.



The guidance warns that the camera may become hot internally if movies are recorded under the current settings, and that if you continue recording, the camera may turn off automatically.
If you will record over an extended period, consider changing the settings listed in the guidance (such as movie recording size or use of digital zoom), so that you can record without the camera displaying guidance.
If you prefer to record without changing the settings, note any warning indicators displayed as you record.

Warning Indicator Display During Shooting or Recording

A 10-level indicator (1) is displayed during still photo shooting or movie recording in case of excessive internal camera temperature.



As the internal temperature rises, the level on the indicator extends to the right. How fast the level increases will depend on shooting conditions. Levels 1–7 are marked in white, but once the temperature reaches level 8, the color changes.



[ ] flashes in red if you continue recording after the indicator reaches level 9, marked in orange. A flashing icon indicates that the camera will soon turn off automatically.



A message is displayed if you continue to record while the icon is flashing, and the camera automatically turns off.

Subsequent recording

To keep recording under the same settings, leave the camera off and let it cool down a while. Note that the camera may overheat again after you resume recording.

Caution

Precautions for movie recording

- Do not point the camera toward an intense light source, such as the sun or an intense artificial light source. Doing so may damage the image sensor or the camera's internal components.
- If you record something that has fine detail, moire or false colors may result.
- If [AWB] or [AWBW] is set and the ISO speed or aperture value changes during movie recording, the white balance may also change.
- If you record a movie under fluorescent or LED lighting, the movie image may flicker.
- If you perform AF with a USM lens during movie recording in low light, horizontal banding noise may be recorded in the movie. The same type of noise may occur if you focus manually with certain lenses equipped with an electronic focusing ring.
- Recording a few test movies is recommended if you intend to perform zooming during movie recording. Zooming as you record movies may cause exposure changes or lens sounds to be recorded, an uneven audio level, inaccurate lens aberration correction, or loss of focus.
- Large aperture values may delay or prevent accurate focusing.
- Performing AF during movie recording may cause the following kinds of issues: significant temporary loss of focus, recording of changes in movie brightness, temporary stopping of movie recording, or recording of mechanical lens sounds.
- Avoid covering the built-in microphones with your fingers or other objects.
- Connecting or disconnecting an HDMI cable during movie recording will end recording.
- If necessary, also see General Still Photo Shooting Precautions.
- The camera may become hot in movie recording while connected via Wi-Fi. Use a tripod or take other measures to avoid handheld recording.

Recording and image quality

- If the attached lens has an Image Stabilizer and you set the Image Stabilizer switch to <ON>, the Image Stabilizer will operate at all times even if you do not press the shutter button halfway. This will consume battery power, and it may reduce the total movie recording time. When the Image Stabilizer is not necessary, such as when using a tripod, it is recommended that you set the Image Stabilizer switch to <OFF>.
- If the brightness changes as you record a movie with auto exposure, the movie may appear to stop momentarily. In this case, record movies with manual exposure.
- If there is a very bright light source in the image, the bright area may appear black on the screen. Movies are recorded almost exactly as they appear on the screen.
- Image noise or irregular colors may occur when shooting at high ISO speeds, high temperatures, slow shutter speeds, or under low light. Movies are recorded almost exactly as they appear on the screen.
- Video and audio quality of recorded movies may be worse on other devices, and playback may not be possible, even if the devices support MP4 formats.

- If you use a card with a slow writing speed, an indicator may appear on the right of the screen during movie recording. The indicator shows how much data has not yet been written to the card (remaining capacity of the internal buffer memory), and it increases more quickly the slower the card is. If the indicator (1) becomes full, movie recording will stop automatically.



(1)

- If the card has a fast writing speed, the indicator will not appear or the level (if displayed) will not increase much. First, record a few test movies to see if the card can write fast enough.
- If the indicator shows that the card is full, and movie recording stops automatically, the sound near the end of the movie may not be recorded properly.
- If the card's writing speed is slow (due to fragmentation) and the indicator appears, formatting the card may make the writing speed faster.

Note

Notes for movie recording

- Each time you record a movie, a new movie file is created on the card.
- Field of view (coverage) is approx. 100%.
- To enable starting/stopping movie recording by pressing the shutter button completely, set [**Fully-press**] for [: **Shutter btn function for movies**] to [**Start/stop mov rec**] ( ).
- Most external microphones compatible with 3.5 mm mini-jacks can be used.
- Any connected external microphone is used instead of the built-in microphone.
- Focus preset during movie recording is available when using (super) telephoto lenses equipped with this function released in and after the second half of 2011.
- YCbCr 4:2:0 (8-bit) color sampling and the BT.709 color space are used for 4K and Full HD movies.

AF/Drive

This chapter describes autofocus operation and drive modes and introduces menu settings on the AF [AF] tab.
☆ to the right of titles indicates functions only available in Creative Zone modes (<**P**>, <**Tv**>, <**Av**>, or <**M**>).

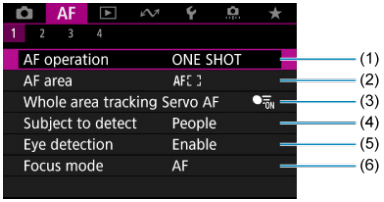
Note

- < AF > stands for autofocus. < MF > stands for manual focus.

- Tab Menus: AF (Still Photos)
- Tab Menus: AF (Movie Recording)
- AF Operation ☆
- Movie Servo AF
- Selecting the AF Area
- Preview AF
- AF-Assist Beam Firing
- Touch & Drag AF Settings
- Manual Focus
- Customizing AF Functions ☆
- Selecting the Drive Mode
- Using the Self-Timer
- Remote Control Shooting
- Customizing Operation

Tab Menus: AF (Still Photos)

AF1



(1) AF operation

(2) AF area

(3) Whole area tracking Servo AF

(4) Subject to detect

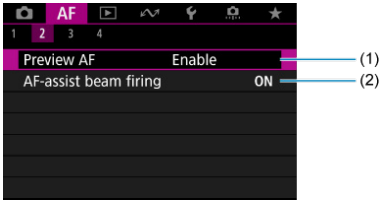
(5) Eye detection

(6) Focus mode

Note

- When lenses without a focus mode switch are used, [**Focus mode**] is displayed on the [AF1] tab.

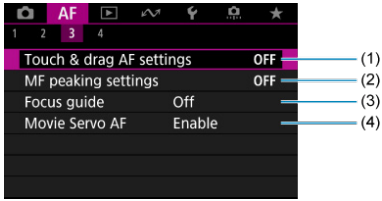
AF2



(1) Preview AF

(2) AF-assist beam firing

- **AF3**



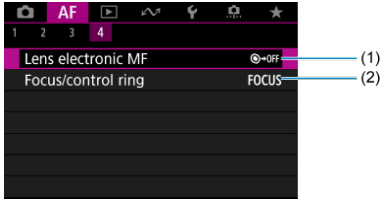
(1) Touch & drag AF settings

(2) MF peaking settings

(3) Focus guide

(4) Movie Servo AF

- **AF4**

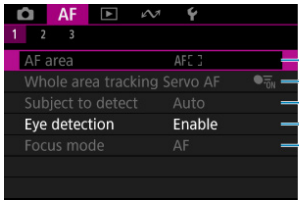


(1) Lens electronic MF

(2) Focus/control ring

In Basic Zone modes, the following screens are displayed.
Note that available menus vary by shooting mode.

AF1



(1) AF area

(2) Whole area tracking Servo AF

(3) Subject to detect

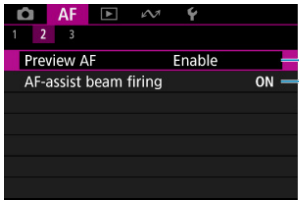
(4) Eye detection

(5) Focus mode

Note

- When lenses without a focus mode switch are used, [**Focus mode**] is displayed on the [AF1] tab.

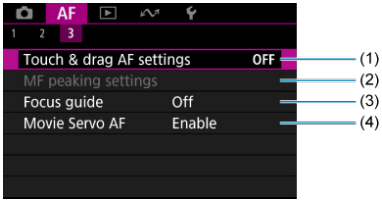
AF2



(1) Preview AF

(2) AF-assist beam firing

AF3



(1) Touch & drag AF settings

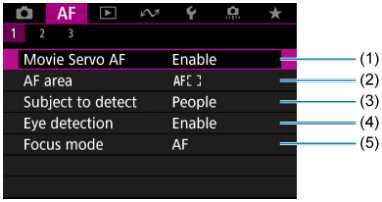
(2) MF peaking settings

(3) Focus guide

(4) Movie Servo AF

Tab Menus: AF (Movie Recording)

AF1



(1) Movie Servo AF

(2) AF area

(3) Subject to detect

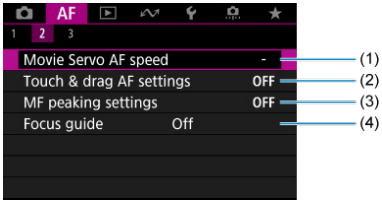
(4) Eye detection

(5) Focus mode

Note

- When lenses without a focus mode switch are used, [**Focus mode**] is displayed on the [AF1] tab.

AF2



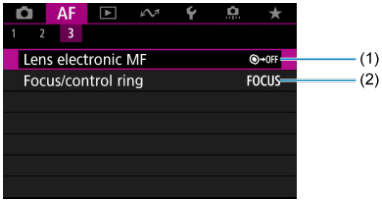
(1) Movie Servo AF speed

(2) Touch & drag AF settings

(3) MF peaking settings

(4) Focus guide

- **AF3**



(1) Lens electronic MF

(2) Focus/control ring

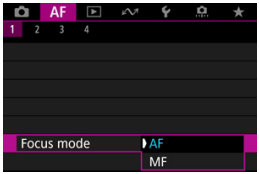
AF Operation

- One-Shot AF for Still Subjects
- Servo AF for Moving Subjects
- AI Focus AF for Automatic AF Mode Switching

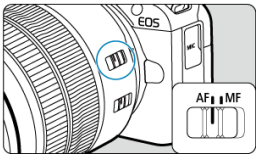
You can select the AF operation characteristics to suit the shooting conditions or subject.

1. **Set the focus mode to AF.**

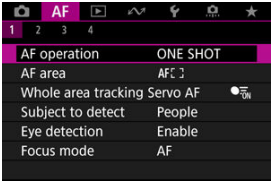
- **For RF lenses without a focus mode switch**
  Set [AF: **Focus mode**] to [**AF**].



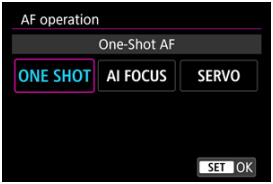
- **For RF lenses with a focus mode switch**
  Set the lens focus mode switch to <AF>.



2. **Select [AF: AF operation].**



3. **Select an option.**



Note

- If focus is not achieved, the AF point will turn orange. When using One-Shot AF, either recompose the shot and try to focus again or see Shooting Conditions That Make Focusing Difficult.
- With Servo AF, the camera shoots even when subjects are not in focus.

One-Shot AF for Still Subjects

This AF operation is suited for still subjects. When you press the shutter button halfway, the camera will focus only once.

- When focus is achieved, the AF point will turn green and the beeper will sound.
- The focus remains locked while you hold down the shutter button halfway, allowing you to recompose the image before taking the picture.
- For details on the continuous shooting speed for continuous shooting, see Selecting the Drive Mode.

Note

- If [: **Beep**] is set to [**Disable**], the beeper will not sound when focus is achieved.
- See Lens electronic MF when using a lens that supports electronic manual focusing.

Shooting with the focus locked

In focus lock shooting, you will use One-Shot AF with a fixed AF point, then recompose the shot before shooting. The steps are as follows when you will press the shutter button halfway to focus.

1. **Aim the fixed AF point over the subject to focus on, then press the shutter button halfway.**



2. **After the AF point in focus turns green, keep the shutter button pressed halfway and recompose the shot.**



3. **Press the shutter button completely to take the picture.**

Servo AF for Moving Subjects

This AF operation is suited for moving subjects. While you hold down the shutter button halfway, the camera will keep focusing on the subject continuously.

- When focus is achieved, the AF point will turn blue. The beeper will not sound even when focus is achieved.
- The exposure is set at the moment the picture is taken.
- For details on the continuous shooting speed for continuous shooting, see Selecting the Drive Mode.

Caution

- Accurate focusing may not be possible at high aperture values or depending on the lens, the distance to the subject, and how fast the subject is moving.
- Zooming during continuous shooting may throw off the focus. Zoom first, then recompose and shoot.
- Consider shooting with One-Shot AF if Servo AF operation is unsteady for still subjects.

AI Focus AF for Automatic AF Mode Switching

The AF mode is automatically switched from [**One-Shot AF**] to [**Servo AF**] based on subject status while you are pressing the shutter button halfway or shooting continuously.

Movie Servo AF

With this function enabled, the camera focuses on the subject continuously during movie recording.

1. **Set the Mode dial to <🎥>.**

2. **Select [AF: Movie Servo AF].**



3. **Select [Enable].**



- **Enable**

  - The camera focuses on the subject continuously even when you are not pressing the shutter button halfway.
  - To keep the focus at a specific position, or if you prefer not to record mechanical sounds from the lens, you can temporarily stop Movie Servo AF by tapping [SERVO AF] in the lower left of the screen.



  - Movie Servo AF will resume after pausing if you return to movie recording after operations such as pressing the < MENU > or < ▶ > button or changing the AF area.

- **Disable**
  Press the shutter button halfway to focus.

Caution

Precautions when set to [Movie Servo AF: Enable]

- **Shooting conditions that make focusing difficult**
  - A fast-moving subject approaching or moving away from the camera.
  - A subject moving at a close distance to the camera.
  - When shooting with a higher aperture value.
  - Also see Shooting Conditions That Make Focusing Difficult.
- Since the lens is driven continuously and the battery power is consumed, the possible movie recording time ( ) will be shortened.
- The camera's built-in microphone may also record mechanical sounds of the lens or sounds of camera/lens operations if AF operations are performed or the camera or lens is operated during movie recording. If so, it may help reduce these sounds if you use an external microphone equipped with an output plug and position it away from the camera and lens.
- Movie Servo AF pauses during zooming or magnified view.
- During movie recording, if a subject approaches or moves away or if the camera is moved vertically or horizontally (panning), the recorded image may momentarily expand or contract (change in image magnification).

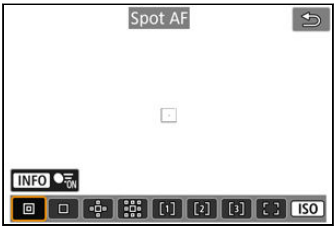
Selecting the AF Area

- AF Area
- Selecting the AF Area
- Whole Area Tracking Servo AF
- Subject to Detect
- Eye Detection
- Tracking with the Button
- Focus Mode
- Manually Setting AF Points or Zone AF Frames
- Magnified View
- AF Shooting Tips
- Shooting Conditions That Make Focusing Difficult
- AF Range

AF Area

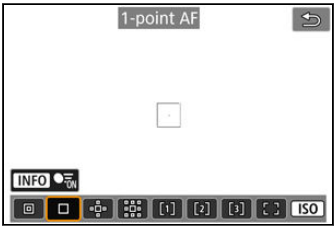
Camera operation in the AF area is as follows.

⊡: Spot AF



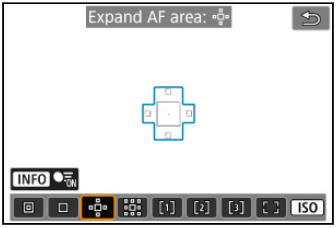
The camera focuses in a narrower area than 1-point AF.

□: 1-point AF



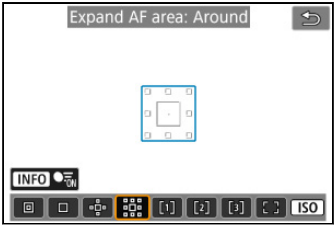
The camera focuses using a single AF point [□].

: Expand AF area:



Focuses using one AF point [□] and the AF area outlined here in blue. Effective for moving subjects, which are difficult to track with 1-point AF.
Focusing on your preferred subject is easier than with Flexible Zone AF.
When Servo AF is used, first you will focus using an AF point [□].

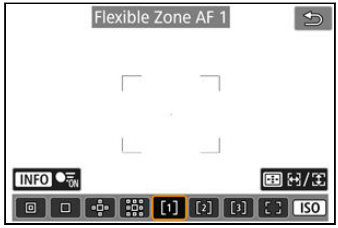
: Expand AF area: Around



Focuses using one AF point [□] and the surrounding AF area outlined here in blue, which makes it easier to focus on moving subjects than with Expand AF area: .
When Servo AF is used, first you will focus using an AF point [□].

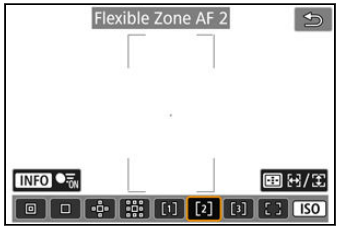
[1]: Flexible Zone AF 1

By default, a square Zone AF frame is set.



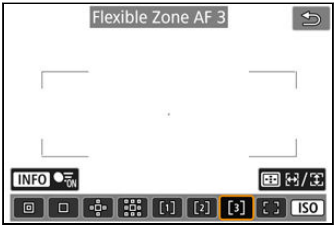
[2]: Flexible Zone AF 2

By default, a vertical rectangular Zone AF frame is set.



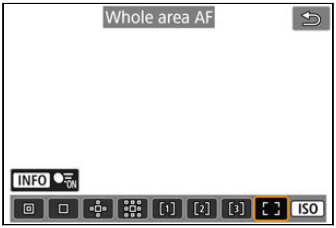
[3]: Flexible Zone AF 3

By default, a horizontal rectangular Zone AF frame is set.



With Flexible Zone AF 1–3, you can freely set the size of the Zone AF frame ( ).
Uses auto selection AF in Zone AF frames to cover a larger area than Expand AF area, which makes focusing easier than with 1-point AF/Expand AF area and effective for moving subjects.
Focusing areas are determined not only based on the nearest subject but also based on a variety of other conditions such as faces (of people or animals), vehicles, subject motion, and subject distance.
Pressing the shutter button halfway displays [□] over AF points in focus.

[ ]: Whole area AF

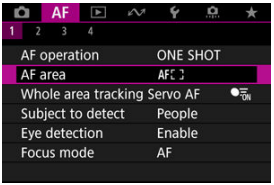


Uses auto selection AF in a whole-area AF frame to cover a larger area than Flexible Zone AF, which makes focusing easier than with 1-point AF/Expand AF area/Flexible Zone AF and effective for moving subjects.
Focusing areas are determined not only based on the nearest subject but also based on a variety of other conditions such as faces (of people or animals), vehicles, subject motion, and subject distance.
Pressing the shutter button halfway displays [□] over AF points in focus.

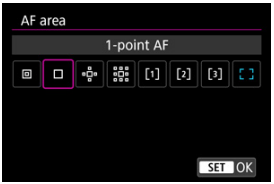
Selecting the AF Area

You can select the AF area to suit the shooting conditions or subject.
If you prefer to focus manually, see Manual Focus.

1. **Select [AF: AF area].**



2. **Select the AF area.**



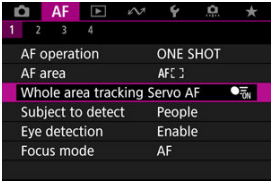
Note

- To set the AF area, you can also press the < > button and then the < ISO > button.

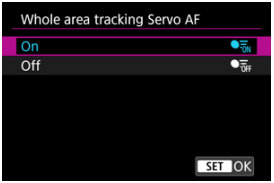
Whole Area Tracking Servo AF

You can set whether to switch to whole-area subject tracking during Servo AF (while the shutter button is pressed halfway with [AF: **AF operation**] set to [**Servo AF**]).

1. **Select [AF: Whole area tracking Servo AF].**



2. **Select an option.**

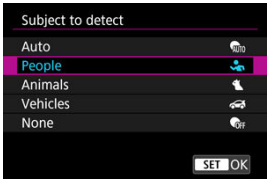


- **On**
  The AF area switches to whole-area AF to track subjects across the entire screen area while the shutter button is pressed halfway.

- **Off**
  Subjects are tracked only within AF points when the shutter button is pressed halfway or completely.

Subject to Detect

You can specify conditions for automatic selection of the main subject to track.



- **Auto**
  Automatic selection of the main subject to track from any people, animals, or vehicles in the scene.

- **People**
  Prioritizes the faces or heads of people as the main subjects to track.
  When a person's face or head cannot be detected, the camera attempts to detect and track their torso. If their torso cannot be detected, the camera may track other parts of their body.

- **Animals**
  Detects animals (dogs, cats, or birds) and people and prioritizes detection results for animals as the main subjects to track.
  For animals, the camera attempts to detect faces or bodies, and a tracking frame is shown over any face detected.
  When an animal's face or entire body cannot be detected, the camera may track part of their body.

- **Vehicles**
  Detects two- or four-wheeled motorsports vehicles and people and prioritizes detection results for vehicles as the main subjects to track.
  For vehicles, the camera attempts to detect key details or the entire vehicle, and a tracking frame is shown over any of these details detected.
  If key details or the entire vehicle cannot be detected, the camera may track other parts of the vehicle.
  Press the < INFO > button to enable or disable Spot detection for key details of vehicles.

- **None**
  The camera determines the main subject automatically from how you compose shots, without detecting subjects.
  Tracking frames are not displayed.

Caution

- The following kinds of subjects may not be detected. Also, the subject's left or right eye may not be prioritized correctly.
  - Extremely small or large
  - Too bright or dark
  - Partially hidden
  - Difficult to distinguish from the background
  - Obscured by rain, snow, or dust clouds
- People's posture or the color or shape of what they are wearing may prevent detection. Frames may also appear for subjects other than people.
- The camera may not detect dogs, cats, or birds, depending on the breed, color, shape, or posture. Frames may also appear for similar-looking animals or non-animal subjects.
- The camera may not detect two- or four-wheeled vehicles depending on the type, color, shape, or orientation. Frames may also appear for similar-looking vehicles or subjects that are not vehicles.
- To avoid having a tracking frame displayed next to unintended subjects when you are shooting people, animals, or vehicles with the camera set to [**Auto**], change the setting to track your intended subjects.

Note

- When pressing the shutter button halfway for subject selection, you can choose the following subjects. In scenes without relevant subjects, the camera tracks other objects regardless of the [**Subject to detect**] setting.
  - **Auto**, **People**
    People, animals, vehicles
    (When the subject for detection is set to [**People**], animals or vehicles can only be selected during Servo AF.)
  - **Animals**
    Animals, people
  - **Vehicles**
    Vehicles, people
- To restrict AF to your specified AF area, set [**Whole area tracking Servo AF**] to [**Off**] and [**Subject to detect**] to [**None**].

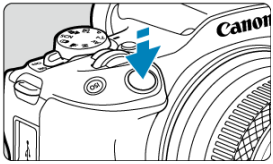
Manually selecting a subject for focus

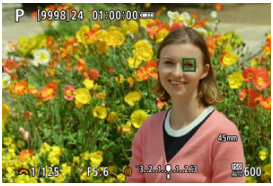
1. **Check the tracking frame.**



- Aim the camera at the subject. An AF point (or Zone AF frame) appears on the screen if you have set [**AF**: **AF area**] to an option other than [**Whole area AF**]. In this case, aim the AF point over the subject.
- A tracking frame [ ] appears over any subjects detected.
- Tracking frames [ ] away from AF points are displayed in gray, except in some cases.
- Once the tracked subject is near an AF point, even if it is outside the AF point, the tracking frame turns white (distinguishing it as an active frame), which enables selection as the main subject.

2. Focus and shoot/record.





- A tracking frame is displayed (in green for One-Shot AF or blue for Servo AF) when you press the shutter button halfway, and the camera beeps (only for One-Shot AF).
  An orange tracking frame indicates that the camera could not focus on subjects.

Note

- Selecting a subject by touch with [AF: **AF area**] set to [**Whole area AF**] changes the tracking frame to [ ] and locks on to that subject for tracking across the entire screen.
- To release locked tracking, tap [OFF].
- Pressing the shutter button halfway when the AF point does not overlap the tracking frame [ ] will focus using the active, white AF frame.
- For human subjects, the active [ ] may cover only a part of the face, not the whole face.
- The size of tracking frames varies depending on the subject.

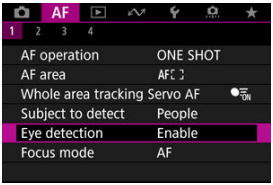
Caution

- Tapping the screen to focus when [**Preview AF**] is set to [**Disable**] will focus with [**One-Shot AF**], regardless of the AF operation setting.
- If the subject's face is significantly out of focus, face detection will not be possible. Adjust the focus manually ( ) so that the face can be detected, then perform AF.
- AF may not detect subjects or people's faces at the edges of the screen. Recompose the shot to center the subject or bring the subject closer to the center.

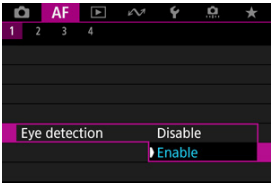
Eye Detection

You can shoot with the eyes of people or animals in focus.

1. **Select [AF: Eye detection].**



2. **Select an option.**



3. **Aim the camera at the subject.**



- An AF point is displayed around their eye.
- To choose an eye when [AF: **AF area**] is set to [**Whole area AF**], tap the screen.
- If your selected eye is not detected, an eye to focus on is selected automatically.
- To choose an eye to focus on if [ ] is displayed, with [AF: **AF area**] set to [**Whole area AF**], you can use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys, depending on the [**Eye detection**] setting.

4. **Take the picture.**

Caution

- Depending on the subject and shooting conditions, subject eyes may not be detected correctly, or a subject's left or right eye may not be prioritized correctly.
- Eyes are not detected when [AF: **Subject to detect**] is set to [**None**].

Tracking with the Button

You can press a button assigned to [**Start/stop whole area AF tracking**] in [: **Customize buttons**] to track subjects with a tracking frame [ ]. This example is based on assigning the < ISO > button ( ).

1. **Check the tracking frame.**



- A tracking frame appears after you aim the camera at a subject. Aim the AF point over the subject if you have selected an option other than [**Whole area AF**] in [AF: **AF area**].
- With Expand AF area: or Expand AF area: Around, adjacent AF points are also displayed.
- With Flexible Zone AF, the specified Zone AF frame is displayed.

2. **Press the < ISO > button.**



- The tracking frame changes to [ ], which locks on to that subject for tracking and follows the subject within the screen if it moves. To cancel tracking, press the < ISO > button again.
- To choose a subject to focus on when multiple subjects can be detected, press the < > button to change the tracking frame to [ ], then use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys.
- Once tracking begins, the subject is tracked across the entire screen, regardless of the specified AF area.

3. **Take the picture.**

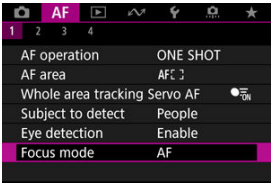
Note

- The position of AF areas and points when tracking stops during shooting standby corresponds to the position before tracking.
- When tracking stops while the shutter button is pressed halfway or completely, the AF area reverts to the state before tracking, but the AF point is centered in the tracking frame when tracking stops (during [**Servo AF**]).

Focus Mode

You can set how the camera focuses.

1. **Select [AF: Focus mode].**



2. **Select an option.**



- **AF**
  The camera operates in autofocus mode.

- **MF**
  The camera operates in manual focus mode.

Note

- You can also switch between [**AF**] and [**MF**] when the shooting screen is displayed by pressing the < ◀ > key.

Caution

- [**AF**: **Focus mode**] is not displayed under these conditions.
  - When lenses with a focus mode switch are attached
  - When lenses designed exclusively for manual focusing are attached
  - When no lens is attached
- When set to [**MF**], AF points are hidden during basic information display, and an MF icon is displayed.

Manually Setting AF Points or Zone AF Frames

You can manually set the AF point or Zone AF frame. Screens such as these are shown when set to Flexible Zone AF 1.

1. **Check the AF point.**



(1)

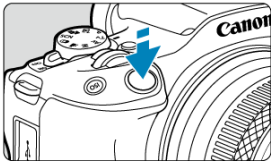
- An AF point (1) is displayed.

2. **Move the AF point.**



- Press the < [AF] > button, then use the < ✥ > keys to move the AF point into position for focusing (but note that with some lenses, it may not move to the edge of the screen).
  You can also focus by tapping a position on the screen to move the AF point there.
- To center the AF point, press the < MENU > button.

3. Focus and shoot/record.



- Aim the AF point over the subject and press the shutter button halfway.



- Once the subject is in focus, the AF point changes color (to green for One-Shot AF or blue for Servo AF) and the camera beeps (only for One-Shot AF).
- If focus is not achieved, the AF point will turn orange.

Caution

- The camera will keep moving the AF point [□] to track subjects when set to Flexible Zone AF and Servo AF, but under some shooting conditions (such as when subjects are small), it may not be possible to track the subject.
- Focusing may be difficult when using a peripheral AF point. In this case, select an AF point in the center.
- Tapping the screen to focus will focus with [**One-Shot AF**], regardless of the AF operation setting.

Magnified View

To check the focus, you can magnify display by approx. 5× or 10× by tapping [🔍].
Magnification is also possible by pressing the < ⊡ > button and then the < INFO > button.

- Magnification is centered on the tracking frame when the tracking frame is white (as an active frame) after subject detection.
  Magnification is centered on the AF point (in the center of the screen) when subjects are detected and the tracking frame is gray, or when subjects cannot be detected.
- Autofocusing is performed in magnified view if you press the shutter button halfway.
- When set to Servo AF or AI Focus AF, pressing the shutter button halfway in magnified view reverts to the normal view for focusing.

Caution

- If focusing is difficult in the magnified view, return to the normal view and perform AF.
- If you perform AF in the normal view and then use the magnified view, accurate focus may not be achieved.
- AF speed differs between the normal view and magnified view.
- Preview AF and Movie Servo AF are not available in magnified view.
- With the magnified view, achieving focus becomes more difficult due to camera shake. Using a tripod is recommended.

AF Shooting Tips

- Even when focus is achieved, pressing the shutter button halfway will focus again.
- Image brightness may change before and after autofocusing.
- Depending on the subject and shooting conditions, it may take longer to focus, or the continuous shooting speed may decrease.
- If the light source changes as you shoot, the screen may flicker, and focusing may be difficult. In this case, restart the camera and resume shooting with AF under the light source you will use.
- If focusing is not possible with AF, focus manually ( ).
- For subjects at the edge of the screen that are slightly out of focus, try centering the subject (or AF point, or Zone AF frame) to bring them into focus, then recompose the shot before shooting.
- With certain lenses, it may take more time to achieve focus with autofocus, or accurate focusing may not be achieved.

Shooting Conditions That Make Focusing Difficult

- Subject with low-contrast such as the blue sky, solid-color flat surfaces or when highlight or shadow details are clipped.
- Subjects in low light.
- Stripes and other patterns where there is contrast only in the horizontal direction.
- Subjects with repetitive patterns (Example: Skyscraper windows, computer keyboards, etc.).
- Fine lines and subject outlines.
- Under light sources with constantly changing brightness, colors, or patterns.
- Night scenes or points of light.
- The image flickers under fluorescent or LED lighting.
- Extremely small subjects.
- Subjects at the edge of the screen.
- Strongly backlit or reflective subjects (Example: Car with a highly reflective surfaces, etc.).
- Near and distant subjects covered by an AF point (Example: Animal in a cage, etc.).
- Subjects that keep moving within the AF point and will not stay still due to camera shake or subject blur.
- Performing AF when the subject is very far out of focus.
- Soft focus effect is applied with a soft focus lens.
- A special effect filter is used.
- Noise (dots of light, banding, etc.) appears on the screen during AF.

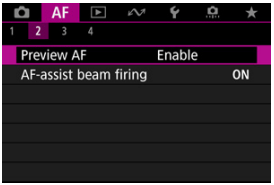
AF Range

The available autofocus range varies depending on the lens used and settings such as aspect ratio, movie recording size, and Movie digital IS.

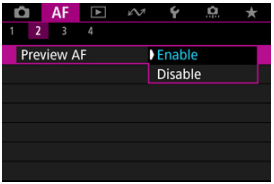
Preview AF

This function keeps subjects generally in focus. The camera is ready to focus immediately when you press the shutter button halfway.

1. **Select [AF: Preview AF].**



2. **Select [Enable].**



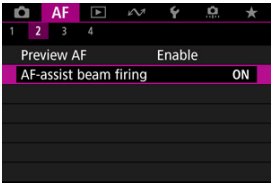
Caution

- Fewer shots are available when set to [**Enable**], because the lens is driven continuously and battery power is consumed.

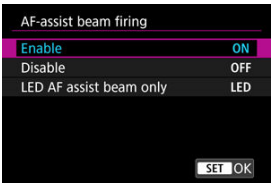
AF-Assist Beam Firing

You can enable or disable AF-assist beam firing of the camera or a Speedlite for EOS cameras.

1. **Select [AF: AF-assist beam firing].**



2. **Select an option.**



- **[ON] Enable**
  Enables firing of the AF-assist beam, when needed.

- **[OFF] Disable**
  Disables firing of the AF-assist beam. Set if you prefer not to fire the AF-assist beam.

- **[LED] LED AF assist beam only**
  Enables LED AF-assist beam firing by Speedlites equipped with this feature, when these flash units are attached. If your Speedlite is not LED-equipped, the camera's AF-assist beam is fired instead.

Caution

- Speedlite AF-assist beam firing is disabled when the Speedlite's [AF: **AF-assist beam firing**] Custom Function is set to [**Disable**].

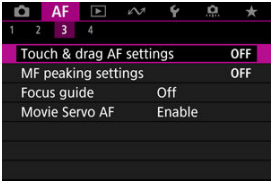
Touch & Drag AF Settings

- Touch & Drag AF
- Tapping to Select Subjects for Detection
- Positioning Method
- Active Touch Area
- Relative Sensitivity

You can move the AF point or Zone AF frame by tapping or dragging on the screen as you look through the viewfinder.

Touch & Drag AF

1. **Select [: Touch & drag AF settings].**



2. **Select [Touch & drag AF].**

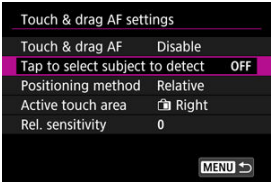


- Select [**Enable**].

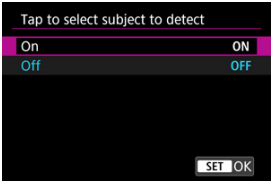
Tapping to Select Subjects for Detection

To switch the subject tracked to a different person when several faces are detected, you can tap the area set in [**Active touch area**].
Note that this setting is not available with [**Touch & drag AF**] set to [**Enable**].

1. **Select [Tap to select subject to detect].**



2. **Select [On].**



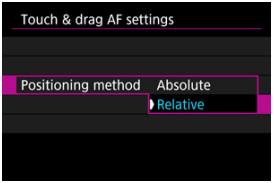
Note

- To switch to a person on the left, tap the left side of the area set in [**Active touch area**], and to switch to a person on the right, tap the right side.
- With [**Eye detection**] set to [**Enable**], the camera switches to the eyes of a different subject.

Positioning Method

You can set how positions are specified by tapping or dragging.

1. **Set [Positioning method].**

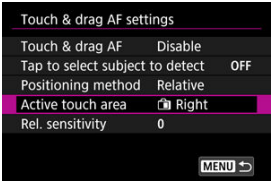


- **Absolute**
  The AF point moves to the tapped or dragged position on the screen.
- **Relative**
  The AF point moves in the direction you drag, by an amount corresponding to the amount you drag, no matter where you tap the screen.

Active Touch Area

You can specify the area of the screen used for tap and drag operations.

1. **Select [Active touch area].**



2. **Set the area that will respond to touch.**



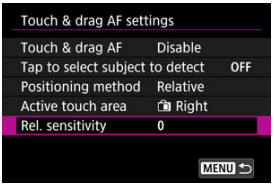
Note

- A round orange frame [ ] is displayed when you tap the screen with [**AF**: **AF area**] set to [**Whole area AF**]. After you lift your finger at the position to move the AF point to, [ ] is displayed and that subject is tracked. To cancel subject selection, tap [ ].

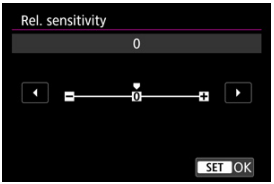
Relative Sensitivity

By setting [**Positioning method**] to [**Relative**], you can specify the amount of movement in response to tapping or dragging.

1. **Select [Rel. sensitivity].**



2. **Set the amount of movement.**



For faster AF point positioning, set toward the positive end, and for slower positioning, set toward the negative end.

Manual Focus

Setting MF Peaking (Outline Emphasis)

Focus Guide

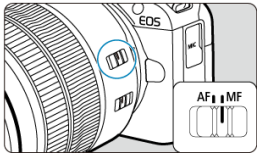
If focusing is not possible with autofocus, you can magnify the image and focus manually.

1. **Set the focus mode to <MF>.**

- **For RF lenses without a focus mode switch**
  Set [**AF**: **Focus mode**] to [**MF**].



- **For RF lenses with a focus mode switch**
  Set the lens focus mode switch to < MF >.



2. Magnify the image.



- Pressing the < ⊡ > button and then the < INFO > button changes the magnification ratio, as follows.

→ x5 → x10 → x1 ⟲

3. Move the magnified area.



- Use the < ✥ > keys to move the magnified area into position for focusing.
- To center the magnified area, press the < MENU > button.

4. Focus manually.

- While looking at the magnified image, turn the lens focusing ring to focus.
- After achieving focus, press the < [⊡] > button to return to the normal view.

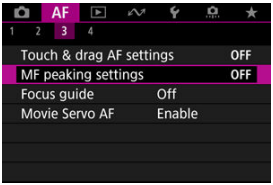
Note

- In magnified view, the exposure is locked.
- Even when focusing manually, you can use Touch Shutter to shoot.

Setting MF Peaking (Outline Emphasis)

Edges of subjects in focus can be displayed in color to make focusing easier. You can set the outline color and adjust the sensitivity (level) of edge detection.

1. **Select [AF: MF peaking settings].**

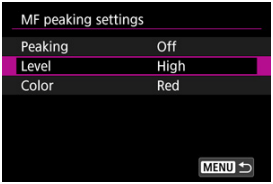


2. **Select [Peaking].**



- Select [**On**].

3. **Set [Level] and [Color].**



- Set as necessary.

Caution

- In magnified view, peaking display is not shown.
- During HDMI output, peaking display is not shown on equipment connected via HDMI. Note that peaking display is shown on the camera screen when [: **HDMI display**] is set to [+].
- MF peaking may be hard to discern at high ISO speeds, especially when ISO expansion is set. If necessary, lower the ISO speed or set [**Peaking**] to [**Off**].

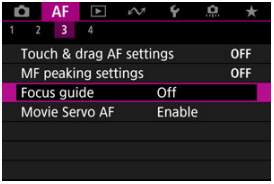
Note

- Peaking display shown on the screen is not recorded in images.

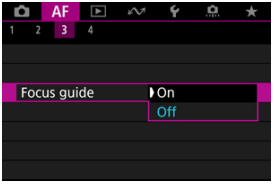
Focus Guide

Setting [AF: **Focus guide**] to [**On**] provides a guide frame that shows which direction to adjust focus and the extent of adjustment needed.

1. **Select [AF: Focus guide].**

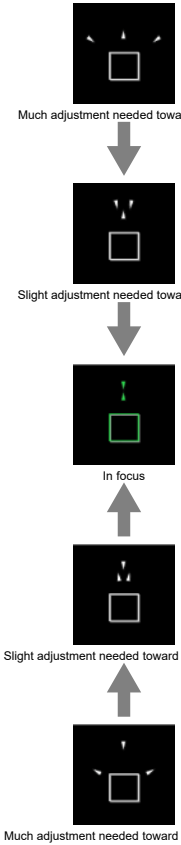


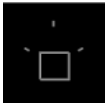
2. **Select [On].**



- To display the guide frame on the face of the person detected as the main subject, set [AF: **Subject to detect**] to an option other than [**None**]. You can also display the guide frame near the eyes of the person detected as the main subject by setting [AF: **Eye detection**] to an option other than [**Disable**].
- After pressing the < ⊡ > button, you can use the < ✣ > keys to move the guide frame in the direction you press.
- To set the guide frame after moving it with the < ✣ > keys, press the < (SET) > button.
- You can also move and set the guide frame by tapping the screen.
- To center the guide frame, tap [⊡] or press the < ⊡ > button and then the < MENU > button.

The guide frame indicates the current position in focus and adjustment amount as follows.





Adjustment information not detected

Caution

- Under difficult shooting conditions for AF ( ), the guide frame may not be displayed correctly.
- Higher aperture values are more likely to prevent correct guide frame display.
- No AF points are displayed while the guide frame is displayed.
- The guide frame is not displayed in these situations.
  - When the focus mode is set to < AF > on the camera or lens
  - When display is magnified
  - When digital zoom is set
- The guide frame is not displayed correctly during shifting or tilting of TS-E lenses.

Note

- The camera's auto power off counter does not count time spent adjusting the focus with a lens's electronic focusing ring.

☑ [AF4]

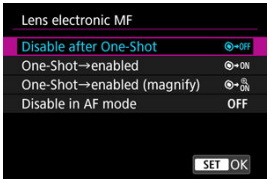
☑ [AF2] (In Movie Recording)

You can configure AF functions in detail to suit your shooting style or subject.

[AF4]

Lens electronic MF

For lenses equipped with electronic manual focusing, you can specify how manual focus adjustment is used with One-Shot AF.



- **[→OFF] Disable after One-Shot**
  After the AF operation, manual focusing adjustment is disabled.

- **[→ON] One-Shot→enabled**
  You can manually adjust the focus after the AF operation if you keep holding down the shutter button halfway.

- **[→ON] One-Shot→enabled (magnify)**
  You can manually adjust the focus after the AF operation if you keep holding down the shutter button halfway. You can magnify the area in focus and adjust the focus manually by turning the lens focusing ring.

- **[OFF] Disable in AF mode**
  Manual focus adjustment is disabled when the focus mode switch of the camera or lens is set to < AF >.

Caution

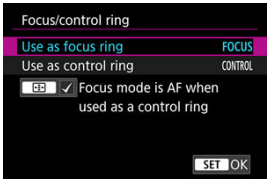
- With [**One-Shot→enabled (magnify)**], display may not be magnified even if you turn the lens focusing ring while pressing the shutter button halfway immediately after shooting. If so, you can magnify display by releasing the shutter button, waiting for [🔍] display, then pressing the shutter button halfway as you turn the lens focusing ring.

Note

- For details on your lens's manual focus specifications, refer to the Lens Instruction Manual.

Use as a focusing or control ring

In this menu, you can configure lens [Focus/control ring] functionality.



Lenses without a focusing/control ring switch

- **Use as focus ring**
  The ring works as a focusing ring.
- **Use as control ring**
  The ring works as a control ring. To restrict [AF: **Focus mode**] to [**AF**], press the < > button and add a checkmark [✓] to [**Focus mode is AF when used as a control ring**].

Lenses for which this menu is displayed that have both focusing and control rings

- **Use as focus ring**
  No change to focusing or control ring operation.
- **Use as control ring**
  The focusing ring works as a control ring. Control ring operation is disabled.

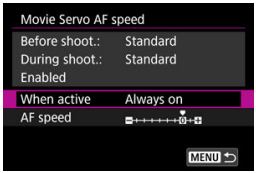
Note

- This menu is not displayed for lenses with a focusing/control ring switch. Use the lens to configure focusing/control ring functionality.
- For details on lenses with both focusing and control rings for which the camera displays this menu, visit the Canon website.
- Switching is also possible from the Quick Control screen, when customized with [: **Customize Quick Controls**] ( ).

Movie Servo AF speed

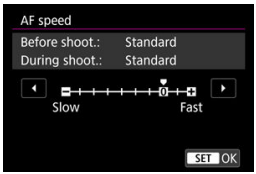
You can set the AF speed and operating conditions for Movie Servo AF. The function is enabled when using a lens supporting slow focus transition during movie recording*.

- **When active**



  You can set [**Always on**] to have the AF speed take effect at all times for movie recording (before and during movie recording) or set [**During shooting**] to have the AF speed take effect only during movie recording.

- **AF speed**



  You can adjust the AF speed (focus transition speed) from the standard speed (0) to slow (one of seven levels) or fast (one of two levels) to obtain the desired effect for the movie creation.

*** Lenses supporting slow focus transition during movie recording**
USM and STM lenses released in and after 2009 are compatible. For details, refer to the Canon website ( ).

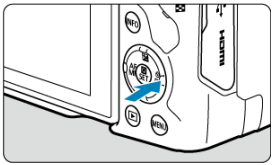
Caution

- With certain lenses, even if you adjust the AF speed, the speed may not change.

Selecting the Drive Mode

Single and continuous drive modes are provided. You can select the drive mode suiting the scene or subject.

1. **Press the < ▶ > key (6).**



- With an image displayed, press the < ▶ > key.

2. **Select the drive mode item.**



- Turn the < > dial to select the drive mode item.

- **[ ] Single shooting**
  When you hold down the shutter button completely, only one shot will be taken.

- **[ ] High-speed continuous shooting +**
  When you hold down the shutter button completely, you can shoot continuously as described below while you keep holding it down, based on the [: **Shutter mode**] setting.
  - [**Elec. 1st-curtain**]: max. approx. 12 shots/sec.
  - [**Electronic**]: max. approx. 15 shots/sec.

- **[H] High-speed continuous shooting**
  When you hold down the shutter button completely, you can shoot continuously as described below while you keep holding it down, based on the [: **Shutter mode**] setting.
  - [**Elec. 1st-curtain**]: max. approx. 7.6 shots/sec.
  - [**Electronic**]: max. approx. 15 shots/sec.

- **[L] Low-speed continuous shooting**
  When you hold down the shutter button completely, you can shoot continuously as described below while you keep holding it down, based on the [: **Shutter mode**] setting.
  - [**Elec. 1st-curtain**]: max. approx. 3.0 shots/sec.
  - [**Electronic**]: max. approx. 5.0 shots/sec.

- **[10] Self-timer: 10 sec.**

- **[2] Self-timer: 2 sec.**

- **[C] Self-timer: Continuous shooting**
  For details on self-timer shooting, see Using the Self-Timer.

Caution

- [□] enables approx. 12 shots/sec. continuous shooting speed when set to [**Elec. 1st-curtain**] under these conditions.
  - Room temperature (23°C/73°F)
  - Using any of the following power sources
    - Fully charged LP-E17 (note that continuous shooting speed may become slower when using batteries with weak recharge performance)
    - Household power outlet accessories (sold separately)
    - USB power adapters (sold separately)
  - Shutter speed: 1/1000 sec. or faster
  - Flicker reduction: None
- [□] or [□H] enables approx. 15 shots/sec. continuous shooting speed when set to [**Electronic**] under these conditions.
  - Shutter speed: 1/250 sec. or faster

  Note that the continuous shooting speed may be less than approx. 15 shots/sec. if any of the following occurs during continuous shooting.
  - Settings are applied in <**P**> or <**Tv**> shooting mode that cause the aperture value to change
  - Zooming is performed
  - Manual focusing is performed
  - Servo AF changes the position in focus
- Continuous shooting speed with Servo AF may be slower depending on subject conditions or the lens used.
- Visit the Canon website for details on lenses supporting the maximum continuous shooting speed (🔗).
- The continuous shooting speed will be lower when shooting under flickering light with [**Electronic**] is set. Also, the continuous shooting speed may be lower when [**Elec. 1st-curtain**] is set.
- When internal memory becomes full during continuous shooting, the continuous shooting speed may drop off because shooting will be temporarily disabled (🔗).

Using the Self-Timer

Use the self-timer when you want to be in the picture such as a commemorative photograph.

1. **Press the < ▶ > key (⏱6).**

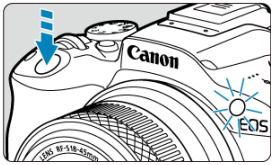
   - With an image displayed, press the < ▶ > key.

2. **Select the drive mode item.**



   - Turn the < dial > to select the self-timer.
     ⏱10: Shoot in 10 sec.
     ⏱2: Shoot in 2 sec.
     ⏱C: Shoot continuously in 10 sec. for the specified number of shots*
     * Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to set the number of shots to take (2–10).

3. **Take the picture.**



- Focus on the subject, then press the shutter button completely.
- To check operation, look at the self-timer lamp, listen for beeps, or watch the countdown in seconds on the screen.
- Self-timer lamp blinking accelerates and the camera beeps quickly approx. 2 sec. before the picture is taken.

Caution

- With [ᵒ꜀], the continuous shooting interval may be longer depending on image quality, use of external flash, and other shooting conditions.

Note

- [ᵒ₂] is used to start shooting without touching the camera (to avoid camera shake) when it is mounted on a tripod for shots such as still lifes or long exposures, for example.
- After taking self-timer shots, playing back the image (🔍) to check focus and exposure is recommended.
- When using the self-timer to shoot yourself, use focus lock (🔍) on an object at the same distance as where you will stand.
- To cancel the self-timer after it starts, either tap the screen or press the < SET > button.
- Auto power off time may be extended when the camera is set for remote control shooting.

Remote Control Shooting

Wireless Remote Control BR-E1

You can shoot remotely by using an optional Wireless Remote Control BR-E1, which pairs via Bluetooth.

Wireless Remote Control BR-E1

You can shoot remotely up to approx. 5 meters/16.4 feet from the camera.
First, pair the camera and BR-E1 ( ).
For operating instructions, refer to the BR-E1 instruction manual.

Note

- Auto power off time may be extended when the camera is set for remote control shooting.
- BR-E1 can also be used for movie recording. Even in still photo shooting, you can record movies by setting the remote control switch to movie mode.

Customizing Operation

Adjusting the Zone AF Frame Size

This section describes ways to customize AF operation. You can also use a combination of customized settings.

Adjusting the Zone AF Frame Size

You can resize the Zone AF frame displayed for Flexible Zone AF 1–3.

1. **Press the < > button during shooting screen display.**



2. **Press the < ISO > button.**



3. **Press the < ISO > button and select Flexible Zone AF 1, 2, or 3.**



4. **Press the < ⊡ > button.**



5. **Adjust the Zone AF frame size.**

- Use the < ✣ > keys to adjust the Zone AF frame size, then press the < (SET) > button.
- To restore the default setting, press the < INFO > button.

Playback

This chapter covers topics related to playback—playing back captured still photos and movies—and introduces menu settings on the playback [▶] tab.

Caution

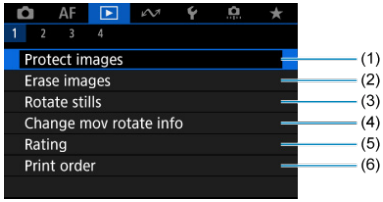
- Normal display or selection on this camera may not be possible for images captured on other cameras, or images from this camera that have been edited or renamed on a computer or other device.
- Images that cannot be used with playback functions may be displayed.

- Tab Menus: Playback
- Image Playback
- Magnified Image Display
- Index Display (Multiple-Image Display)
- Movie Playback
- Editing a Movie's First and Last Scenes
- Frame Extraction from 4K Movies
- Digest Movie Editing
- Playback on a TV Set
- Protecting Images
- Erasing Images
- Rotating Still Photos
- Changing Movie Orientation Information
- Rating Images
- Print Ordering (DPOF)
- Creative Assist
- Playback Creative Filters
- Red-Eye Correction
- Resizing JPEG/HEIF Images
- Cropping JPEG/HEIF Images
- Converting HEIF to JPEG
- Slide Show
- Setting Image Search Conditions
- Resuming from Previous Playback
- Browsing Images with the Dial
- Customizing Playback Information Display
- AF Point Display
- Playback Grid

- Movie Play Count
- HDMI HDR Output

Tab Menus: Playback

Playback 1



(1) Protect images

(2) Erase images

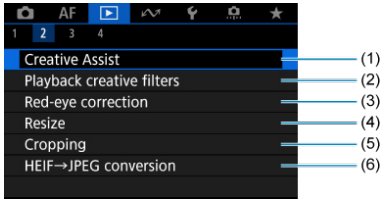
(3) Rotate stills

(4) Change mov rotate info

(5) Rating

(6) Print order

Playback 2



(1) Creative Assist

(2) Playback creative filters

(3) Red-eye correction

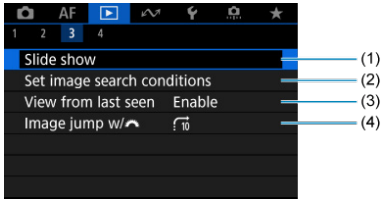
(4) Resize

(5) Cropping

(6) HEIF→JPEG conversion

In Basic Zone modes, [**HEIF→JPEG conversion**] is not displayed.

Playback 3



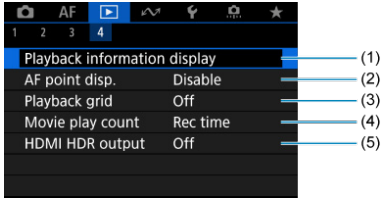
(1) Slide show

(2) Set image search conditions

(3) View from last seen

(4) Image jump w/

Playback 4



(1) Playback information display

(2) AF point disp.

(3) Playback grid

(4) Movie play count

(5) HDMI HDR output

Image Playback

- Single-Image Display
- Shooting Information Display
- Touch Playback

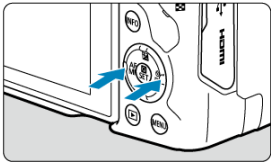
Single-Image Display

1. **Switch to playback.**

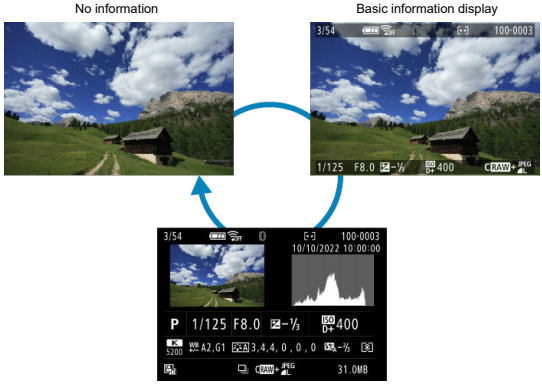


- Press the < ▶ > button.
- The last image captured or played back is displayed.

2. **Browse images.**



- To play back images starting with the most recent, press the < ◀ > key. To display images starting with the first captured image, press the < ▶ > key.
- Each time you press the < INFO > button, the display will change.



Shooting information display

3. Exit image playback.

- Press the < ▶ > button to exit image playback and return to shooting standby.

Note

- Lines indicating the image area are shown on RAW images captured with [📷: **Still img aspect ratio**] set to [**1:1**], [**4:3**], or [**16:9**] (🔗).
- If the search conditions are set with [▶: **Set image search conditions**] (🔗), only the filtered images will be displayed.

Shooting Information Display

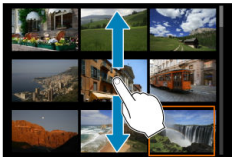
With the shooting information screen displayed ( ), you can press the < INFO > button to switch to other information. You can also customize the information displayed, in [▶: **Playback information display**] ( ).

Touch Playback

The camera features a touch-screen panel that you can touch to control playback. Supported touch operations are like those used with smartphones and similar devices. First, press the < ▶ > button to prepare for touch playback.

Browse images





Jump display



Index display



Magnified view

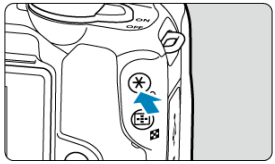


Note

- You can also magnify display by double-tapping with one finger.

Magnified Image Display

1. **Magnify the image.**



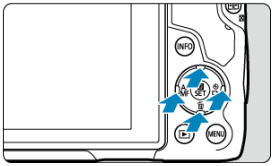
- During image playback, press the < Q > button.



(1)

- The magnified view will appear. The magnified area position (1) will be displayed in the lower right of the screen.
- Each press of the < Q > button magnifies display.
- Each press of the < ▪ > button reduces display. For index display (), press the < ▪ > button again after the final reduction.
- To erase the current image, select [**Erase images**] ().

2. Scroll the image.

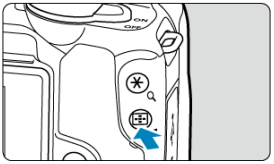




- Use the < ✣ > keys to scroll around the magnified image.
- To cancel the magnified view, press the < ▶ > button or tap [MENU ↩].

Index Display (Multiple-Image Display)

1. **Switch to the index display.**



- During image playback, press the < ▪ > button.
- The 4-image index display will appear. The selected image is highlighted with an orange frame. Pressing the < ▪ > button again switches display from 9 images to 36, and then to 100. Pressing the < 🔍 > button switches display from 100 images to 36, 9, 4, and then single-image display.

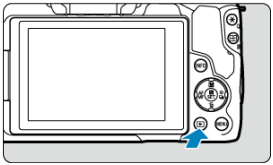


2. Browse images.



- Press the < ✣ > keys to move the orange frame for image selection.
- Press the < (SET) > button in index display to show the selected image in single-image display.

1. **Switch to playback.**

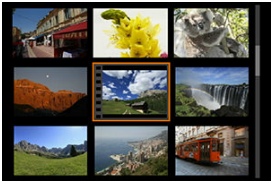


- Press the < ▶ > button.

2. **Select a movie.**



- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select a movie to play.
- In single-image display, the [SET] icon displayed in the upper left of the screen indicates a movie.



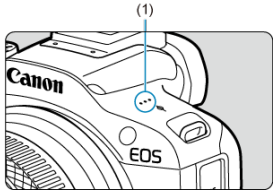
- In index display, perforations at the left edge of a thumbnail indicate a movie. Movies cannot be played from index display, so press the < Q > button to switch to single-image display.

3. **In single-image display, press the <SET> button.**

4. **Select [▶].**







- The movie will start playing back. Sound is played through the speaker (1).
- You can pause playback and access the movie playback panel by pressing the <SET> button (). Press it again to resume the playback.
- Press the <▲><▼> keys to adjust the volume (even during playback).

Movie playback panel



Item	Playback Operations
Skip backward	Skips backward approx. 1 sec. each time you press the < ◀ > key. Holding the < ◀ > key down will rewind the movie.
Previous frame	Displays the previous frame each time you turn the < dial > dial left.
Playback	Pressing the < SET > button toggles between playing movies and stopping playback.
Next frame	Displays the next frame each time you turn the < dial > dial right.
Skip forward	Skips forward approx. 1 sec. each time you press the < ▶ > key. Holding the < ▶ > key down will fast forward the movie.
	Playback position
hh:mm:ss	Playback time (hours:minutes:seconds, when [**Movie play count**] is set to [**Rec time**])
hh:mm:ss.ff (DF) **hh:mm:ss:ff** (NDF)	Time code (hours:minutes:seconds:frames, when [**Movie play count**] is set to [**Time code**])
Volume	Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to adjust the speaker volume ().
	Press the < > button to go to the next screen ().
MENU	Press the < MENU > button to return to single-image display.

Digest movie playback panel



Item	Playback Operations
Previous clip	Press the < ◀ > key to display the first frame of the previous clip.
Previous frame	Displays the previous frame each time you turn the < dial > dial left.
Playback	Pressing the < SET > button toggles between playing movies and stopping playback.
Next frame	Displays the next frame each time you turn the < dial > dial right.
Next clip	Press the < ▶ > key to display the first frame of the next clip.
	Playback position
hh:mm:ss	Playback time (hours:minutes:seconds)
Volume	Press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to adjust the speaker volume ().
	Press the < > button to go to the next screen ().
MENU	Press the < MENU > button to return to single-image display.



Controls not on the previous two screens are as follows.

Item	Playback Operations
Edit	Displays the editing screen ().
Slow motion	Adjust the slow motion speed by turning the < > dial. The slow motion speed is indicated in the upper right of the screen.
Erase clip*	Erases the current clip.
Frame Grab	Available when you play 4K movies. Enables you to extract the current frame and save it as a JPEG or HEIF still image ().
MENU	Press the < MENU > button to return to the previous screen.

* Displayed only during digest movie playback.

Caution

- Adjust the volume using television controls when the camera is connected to a television for movie playback (), because volume cannot be adjusted by pressing the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys.
- Movie playback may stop if the card's read speed is too slow or movie files have corrupted frames.

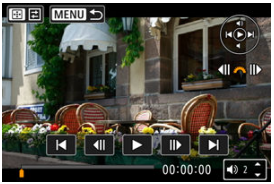
Note

- To skip back or forward to the beginning of the previous or next clip during digest movie playback, press the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys.

Editing a Movie's First and Last Scenes

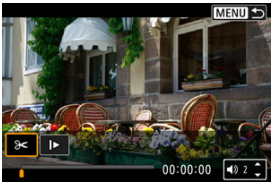
You can edit out the first and last scenes of a movie in approx. 1-sec. increments.

1. **Pause movie playback.**

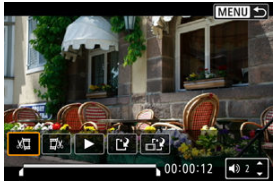


- The movie playback panel will appear.

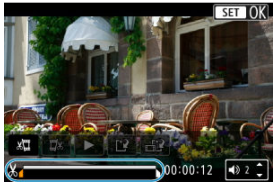
2. **Press the < > button, then select [✂].**



3. Specify the part to be edited out.

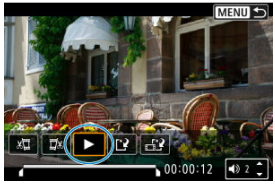


- Select either [✂] (cut beginning) or [✂] (cut end).



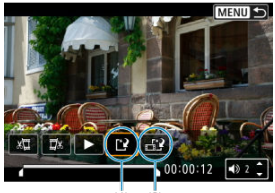
- Press the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to go back or forward one frame. Each turn of the < ◌ > dial goes back or forward one frame.
- After deciding which part to edit out, press the < SET > button. The portion indicated by a line at the bottom of the screen will remain.

4. Check the edited movie.



- Select [▶] to play back the edited movie.
- To change the edited part, go back to step 3.
- To cancel the editing, press the < MENU > button.

5. Save.



- Select [ ] (1).
- The save screen will appear.
- To save it as a new file, select [**New file**], or to save it and overwrite the original movie file, select [**Overwrite**].
  Select [ ] (2) to save a compressed version of the file. 4K movies are converted to Full HD movies before compression.
- On the confirmation screen, select [**OK**] to save the edited movie and return to the movie playback screen.

Caution

- Because editing is performed in approx. 1 sec. increments (at the position indicated by [ ] at the bottom of the screen), the actual position where movies are trimmed may differ from your specified position.
- Movies shot with another camera cannot be edited with this camera.
- You cannot edit a movie when the camera is connected to a computer.
- Compress and save is not available for the following movies.
  - Movies recorded with [: **HDR shooting HDR PQ**] set to [**Enable**]
  - Movies recorded in FHD 29.97P IPB (NTSC), FHD 25.00P IPB (PAL), or FHD 23.98P IPB (NTSC) sizes
- Movies may not be compressed when the remaining battery capacity is low. Use of a fully charged battery or a household power outlet accessory (sold separately) is recommended.
- For extensive movie editing, consider using an optional household power outlet accessory.

Frame Extraction from 4K Movies

From 4K movies, you can select individual frames to save as JPEG or HEIF still images. This is referred to as “frame grabbing.”

1. **Select a 4K movie.**



- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys for selection.
- On the shooting information screen (), 4K movies are labeled with [4K] icons.
- In index display, press the < > button to switch to single-image display.

2. **In single-image display, press the < > button.**

3. **Select [▶].**



- The movie will start playing back.

4. **Press the <SET> button to pause the movie.**

- The movie playback panel will appear.

5. **Select a frame to grab.**



- Use the movie playback panel to select the frame to grab as a still image.
- For movie playback panel instructions, see Movie playback panel.

6. **Press the <Q> button, then select [Frame Grab].**



7. Save.



- Select [**OK**] to save the current frame as a JPEG still image.
  HEIF images are saved if you grab frames from movies recorded with [: **HDR shooting HDR PQ**] set to [**Enable**].
- Check the destination folder and image file number.

8. Select the image to display.

- Select [**View original movie**] or [**View extracted still image**].

Caution

- Frame grabbing is not possible from the following 4K movies.
  - Movies recorded with other cameras
- Frame grabbing is not possible while the camera is connected to a computer.

Digest Movie Editing

Individual chapters (clips) recorded in < > mode can be erased. Be careful when erasing clips, because they cannot be recovered.

1. **Switch to playback.**

- Press the < ▶ > button.

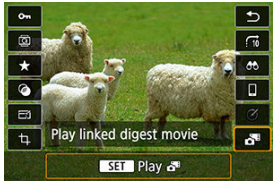
2. **Select a still photo with an attached digest movie.**



- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select a still photo that includes a digest movie.
- In single-image display, digest movies are labeled with [SET] in the upper left.
- In index display, press the < SET > button to switch to single-image display.

3. **In single-image display, press the < SET > button.**

4. **Select [ ].**



- Digest movie playback begins.

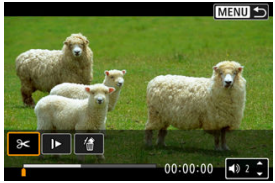
5. **Press the < > button to pause the digest movie.**

6. **Select a clip.**



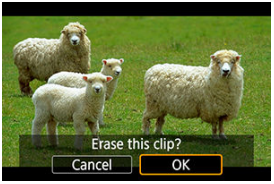
- Use [ ] or [ ] to select a clip.

7. **Erase the clip.**



- Press the < > button, then select [ ].

8. **Select [OK].**



- The clip is erased, and the digest movie is overwritten.

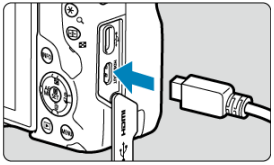
Note

- For other instructions on using the movie playback panel for digest movies, see Digest movie playback panel.

Playback on a TV Set

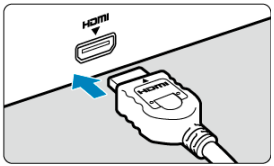
By connecting the camera to a television with a commercially available HDMI cable, you can play back the captured still photos and movies on the television.
If the image does not appear on the TV screen, confirm that [: Video system] is correctly set to [For NTSC] or [For PAL] (depending on the video system of your television).

1. **Connect the HDMI cable to the camera.**



- Insert the HDMI cable in the camera's < **HDMI OUT** > terminal.

2. **Connect the HDMI cable to the television.**

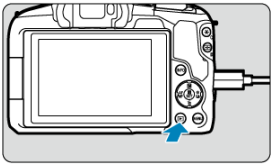


- Connect the HDMI cable to the television's HDMI IN port.

3. **Turn on the television and switch the television's video input to select the connected port.**

4. **Set the camera's power switch to < ON >.**

5. **Press the < ▶ > button.**



- Images are now displayed on the television, with nothing displayed on the camera screen.
- The images will automatically be displayed at the optimum resolution matching the connected television.

Caution

- Adjust movie sound volume with the television. The sound volume cannot be adjusted with the camera.
- Before connecting or disconnecting the cable between the camera and television, turn off the camera and television.
- Depending on the television, part of the image displayed may be cut off.
- Do not connect any other device's output to the camera's < HDMI OUT > terminal. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Certain televisions may not display the images due to incompatibility.
- It may take some time before images are displayed. To avoid delay, set [🔧: **HDMI resolution**] to [**1080p**] (🔗).
- Touch-screen operations are not supported while the camera is connected to a television.

Protecting Images

- Protecting Individual Images
- Specifying the Range of Images to Protect
- Protecting All Images in a Folder or on a Card

You can protect important images from being accidentally erased.

Caution

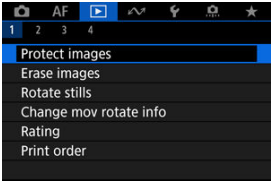
- If you format the card ( ), the protected images will also be erased.

Note

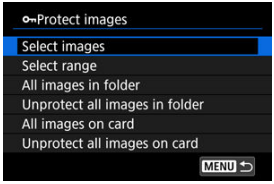
- Once an image is protected, it cannot be erased by the camera's erase function. To erase a protected image, you must first cancel the protection.
- If you erase all the images ( ), only the protected images will remain. This is convenient when you want to erase all unneeded images at once.

Protecting Individual Images

1. **Select [▶: Protect images].**



2. **Select [Select images].**



3. **Select the image to protect.**

- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an image to protect.

4. **Protect the image.**



- Press the < (SET) > button to protect the selected image, after which it will be labeled with a [🔑] icon (1) at the top of the screen.
- To cancel protection and clear the [🔑] icon, press the < (SET) > button again.
- To protect another image, repeat steps 3 and 4.

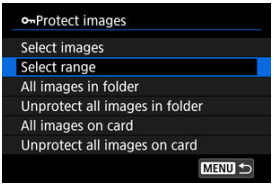
Note

- During playback, you can press the < (SET) > button and protect images from the Quick Control screen.

Specifying the Range of Images to Protect

While looking at the images in the index display, you can specify the first and last images for a range to protect all the specified images at once.

1. **Select [Select range].**



- Select [**Select range**] in [▶: **Protect images**].

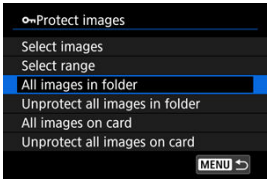
2. **Specify the range of images.**



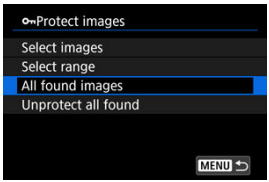
- Select the first image (start point).
- Next, select the last image (end point). The images in the specified range will be protected and the [🔑] icon will appear.
- To select another image to protect, repeat step 2.

Protecting All Images in a Folder or on a Card

You can protect all the images in a folder or on a card at once.



- When you select [**All images in folder**] or [**All images on card**] in [▶: **Protect images**], all the images in the folder or on the card will be protected.
- To cancel protection, select [**Unprotect all images in folder**] or [**Unprotect all images on card**].
- If the search conditions are set with [▶: **Set image search conditions**] (), the display will change to [**All found images**] and [**Unprotect all found**].



- If you select [**All found images**], all the images filtered by the search conditions will be protected.
- If you select [**Unprotect all found**], the protection of all the filtered images will be canceled.

Erasing Images

- Erasing Images Individually
- Selecting ([✓]) Multiple Images to Erase Together
- Specifying the Range of Images to Erase
- Erasing All Images in a Folder or on a Card

You can either select and erase unnecessary images individually or erase them in one batch. Protected images ( ) will not be erased.

Caution

- **Once an image is erased, it cannot be recovered. Make sure you no longer need the image before erasing it. To prevent important images from being erased accidentally, protect them.**

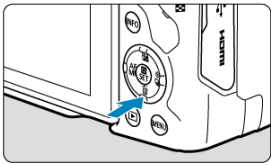
Erasing Images Individually

1. **Press the < ▶ > button.**

2. **Select the image to erase.**

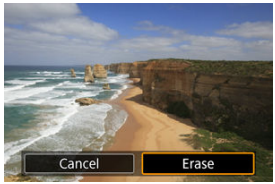
   - Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select the image to erase.

3. **Press the < 🗑 > button.**



4. Erase the images.

JPEG/HEIF/RAW images or movies



- Select [**Erase**].

RAW+JPEG/RAW+HEIF images

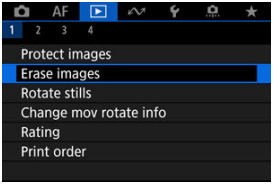


- Select an option.
- Series of images captured in [□], [□H], or [□L] drive mode are erased when you select [**Erase scene including image**] during playback.

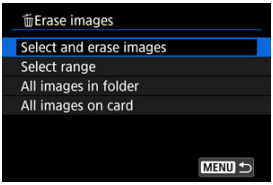
Selecting ([√]) Multiple Images to Erase Together

By adding checkmarks to the images to be erased, you can erase all those images at once.

1. **Select [▶: Erase images].**



2. **Select [Select and erase images].**

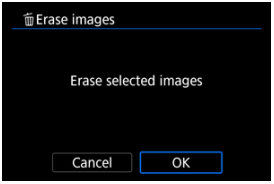


3. **Select an image.**



- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an image to erase, then press the < (SET) > button.
- To select another image to be erased, repeat step 3.
- Press the < MENU > button.

4. **Erase the images.**

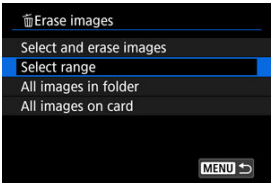


- Select [**OK**].

Specifying the Range of Images to Erase

While looking at the images in the index display, you can specify the first and last images for a range to erase all the specified images at once.

1. **Select [Select range].**



- Select [**Select range**] in [▶: **Erase images**].

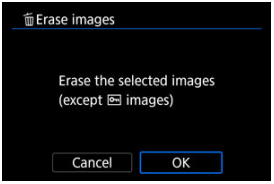
2. **Specify the range of images.**



- Select the first image (start point).
- Next, select the last image (end point). A checkmark [✓] will be appended to all the images within the range between first and last images.
- To select another image to be erased, repeat step 2.

3. **Press the < MENU > button.**

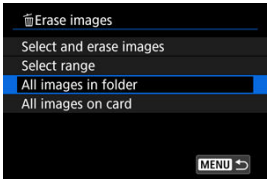
4. **Erase the images.**



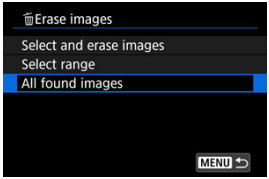
- Select [**OK**].

Erasing All Images in a Folder or on a Card

You can erase all the images in a folder or on a card at once.



- When you select [**All images in folder**] or [**All images on card**] in [▶: **Erase images**], all the images in the folder or on the card will be erased.
- If the search conditions are set with [▶: **Set image search conditions**] (), the display will change to [**All found images**].



- If you select [**All found images**], all the images filtered by the search conditions will be erased.

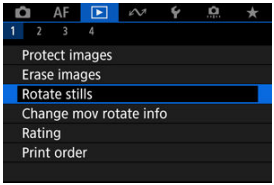
Note

- To erase all the images including protected images, format the card ().

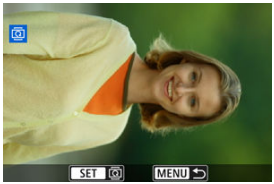
Rotating Still Photos

You can use this feature to rotate the displayed image to the desired orientation.

1. **Select [▶: Rotate stills].**

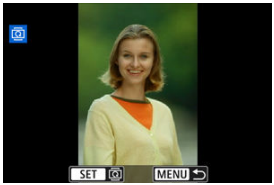


2. **Select an image to rotate.**



- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an image.

3. **Rotate the image.**



- Each time you press the < (SET) > button, the image is rotated clockwise as follows: 90° → 270° → 0°.
- To rotate another image, repeat steps 2 and 3.

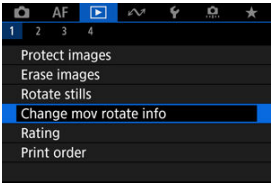
Note

- If you set [: **Auto rotate**] to [**On**] ( ) before taking pictures, you need not rotate the image with this function.
- If the rotated image is not displayed in the rotated orientation during image playback, set [: **Auto rotate**] to [**On**].
- Movies cannot be rotated.

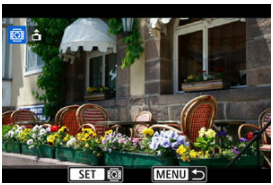
Changing Movie Orientation Information

You can manually edit movie playback orientation information (which determines which side is up).

1. **Select [▶]: Change mov rotate info].**

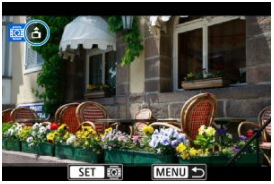


2. **Select a movie.**



- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select a movie with orientation information to change.

3. **Change the orientation information.**



- As you watch the camera and ▲ icon in the upper left of the screen, press the <SET> button to specify which side is up. Each press of the <SET> button edits the movie rotation information as follows: [ ] → [ ] → [ ].

Caution

- Movies are played horizontally on the camera and via HDMI video output, regardless of the [: **Add rotate info**] setting ( ).
- Movie orientation information of movies recorded with other cameras cannot be edited with this camera.

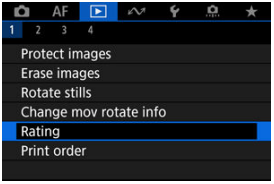
Rating Images

- Rating Individual Images
- Rating by Specifying the Range
- Rating All Images in a Folder or on a Card

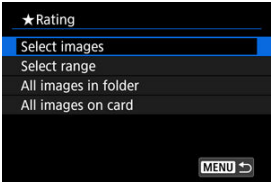
You can rate images on a scale of 1–5 ([★]/[★1]/[★2]/[★3]/[★4]/[★5]). This function is called rating.
* Rating images can help you organize them.

Rating Individual Images

1. **Select [▶: Rating].**



2. **Select [Select images].**



3. **Select the image to rate.**



- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select the image to rate.

4. **Rate the image.**

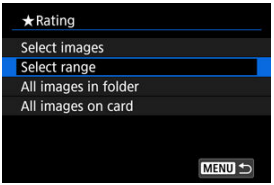


- Press the < (SET) > button so that the current rating is outlined in blue, as shown.
- Use the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select a rating mark, then press the < (SET) > button.
- When you append a rating mark to the image, the number beside the set rating will increase by one.
- To rate another image, repeat steps 3 and 4.

Rating by Specifying the Range

While looking at the images in the index display, you can specify the first and last images for a range to rate all the specified images at once.

1. **Select [Select range].**



- Select [**Select range**] in [▶: **Rating**].

2. **Specify the range of images.**



- Select the first image (start point).
- Next, select the last image (end point). A checkmark [✓] will be appended to all the images within the range between first and last images.
- To select other images, repeat step 2.

3. **Press the <MENU> button.**

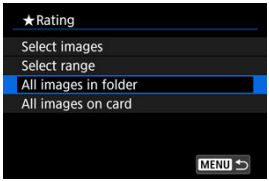
4. **Rate the image.**



- Turn the < > dial to select a rating mark, then select [**OK**].
  All the images in the specified range will be rated (same rating) at once.

Rating All Images in a Folder or on a Card

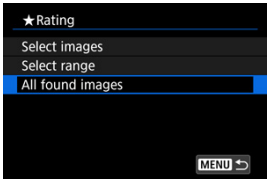
You can rate all the images in a folder or on a card at once.



- Under [▶]: **Rating**], when you select [**All images in folder**] or [**All images on card**], all the images in the folder or on the card will be rated.



- Turn the < > dial to select a rating, then select [**OK**].
- When you are not rating images or canceling the rating, select [OFF].
- If the search conditions are set with [▶]: **Set image search conditions**] (), the display will change to [**All found images**].



- If you select [**All found images**], all the images filtered by the search conditions will be rated as specified.

Note

- Values next to ratings are displayed as [**###**] if more than 1,000 images have that rating.
- With [▶]: **Set image search conditions**] and [▶]: **Image jump w/**], you can display only the images given a specific rating.

Print Ordering (DPOF)

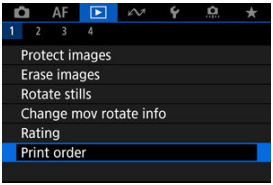
Print Options

Selecting Images for Printing

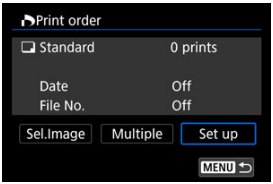
DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) enables you to print images recorded on the card according to your printing instructions such as the image selection, quantity to print, etc. You can print multiple images in one batch or create a print order for a photofinisher.
You can set the print settings such as print type, date imprinting, file number imprinting, etc. The print settings will be applied to all the images specified for printing. (They cannot be set individually for each image.)

Print Options

1. **Select [▶: Print order].**



2. **Select [Set up].**

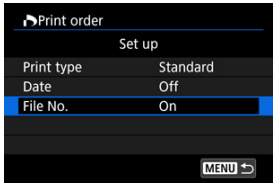


3. Set the options as desired.

- Set [**Print type**], [**Date**], and [**File No.**] options.

Print type		**Standard**	Prints one image on one sheet.
		Index	Multiple thumbnail images are printed on one sheet.
		Both	Prints both the standard and index prints.
Date	**On**	[**On**] imprints the recorded date of the captured image.	
	Off		
File No.	**On**	[**On**] imprints the file number.	
	Off		

4. Exit the setting.



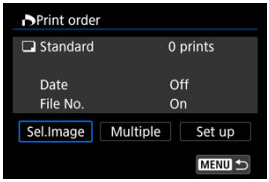
- Press the < MENU > button.
- Next, select [**Sel.Image**] or [**Multiple**] to specify the images to be printed.

Caution

- If you print an image with a large image size using the [**Index**] or [**Both**] setting ( ), the index print may not be printed with certain printers. In this case, resize the image ( ), then print the index print.
- Even if [**Date**] and [**File No.**] are set to [**On**], the date or file number may not be imprinted, depending on the print type setting and printer.
- With [**Index**] prints, the [**Date**] and [**File No.**] cannot both be set to [**On**] at the same time.
- When printing with DPOF, use the card for which print order specifications are set. You cannot print in the specified print order if you extract just the images from the card for printing.
- Certain DPOF-compliant printers and photofinishers may not be able to print the images as you specified. When using a printer, refer to the printer's instruction manual. When requesting service from a photofinisher, ask in advance.
- Do not use this camera to configure print settings for images with DPOF settings set up on another camera. All the print orders may be overwritten inadvertently. Also, the print order may not be possible, depending on the image type.

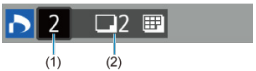
Selecting Images for Printing

Selecting images



Select and specify the images individually.
Press the < MENU > button to save the print order to the card.

- **Standard/Both**



(1) Quantity
(2) Total images selected

Press the < SET > button to set the print quantity for the current image to 1. By pressing the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys, you can set a print quantity of up to 99 copies.

- **Index**

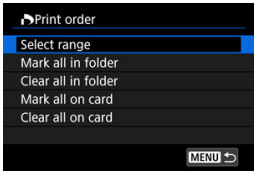


(3) Checkmark
(4) Index icon

Images that you add a checkmark [✓] to by pressing the < SET > button are included in index printing.

Selecting multiple images

Select range



Select [**Select range**] in [**Multiple**]. Selecting the first and last images of the range marks all the images in the range with a checkmark [✓], and one copy of each image will be specified for printing.

All images in a folder

Select [**Mark all in folder**] and select the folder. A print order for one copy of all the images in the folder will be specified.
If you select [**Clear all in folder**] and select the folder, the print order for all the images in the folder will be canceled.

All images on a card

If you select [**Mark all on card**], one copy of all the images on the card will be specified for printing.
If you select [**Clear all on card**], the print order will be cleared for all the images on the card.

If the search conditions are set with [▶: **Set image search conditions**] (🔍) and you select [**Multiple**], the display will change to [**Mark all found images**] and [**Clear all found images**].

All found images

If you select [**Mark all found images**], one copy of all the images filtered by the search conditions will be specified for printing.
If you select [**Clear all found images**], all the print order of the filtered images will be cleared.

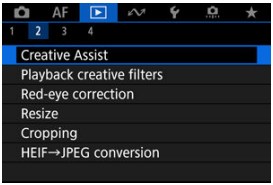
Caution

- RAW/HEIF images and movies cannot be specified for printing. Note that RAW/HEIF images and movies will not be specified for printing even if you specify all images with [**Multiple**].

Creative Assist

You can process RAW images by applying your preferred effects and saving as JPEGs.

1. **Select [▶: Creative Assist].**



2. **Select an image.**



- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an image to process, then press the < (SET) > button.

3. Select an effect.



- Use the < > dial to select the effect.



- By selecting [**Preset**] and pressing the < > button, you can choose [**VIVID**], [**SOFT**], or other preset effects. [**AUTO1**], [**AUTO2**], and [**AUTO3**] are effects recommended by the camera based on image conditions.

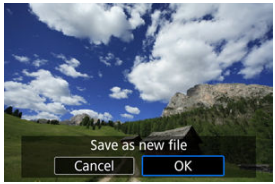


- You can select effects such as [**Brightness**] or [**Contrast**] by pressing the < > button and then using the < > dial.
- Press the < > button when adjustment is finished.



- To reset the settings, press the < ✳ > button and select [**OK**] after a confirmation message is displayed.
- To confirm the effect, press the < ⊡ > button.

4. **Select [OK] to save the image.**

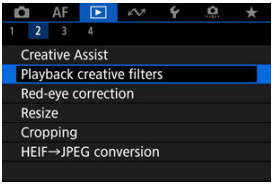


Playback Creative Filters

Creative Filter Characteristics

You can apply the following filter processing to an image and save it as a separate image: Grainy B/W, Soft focus, Fish-eye effect, Art bold effect, Water painting effect, Toy camera effect, and Miniature effect.

1. **Select [▶: Playback creative filters].**



2. **Select an image.**



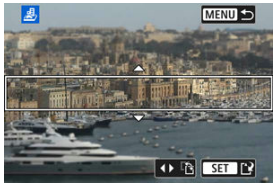
- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an image, then press the < (SET) > button.
- Images can be selected by touch from index display ( ).

3. Select a filter effect ( ).



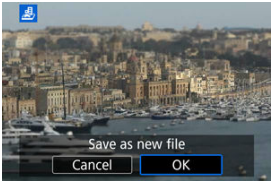
- Use the < > dial to select an effect, then press the < > button.

4. Adjust the filter effect.



- Adjust the filter effect, then press the < > button.
- For [**Miniature effect**], you can move the area that looks sharp (the white frame).
  - By tapping [ ], you can switch between vertical and horizontal scene frame orientation. Scene frame orientation can also be switched from horizontal orientation by pressing the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys and from vertical orientation with the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys.
  - To move the scene frame, use the < > dial or < > keys.
  - To confirm the position of the scene frame, press the < > button.

5. **Save.**



- Select [**OK**].
- Check the destination folder and image file number, then select [**OK**].
- To apply filter processing to other images, repeat steps 2 to 5.

Note

- RAW images cannot be selected. Note that for images captured in RAW+JPEG shooting, filter processing is applied to the JPEG image before saving the results.
- Images processed using the fish-eye effect filter will not have Dust Delete Data ( ) appended.
- Playback creative filters cannot be applied to still photos from testing time-lapse movies.

Creative Filter Characteristics

Grainy B/W

Makes the image grainy and black and white. By adjusting the contrast, you can change the black-and-white effect.

Soft focus

Gives the image a soft look. By adjusting the blur, you can change the degree of softness.

Fish-eye effect

Gives the effect of a fish-eye lens. The image will have barrel distortion.
Depending on the level of this filter effect, the area trimmed along the periphery of the image changes. Also, because this filter effect magnifies the center of the image, the apparent resolution at the center may degrade depending on the number of recorded pixels, so set the filter effect in step 4 while checking the resulting image.

Art bold effect

Makes the photo look like an oil painting and the subject look more three-dimensional. By adjusting the effect, you can change the contrast and saturation. Note that subjects such as the sky or white walls may not be rendered with a smooth gradation and may look uneven or noisy.

Water painting effect

Makes the photo look like a watercolor painting with soft colors. By adjusting the effect, you can change the color density. Note that night scenes or dark scenes may not be rendered with a smooth gradation and may look uneven or noisy.

Toy camera effect

Shifts colors to those typical of toy cameras and darkens the four corners of the image. Color tone options can be used to change the color cast.

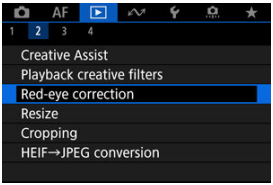
Miniature effect

Creates a diorama effect. To move the area that looks sharp (the scene frame), see step 4 ( ).

Red-Eye Correction

Automatically corrects relevant portions of images affected by red-eye. The image can be saved as a separate file.

1. **Select [▶: Red-eye correction].**

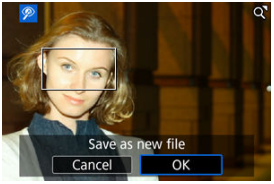


2. **Select an image.**



- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an image to correct, then press the < (SET) > button.
- White frames are displayed around corrected image areas.

3. **Select [OK].**



- The image is saved as a separate file.

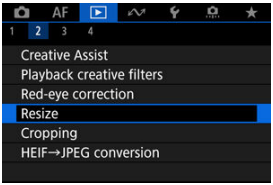
Caution

- Some images may not be corrected accurately.

Resizing JPEG/HEIF Images

You can resize a JPEG or HEIF image to reduce the pixel count and save it as a new image. Resizing is available for L, M, or S1 JPEGs or HEIFs (in sizes except S2), including those captured in RAW+JPEG and RAW+HEIF shooting. Note that resizing is not available for S2 images, RAW images, or frame-grab images from 4K movies.

1. **Select [▶: Resize].**

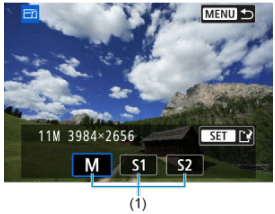


2. **Browse your images.**



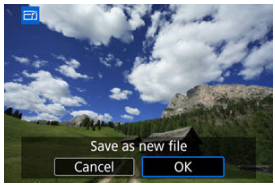
- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an image to resize.
- Press the < (SET) > button to display the image size.

3. **Select the desired image size.**



- Select the desired image size (1).

4. **Save.**

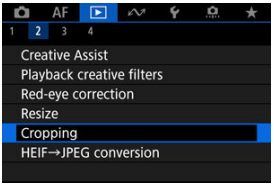


- Select [**OK**] to save the resized image.
- Check the destination folder and image file number, then select [**OK**].
- To resize another image, repeat steps 2 to 4.

Cropping JPEG/HEIF Images

You can crop a captured JPEG or HEIF image and save it separately. RAW images and frame-grab images from 4K movies cannot be cropped.

1. **Select [▶: Cropping].**

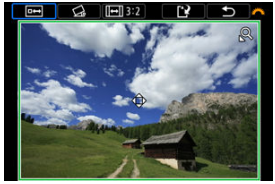


2. **Select an image.**



- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an image to crop.
- Press the < (SET) > button to display the cropping frame.

3. Set the cropping frame.



- The image area within the cropping frame will be cropped.

- **Resizing the cropping frame size**

  Press the < Q > button to resize the cropping frame. The smaller the cropping frame, the more magnified the cropped image will look.

- **Correcting tilt**

  You can correct image tilt by ±10°. Turn the < > dial to select [ ], then press the < > button. While checking tilt relative to the grid, turn the < > dial (in 0.1° increments) or tap the left or right arrow (in 0.5° increments) in the upper left of the screen to correct tilt. After correction is finished, press the < > button.

- **Changing the cropping frame aspect ratio and orientation**

  Turn the < > dial and select [[↔]]. Each press of the < > button changes the cropping frame aspect ratio.

- **Moving the cropping frame**

  Press the < ▲ >< ▼ >< ◀ >< ▶ > keys to move the frame vertically or horizontally.

4. Check a preview of the cropped image.



- Turn the < > dial to select [], then press the < > button. The image area to crop is displayed.

5. Save.



- Turn the < > dial to select [], then press the < > button.
- Select [**OK**] to save the cropped image.
- Check the destination folder and image file number, then select [**OK**].
- To crop another image, repeat steps 2 to 5.

Caution

- The position and size of the cropping frame may change depending on the angle set for tilt correction.
- Once a cropped image is saved, it cannot be cropped again or resized.
- AF point display information ( ) and Dust Delete Data ( ) will not be appended to the cropped images.

Converting HEIF to JPEG

You can convert HEIF images captured in HDR shooting and save them as JPEG images.

Converting Individual Images

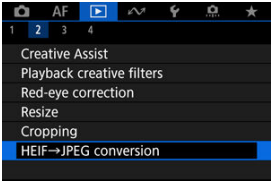
Specifying the Range of Images to Convert

Note

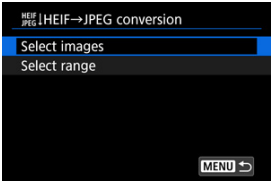
- HEIF images that have been converted to JPEGs are labeled [JPEG].

Converting Individual Images

1. **Select [▶: HEIF→JPEG conversion].**



2. **Select [Select images].**

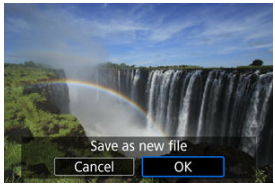


3. Select an image.



- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an HEIF image, then press the < (SET) > button.
- To select other images, repeat step 3.
- Press the < MENU > button to convert to JPEG.

4. Save.



- Select [**OK**] to save the JPEG image.
- If there are other images for conversion, select [**Yes**].

5. **Select the images to use for display.**



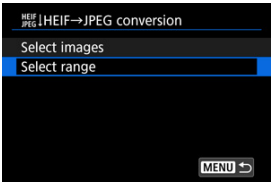
- Select [**Original image**] to use the original HEIF images for display.
- Select [**Processed img.**] to use the converted JPEG images for display.

Note

- Some scenes may look different after conversion if the original and converted images are compared.
- Conversion is not available for cropped images, or for frame-grab images from 4K movies.

Specifying the Range of Images to Convert

1. **Select [Select range].**



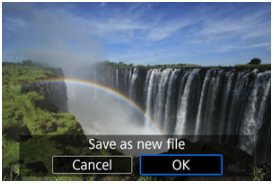
2. **Specify the range of images.**



- Select the first image (start point).
- Next, select the last image (end point). A checkmark [✓] will be appended to all the images within the range between first and last images.
- To select other images, repeat step 2.

3. **Press the <MENU> button.**

4. **Save.**



- Select [**OK**] to save the JPEG image.
- If there are other images for conversion, select [**Yes**].

5. **Select the images to use for display.**



- Select [**Original image**] to use the original HEIF images for display.
- Select [**Processed img.**] to use the converted JPEG images for display.

Note

- Some scenes may look different after conversion if the original and converted images are compared.
- Conversion is not available for cropped images, or for frame-grab images from 4K movies.

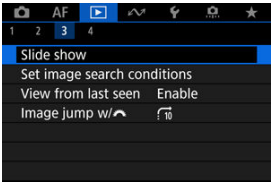
Slide Show

You can play back the images on the card as an automatic slide show.

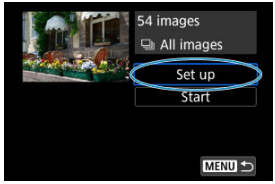
1. **Specify the images to be played back.**

   - To play back all the images on the card, go to step 2.
   - If you want to specify the images to be played back in the slide show, filter the images with [▶]: **Set image search conditions**] (🔗).

2. **Select [▶]: Slide show].**



3. **Set the playback as desired.**

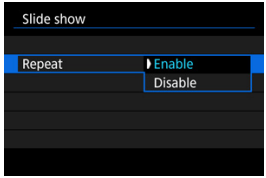


- Select [**Set up**].
- Set the [**Display time**], [**Repeat**] (repeated playback), and [**Transition effect**] (effect when changing images) settings for the still photos.
- After completing the settings, press the < MENU > button.

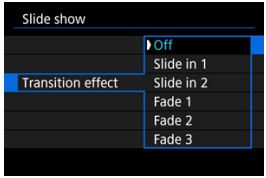
Display time



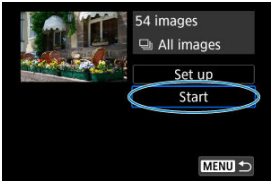
Repeat



Transition effect



4. Start the slide show.



- Select [**Start**].
- After [**Loading image...**] is displayed, the slide show will start.

5. Exit the slide show.

- To exit the slide show and return to the setting screen, press the < MENU > button.

Note

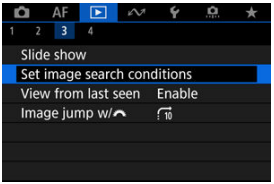
- To pause the slide show, press the < (SET) > button. During pause, [❚❚] will be displayed in the upper left of the screen. Press the < (SET) > button again to resume the slide show.
- During the automatic playback of still photos, you can press the < INFO > button to switch the display format ( ).
- Volume during movie playback can be adjusted by pressing the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys.
- During auto playback or when playback is paused, you can press the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to view other images.
- During auto playback, auto power off will not take effect.
- The display time may differ depending on the image.

Setting Image Search Conditions

Clearing the Search Conditions

You can filter image display according to your search conditions. After setting the image search conditions, you can play back and display only the found images. You can also protect, rate, play a slide show, erase, and apply other operations to filtered images.

1. **Select [▶: Set image search conditions].**



2. Set the search conditions.

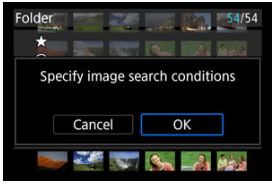


(1)

- Use the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select an item.
- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to set the option.
- A checkmark [✓] (1) is appended to the left of the option. (Specified as the search condition.)
- If you select the option and press the < INFO > button, the checkmark [✓] will be removed (which cancels the search condition).

Option	Description
★ Rating	Displays images with the selected (rating) condition.
Date	Displays images taken on the selected shooting date.
Folder	Displays images in the selected folder.
Protect	Displays images with the selected (protect) condition.
Type of file (1)	Displays images of the selected file type.
Type of file (2)	

3. Apply the search conditions.



- Press the < (SET) > button and read the message displayed.
- Select [**OK**].
  The search condition is applied.

4. Display the found images.



(2)

- Press the < ▶ > button.
  Only the images that match the set conditions (filtered) will be played back.
  When the images are filtered for display, the screen will have an outer yellow frame (2).

Caution

- If no images match the search conditions, pressing the < (SET) > button in step 3 has no effect.

Note

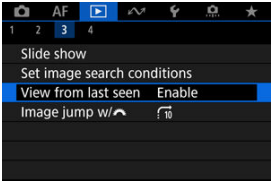
- Search conditions may be cleared after operations involving camera power or card changes and editing, adding, or erasing images.
- Auto power off time may be extended while the [▶: **Set image search conditions**] screen is displayed.

Clearing the Search Conditions

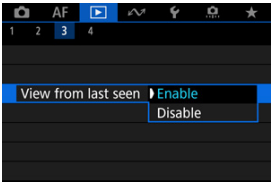
Access the screen in step 2, then press the < [▪⋮▪] > button to clear all the search conditions.

Resuming from Previous Playback

1. **Select [▶: View from last seen].**



2. **Select an option.**

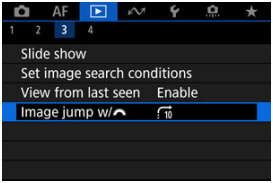


- [**Enable**]: Playback resumes from the last image displayed (unless you have just finished shooting).
- [**Disable**]: Playback resumes from your most recent shot whenever the camera is restarted.

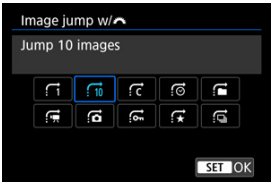
Browsing Images with the Dial

In single-image display, you can turn the < > dial to jump through the images forward or backward according to the jump method set.

1. **Select [▶: Image jump w/].**



2. **Select the jump method.**



Note

- With [**Jump images by the specified number**], you can turn the < > dial to select the number of images to jump by.
- With [**Display by image rating**], turn the < > dial to select the rating ( ). Selecting ★ will show all rated images as you browse.

3. Browse by jumping.



(1) Jump method
(2) Playback position

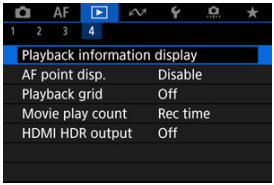
- Press the < ▶ > button.
- In single-image display, turn the < dial. > dial.
  You can browse by the jump method set.

Customizing Playback Information Display

Histogram

You can specify screens and accompanying information displayed during image playback.

1. **Select [▶: Playback information display].**

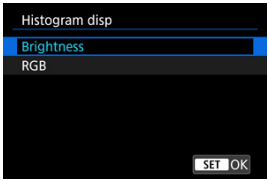


2. **Add a checkmark [✓] next to the number of screens to display.**



- Use the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select a number.
- Press the < (Q) > button to clear a checkmark [✓]. Press it again to add a checkmark [✓].
- Repeat these steps to add a checkmark [✓] to the number of each screen to display, then select [**OK**].
- Your selected information can be accessed by pressing the < INFO > button during playback.

Histogram

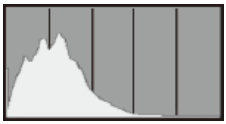


The histograms show signal levels across the tonal range. Brightness display (for checking the general exposure level and overall gradation) and RGB display (for checking saturation and gradation of red, green, and blue) are available. You can switch the histogram displayed by pressing the < INFO > button when [**INFO**] is displayed in the lower left of the [▶: **Playback information display**] screen.

[Brightness] display

This histogram is a graph showing the distribution of the image's brightness level, with the horizontal axis indicating the brightness level (darker on the left and brighter on the right) and the vertical axis indicating the pixel count at each brightness level. The more pixels there are toward the left, the darker the image, and the more pixels there are toward the right, the brighter the image. If there are too many pixels on the left, detail in shadows will be lost, and if there are too many pixels on the right, detail in highlights will be lost. The gradation in-between will be reproduced. By checking the image and its brightness histogram, you can see the exposure level inclination and the overall gradation.

Sample histograms



Dark image



Normal brightness



Bright image

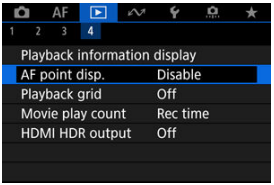
[RGB] display

This histogram is a graph showing the distribution of each primary color's brightness level in the image (RGB or red, green, and blue), with the horizontal axis indicating the color's brightness level (darker on the left and brighter on the right) and the vertical axis indicating the pixel count at each color brightness level. The more pixels there are toward the left, the darker and less prominent the color, and the more pixels there are toward the right, the brighter and denser the color. If there are too many pixels on the left, the corresponding color information will be lacking, and if there are too many pixels on the right, the color will be too saturated, without gradation. By checking the image's RGB histogram, you can see the color's saturation and gradation conditions, as well as the white balance bias.

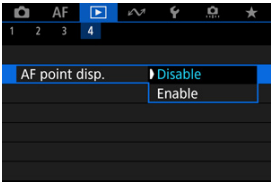
AF Point Display

You can display the AF points that were used to focus, which will be outlined in red on the playback screen.

1. **Select [▶]: AF point disp.].**



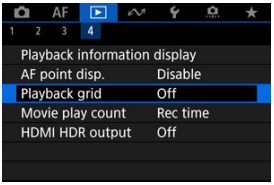
2. **Select [Enable].**



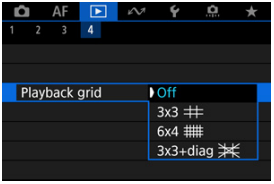
Playback Grid

You can display a grid over still photos shown in single-image display on the playback screen. This function is convenient for checking the image's vertical or horizontal tilt as well as composition.

1. **Select [▶: Playback grid].**



2. **Select an option.**



Note

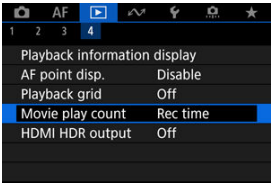
- When panoramic images are displayed, a single vertical and horizontal line are shown if [**Playback grid**] is set to an option other than [**Off**].



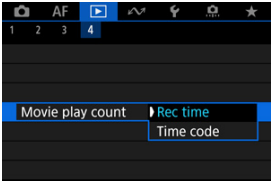
Movie Play Count

You can select how time is displayed on the movie playback screen.

1. **Select [▶: Movie play count].**



2. **Select an option.**



- **Rec time**

  Displays the recording or playback time during movie playback.



- **Time code**

  Displays the time code during movie playback.



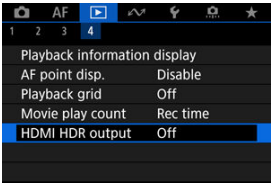
Note

- Time codes are always recorded to movie files (except when High Frame Rate movies are set to [**Free run**]), regardless of the [**Movie rec count**] setting.
- The [**Movie play count**] setting in [📷: **Time code**] is linked to the [▶: **Movie play count**], so that these settings always match.
- The “frame” count is not displayed during movie recording or playback.

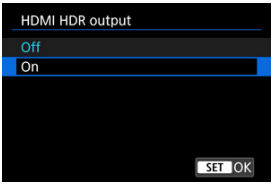
HDMI HDR Output

You can view RAW or HEIF images in HDR by connecting the camera to an HDR TV.

1. **Select [▶: HDMI HDR output].**



2. **Select [On].**



Note

- Make sure the HDR TV is set up for HDR input. For details on how to switch inputs on the TV, refer to the TV manual.
- Depending on the TV used, images may not look as expected.
- On HDR TVs, some information may not be displayed.

Communication Functions

This chapter describes how to send images, shoot remotely, and perform other operations using communication functions.

Caution

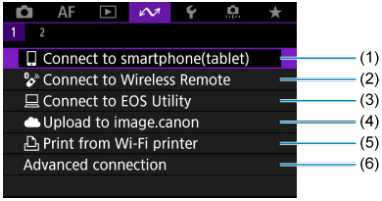
Important

- Note that Canon cannot be held liable for any loss or damage caused by erroneous wireless communication settings when using the camera. In addition, Canon cannot be held liable for any other loss or damage caused by use of the camera.
  When using wireless communication functions, establish appropriate security at your own risk and discretion. Canon cannot be held liable for any loss or damage caused by unauthorized access or other security breaches.

- Tab Menus: Communication Functions
- Connecting to a Smartphone or Tablet
- Connecting to a Wireless Remote Control
- Connecting to EOS Utility
- Uploading Images to image.canon
- Connecting to a Printer via Wi-Fi
- Advanced Connections
- Basic Communication Settings
- Reconnecting via Wi-Fi/Bluetooth
- Editing/Deleting Connection Settings
- Airplane Mode
- Wi-Fi Settings
- Bluetooth Settings
- Camera Name
- GPS Settings
- Error Details
- Resetting Communication Settings
- Virtual Keyboard Operations
- Responding to Error Messages
- Wireless Communication Function Precautions
- Security
- Checking Network Settings
- Wireless Communication Status

Tab Menus: Communication Functions

Communication functions 1



(1) Connect to smartphone(tablet)

(2) Connect to Wireless Remote

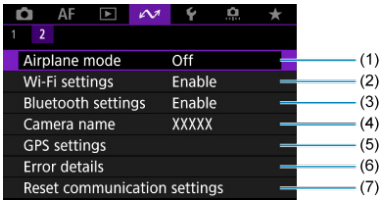
(3) Connect to EOS Utility

(4) Upload to image.canon

(5) Print from Wi-Fi printer

(6) Advanced connection

Communication functions 2



(1) Airplane mode

(2) Wi-Fi settings

(3) Bluetooth settings

(4) Camera name

(5) GPS settings

(6) Error details

(7) Reset communication settings

Caution

- Some menu items cannot be configured while the camera is connected to computers or other devices via an interface cable.
- The Wi-Fi connection will be terminated if you set the camera power to < OFF > or open the card/battery compartment cover.
- With a Wi-Fi connection established, the camera's auto power off does not function.

Connecting to a Smartphone or Tablet

- Preparing the Smartphone
- Connecting to a Smartphone via Wi-Fi
- Main Functions of Camera Connect
- Maintaining a Wi-Fi Connection When the Camera Is Off
- Canceling the Pairing
- Automatic Image Transfer to a Smartphone as You Shoot
- Sending Images to a Smartphone from the Camera

You can do the following after pairing the camera with a smartphone.

- Establish a Wi-Fi connection using only the smartphone ( ).
- Establish a Wi-Fi connection with the camera even when it is off ( ).
- Geotag images with GPS information acquired by the smartphone ( ).
- Control the camera remotely from a smartphone ( ).

You can also do the following after connecting the camera to a smartphone via Wi-Fi.

- Browse and save images on the camera from a smartphone ( ).
- Control the camera remotely from a smartphone ( ).
- Send images to a smartphone from the camera ( ).

Note

- You can also establish an advanced Wi-Fi connection to smartphones without using Bluetooth ( ).

Preparing the Smartphone

Turning on Bluetooth and Wi-Fi on a Smartphone

Turn on Bluetooth and Wi-Fi from the smartphone settings screen. Note that pairing with the camera is not possible from the smartphone's Bluetooth settings screen.

Installing Camera Connect on a Smartphone

The dedicated app Camera Connect (free of charge) must be installed on the smartphone on which Android or iOS is installed.

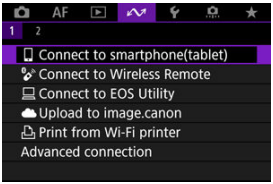
- Use the latest version of the smartphone OS.
- Camera Connect can be installed from Google Play or App Store. Google Play or App Store can also be accessed using the QR codes that appear when the camera is paired or connected via Wi-Fi to a smartphone.

Note

- For the operating system versions supported by Camera Connect, refer to the download site of Camera Connect.
- Sample screens and other details in this guide may not match the actual user interface elements after camera firmware updates or updates to Camera Connect, Android, or iOS.

Connecting to a Smartphone via Wi-Fi

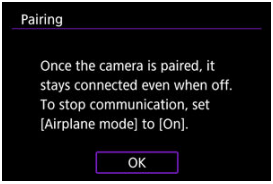
1. **Select [: Connect to smartphone(tablet)].**



2. **Select [Add a device to connect to].**



3. **Press the <> button.**



4. **Start pairing.**



- Press the < (SET) > button to start pairing.
- If Camera Connect is not installed, use the smartphone to scan the QR code on the screen, go to Google Play or App Store to install Camera Connect, then press the < (SET) > button to start pairing.

5. **Start Camera Connect.**
   - Following the instructions in the app, select the camera for pairing.

6. **Establish a Bluetooth connection.**



- When a message appears on the smartphone, use the smartphone as indicated.

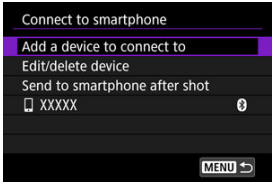


- Press the < (SET) > button.

7. Complete the pairing process.



- Press the < (SET) > button to finish pairing.



- The name of the connected device is displayed.

Caution

- The camera cannot be connected to two or more devices at the same time via Bluetooth. To switch to a different smartphone for the Bluetooth connection, see Reconnecting via Wi-Fi/Bluetooth.
- Bluetooth connection consumes battery power even after the camera's auto power off is activated. Therefore, the battery level may be low when you use the camera.

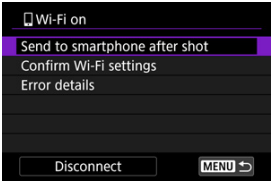
Troubleshooting pairing

- Keeping pairing records for previously paired cameras on your smartphone will prevent it from pairing with this camera. Before you try pairing again, remove pairing records for previously paired cameras from your smartphone's Bluetooth settings screen.

8. Tap a Camera Connect function.

- For details on Camera Connect functions, see Main Functions of Camera Connect.
- Tap a Camera Connect function to initiate a Wi-Fi connection.
  In iOS, tap [**Connect**] when a message is displayed to confirm camera connection.

9. **Confirm that the devices are connected via Wi-Fi.**



- The [**Wi-Fi on**] screen is displayed on the camera. ( )
- If a Wi-Fi connection cannot be established, set [**Security**] on the camera to [**WPA2**]. ( )

The Wi-Fi connection to a smartphone is now complete.

- To end the Wi-Fi connection, select [**Disconnect**] on the [**Wi-Fi on**] screen.
- Terminating the Wi-Fi connection will switch the camera to the Bluetooth connection.
- To reconnect, start Camera Connect and tap the function you will use.

[Wi-Fi on] screen



- **Send to smartphone after shot**
  Images can be transferred to a smartphone automatically ( ).

- **Confirm Wi-Fi settings**
  You can check setting details for Wi-Fi connections.

- **Error details**
  After any Wi-Fi connection errors, you can check the error details ( ).

- **Disconnect**
  Ends the Wi-Fi connection.

Main Functions of Camera Connect

Images on camera

- Images can be browsed, deleted, or rated.
- Images can be saved on a smartphone.
- Effects can be applied to RAW images that you can subsequently save to a smartphone as JPEGs ( ).

Remote live view shooting

- Enables remote shooting as you view a live image on the smartphone.

Auto transfer

- Enables camera and app setting adjustment for automatic transfer of your shots ( ).

Bluetooth remote controller

- Enables remote control of the camera from a smartphone paired via Bluetooth. (Not available when connected via Wi-Fi.)
- Auto power off is disabled while you are using the Bluetooth remote controller feature.

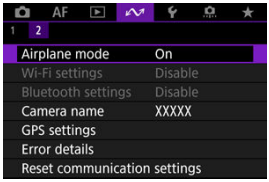
Camera settings

- Camera settings can be changed.

You can check other functions from the main Camera Connect screen.

Maintaining a Wi-Fi Connection When the Camera Is Off

Even when the camera power switch is set to <OFF>, as long as it is paired to a smartphone via Bluetooth, you can use the smartphone to browse images on the camera or perform other operations.
If you prefer not to stay connected to the camera via Wi-Fi/Bluetooth when it is off, either set [: **Airplane mode**] to [**On**] or set [: **Bluetooth settings**] to [**Disable**].



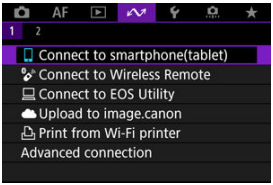
Caution

- This function can no longer be used if the wireless settings are reset or the smartphone connection information is erased.

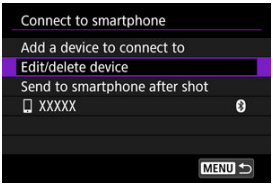
Canceling the Pairing

Cancel pairing with a smartphone as follows.

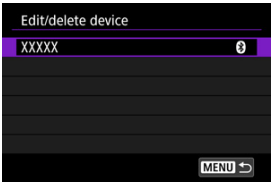
1. **Select [: Connect to smartphone(tablet)].**



2. **Select [Edit/delete device].**

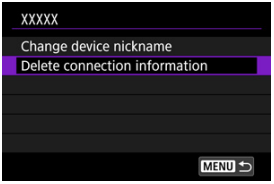


3. **Select the smartphone to cancel pairing with.**

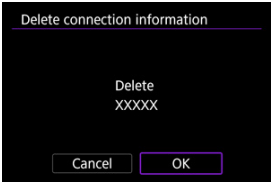


- Smartphones currently paired with the camera are labeled [].

4. **Select [Delete connection information].**



5. **Select [OK].**



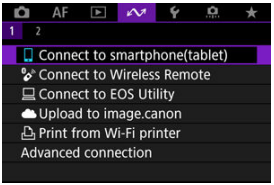
6. **Clear the camera information on the smartphone.**

- In the smartphone's Bluetooth setting menu, clear the camera information registered on the smartphone.

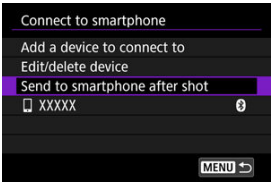
Automatic Image Transfer to a Smartphone as You Shoot

Your shots can be automatically sent to a smartphone. Before following these steps, make sure the camera and smartphone are connected via Wi-Fi.

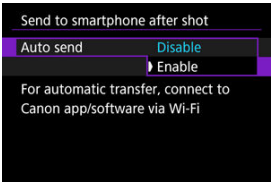
1. **Select [: Connect to smartphone(tablet)].**



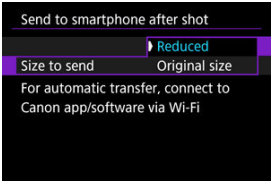
2. **Select [Send to smartphone after shot].**



3. **Set [Auto send] to [Enable].**



4. **Set [Size to send].**



5. **Take the picture.**

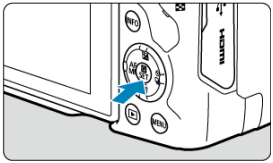
Sending Images to a Smartphone from the Camera

You can use the camera to send images to a smartphone connected via Wi-Fi.

1. **Switch to playback.**



2. **Press the < > button.**



3. **Select [Send images to smartphone].**



- If you perform this step while connected via Bluetooth, a message is displayed requesting you to establish a Wi-Fi connection. After pressing the < > button, tap a Camera Connect function to connect via Wi-Fi, then start again from step 1.

4. **Select sending options and send the images.**

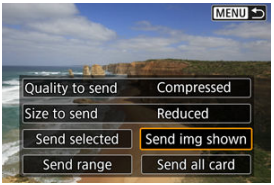
(1) Sending images individually

1. **Select an image to send.**



- Use the < > dial or < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an image to send, then press the < (SET) > button.
- To select the image from index display, press the < ■ > button.

2. **Select [Send img shown].**



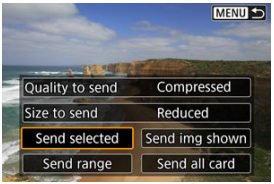
- In [**Size to send**], you can select the image sending size.
- When sending movies, you can select the image quality of movies to send in [**Quality to send**].

(2) Sending multiple selected images

1. **Press the <(( ))> button.**



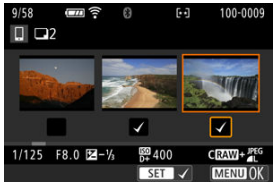
2. **Select [Send selected].**



3. Select images to send.

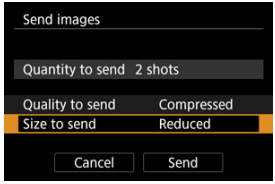


- Use the < > dial or < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an image to send, then press the < > button.

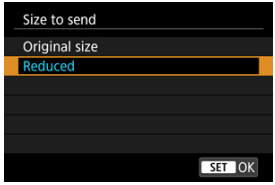


- You can press the < > button to select the images from 3-image display. To return to the single-image display, press the < > button.
- After selecting the images to send, press the < MENU > button. Select [**OK**] when a message is displayed.

4. **Select [Size to send].**

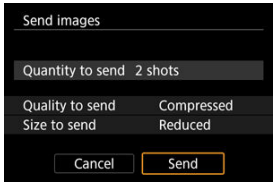


- On the displayed screen, select an image size.



- When sending movies, select the image quality in [**Quality to send**].

5. **Select [Send].**

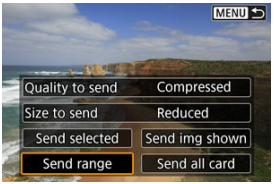


(3) Sending a specified range of images

1. **Press the <(Q)> button.**



2. **Select [Send range].**



3. **Specify the range of images.**

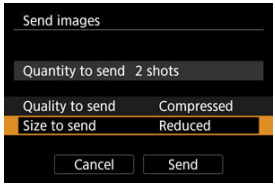


- Select the first image (start point).
- Next, select the last image (end point). A checkmark [✓] will be appended to all the images within the range between first and last images.
- To clear the selection, repeat step 3.
- To change the number of images shown in index display, press the <▪▪▪> or <✱> button.

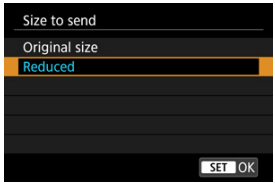
4. Press the < MENU > button.

- Select [**OK**] when a message is displayed.

5. Select [Size to send].

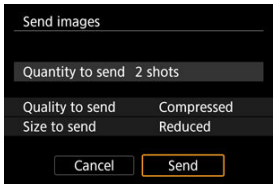


- On the displayed screen, select an image size.



- When sending movies, select the image quality in [**Quality to send**].

6. Select [Send].

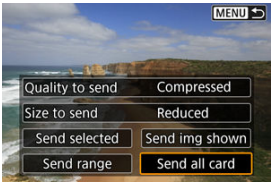


(4) Sending all images on the card

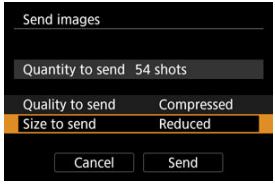
1. **Press the <(( ))> button.**



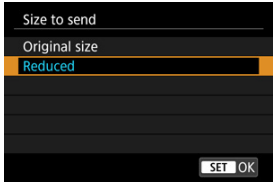
2. **Select [Send all card].**



3. **Select [Size to send].**

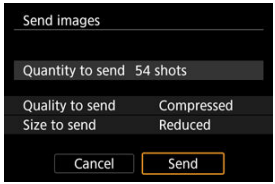


- On the displayed screen, select an image size.



- When sending movies, select the image quality in [**Quality to send**].

4. **Select [Send].**



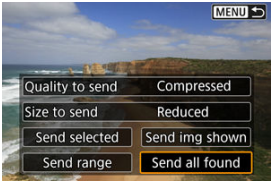
(5) Sending images that match the search conditions

Send all the images that match the search conditions set in [**Set image search conditions**] at once. For details on [**Set image search conditions**], see Setting Image Search Conditions.

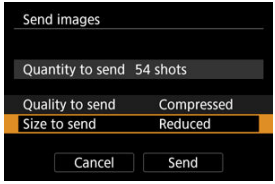
1. **Press the < (SET) > button.**



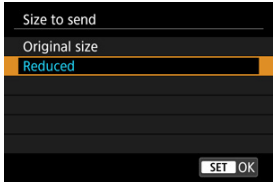
2. **Select [Send all found].**



3. **Select [Size to send].**

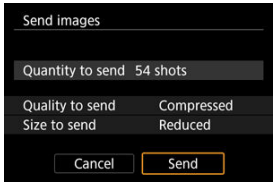


- On the displayed screen, select an image size.



- When sending movies, select the image quality in [**Quality to send**].

4. **Select [Send].**



Ending image transfer



- Press the < MENU > button on the image transfer screen.
- To end the Wi-Fi connection, select [**Disconnect**] on the [**Wi-Fi on**] screen ( ).

Caution

- During the image transfer operation, a picture cannot be taken even if the camera's shutter button is pressed.

Note

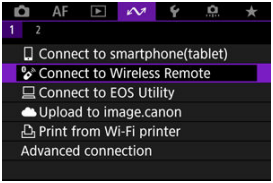
- You can cancel the image transfer by selecting [**Cancel**] during the transfer.
- You can select up to 999 files at a time.
- With a Wi-Fi connection established, disabling the smartphone's power saving function is recommended.
- Selecting the reduced size for still photos applies to all still photos sent at that time. Note that S2 size still photos are not reduced.
- Selecting compression for movies applies to all movies sent at that time. Note that FHD 29.97P IPB and FHD 25.00P IPB movies are not reduced.
- When you use a battery to power the camera, make sure it is fully charged.

Connecting to a Wireless Remote Control

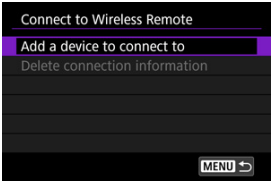
Canceling the Pairing

This camera can also be connected to Wireless Remote Control BR-E1 (sold separately,) via Bluetooth for remote control shooting.

1. **Select [: Connect to Wireless Remote].**



2. **Select [Add a device to connect to].**



3. **Pair the devices.**



- When the screen shown above appears, press and hold the **<W>** and **<T>** buttons on the BR-E1 simultaneously for at least 3 sec.
- After a message confirms that the camera is paired with the BR-E1, press the < > button.

4. **Set up the camera for remote control shooting.**

- For instructions after the pairing is complete, refer to the BR-E1's Instruction Manual.

Caution

- Bluetooth connections consume battery power even after the camera's auto power off is activated.

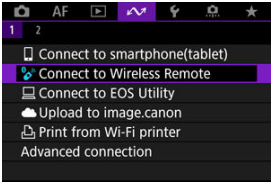
Note

- When you will not use Bluetooth, setting [: **Bluetooth settings**] to [**Disable**] is recommended ( ).

Canceling the Pairing

Before pairing with a different BR-E1, clear the information about the connected remote control.

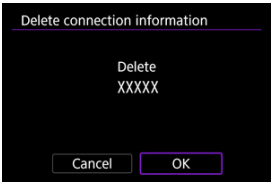
1. **Select [: Connect to Wireless Remote].**



2. **Select [Delete connection information].**



3. **Select [OK].**



Connecting to EOS Utility

Operating the Camera Using EOS Utility

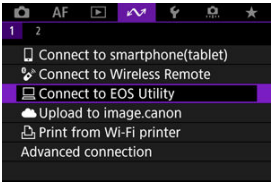
This section describes how to connect the camera to a computer via Wi-Fi and perform camera operations using EOS software or other dedicated software. Install the latest version of software on the computer before setting up a Wi-Fi connection.
For computer operating instructions, refer to the computer user manual.

Operating the Camera Using EOS Utility

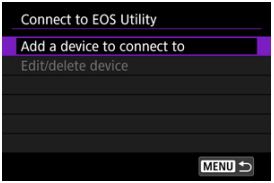
Using EOS Utility (EOS software), you can import images from the camera, control the camera, and perform other operations.

Steps on the camera (1)

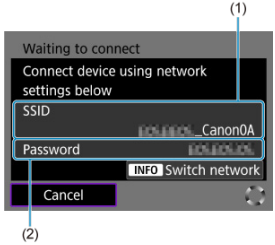
1. **Select [: Connect to EOS Utility].**



2. **Select [Add a device to connect to].**



3. Check the SSID (network name) and password.

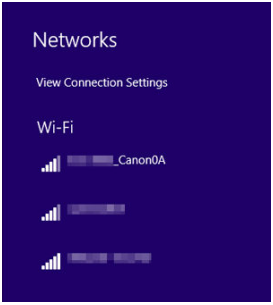


- Check the SSID (1) and Password (2) displayed on the camera screen.
- To establish a Wi-Fi connection using an access point, press the < INFO > button. Follow the instructions for the connection method used.
  - Connecting via WPS (,)
  - Connecting manually to detected networks ( )
  - Connecting manually by specifying access point information ( )

Steps on the computer (1)

4. **Select the SSID, then enter the password.**

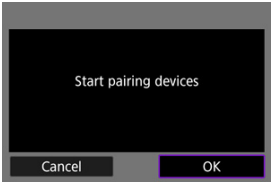
Computer's screen (sample)



- On the computer's network setting screen, select the SSID checked in step 3 in Steps on the camera (1).
- For the password, enter the password checked in step 3 in Steps on the camera (1).
- If a Wi-Fi connection cannot be established, set [**Security**] on the camera to [**WPA2**] ( ).

Steps on the camera (2)

5. **Select [OK].**



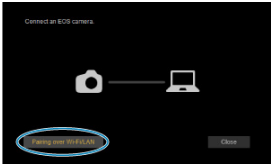
- The following message is displayed. "******" represents the last six digits of the MAC address of the camera to be connected.



Steps on the computer (2)

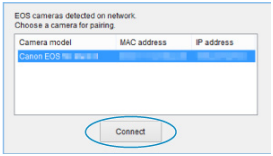
6. **Start EOS Utility.**

7. **In EOS Utility, click [Pairing over Wi-Fi/LAN].**



- If a firewall-related message is displayed, select [**Yes**].

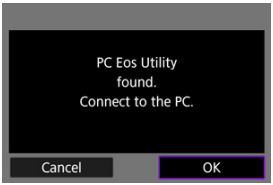
8. **Click [Connect].**



- Select the camera to connect to, then click [**Connect**].

Steps on the camera (3)

9. **Establish a Wi-Fi connection.**

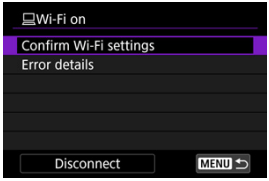


- Select [**OK**].
- [**Wi-Fi on**] is displayed on the camera screen ( ).

The Wi-Fi connection to a computer is now complete.

- Operate the camera using EOS Utility on the computer.
- To reconnect via Wi-Fi, see Reconnecting via Wi-Fi/Bluetooth.

[Wi-Fi on] screen



- **Confirm Wi-Fi settings**
  You can check setting details for Wi-Fi connections ( ).

- **Error details**
  - After any Wi-Fi connection errors, you can check the error details ( ).

- **Disconnect**
  Ends the Wi-Fi connection.

Caution

- If the Wi-Fi connection is terminated while recording a movie with remote shooting, the following will occur.
  - Any movie recording in progress in movie recording mode will continue.
  - Any movie recording in progress in still photo shooting mode will end.
- You cannot use the camera to shoot in still photo shooting mode when it is set to movie recording mode in EOS Utility.
- With a Wi-Fi connection to EOS Utility established, certain functions are unavailable.
- In remote shooting, the AF speed may become slower.
- Depending on the communication status, image display or shutter release timing may be delayed.
- In Remote Live View shooting, the rate of image transmission is slower compared to a connection via an interface cable. Therefore, moving subjects cannot be displayed smoothly.

Uploading Images to image.canon

Connecting the Camera to image.canon

Uploading Images to image.canon

This section describes how to send images to image.canon.

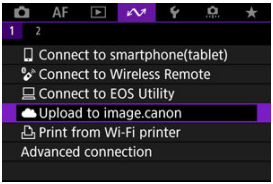
Connecting the Camera to image.canon

Link the camera to image.canon to send images directly from the camera.

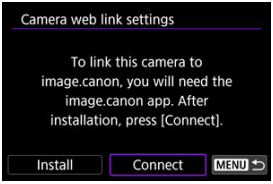
- A smartphone with a browser and internet connection is required.
- For instructions on how to use image.canon services and details on countries and regions where it is available, visit the image.canon site (https://image.canon/).
- Separate ISP connection and access point fees may apply.

Steps on the camera (1)

1. **Select [: Upload to image.canon].**

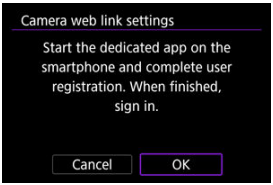


2. **Select [Connect].**



- If the dedicated app has not been installed, select [**Install**].

3. **Select [OK].**

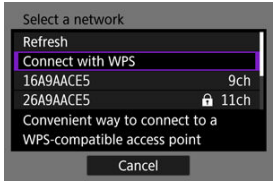


4. **Scan the QR code with the dedicated app.**



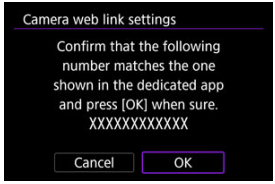
- Select [**OK**].

5. Establish a Wi-Fi connection.



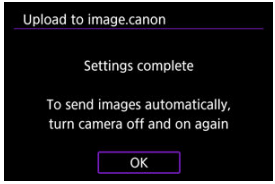
- Connect to an access point via Wi-Fi. Follow the instructions for the connection method used.
  - Connecting via WPS (,)
  - Connecting manually to detected networks ( )
  - Connecting manually by specifying access point information ( )

6. Confirm that the number is displayed in the dedicated app.

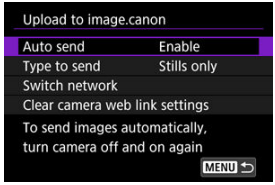


- Select [**OK**].

7. Complete the settings.



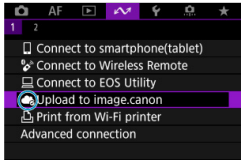
- Press the < (SET) > button.



- The setting menu is displayed on the camera screen.

Note

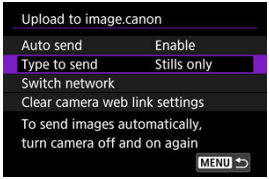
- The [☁] icon changes to [☁].



8. Check the dedicated app.

- Confirm that the camera model name is registered in the dedicated app.

[Upload to image.canon] screen



- **Auto send**
  You can choose whether to upload images automatically.

- **Type to send**
  You can select the type of images uploaded.

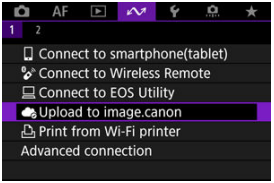
- **Switch network**
  You can change the settings for Wi-Fi connections.

- **Clear camera web link settings**
  You can clear the camera web link settings.

Uploading Images to image.canon

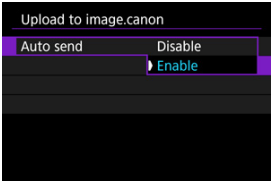
Images are automatically uploaded to image.canon after the camera starts up (or recovers from auto power off). Images uploaded to image.canon can be downloaded to a computer or transferred to other web services.

1. **Select [: Upload to image.canon].**



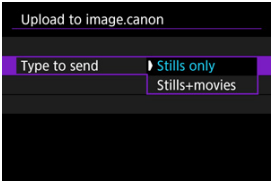
- The [**Upload to image.canon**] screen appears ( ).

2. **Set [Auto send] to [Enable].**



- If [**Auto send**] is already set to [**Enable**], go to step 3.

3. **Set [Type to send].**



- **Stills only**
  Uploading only applies to still photos.

- **Stills+movies**
  Uploading applies to both still photos and movies.

4. **Restart the camera.**

Note

- Uploaded images are stored at image.canon for 30 days at the original image size, without storage limitations.

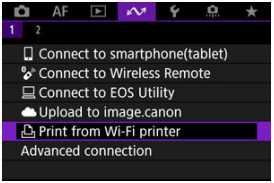
Connecting to a Printer via Wi-Fi

Image Printing

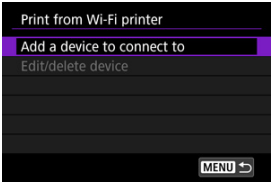
Print Settings

This section describes how to print images by directly connecting the camera to a printer supporting PictBridge (Wireless LAN) via Wi-Fi. For printer operating instructions, refer to the printer user manual.

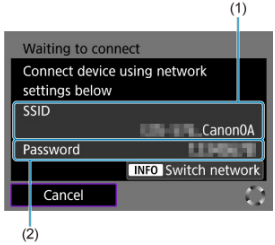
1. **Select [Print from Wi-Fi printer].**



2. **Select [Add a device to connect to].**



3. Check the SSID (network name) and password.

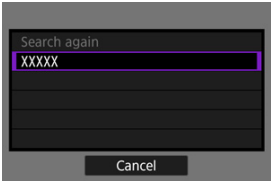


- Check the SSID (1) and Password (2) displayed on the camera screen.
- To establish a Wi-Fi connection using an access point, press the <INFO> button. Follow the instructions for the connection method used.
  - Connecting via WPS (,)
  - Connecting manually to detected networks ( )
  - Connecting manually by specifying access point information ( )

4. Set up the printer.

- In the Wi-Fi settings menu of the printer to be used, select the SSID you have checked.
- For the password, enter the password checked in step 3.
- If a Wi-Fi connection cannot be established, set [**Security**] on the camera to [**WPA2**] ( ).

5. **Select the printer.**



- In the list of detected printers, select the printer to connect to via Wi-Fi.
- If your preferred printer is not listed, selecting [**Search again**] may enable the camera to find and display it.

Printing images individually

1. **Select the image to print.**



- Press the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an image to print, then press the < (SET) > button.
- To select the image from index display, press the < ⊞ > button.

2. **Select [Print image].**



3. **Print the image.**



- For the print setting procedures, see Print Settings.
- Select [**Print**], then [**OK**] to start printing.

Printing according to specified image options

1. **Press the <Q> button.**



2. **Select [Print order].**



3. **Set the printing options.**



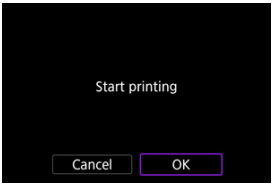
- For the print setting procedures, see Print Ordering (DPOF).
- If the print order is complete before establishing a Wi-Fi connection, go to step 4.

4. **Select [Print].**

- [**Print**] can be selected only when an image is selected and the printer is ready to print.

5. **Configure [Paper settings] ( ).**

6. **Print the image.**



- When [**OK**] is selected, printing starts.

Caution

- Shooting is not possible while connected to a printer via Wi-Fi.
- RAW images, HEIF images, and movies cannot be printed.
- Before printing, be sure to set the paper size.
- File number printing may not be supported by certain printers.
- Dates may be printed on the border by certain printers when [**Bordered**] is set.
- Depending on the printer, the date may appear faint if it is printed on a bright background or on the border.

Note

- When you use a battery to power the camera, make sure it is fully charged.
- It may take some time until printing starts after you select [**Print**], depending on file size and image quality.
- To stop printing, press the < SET > button while [**Cancel**] is displayed, then select [**OK**].
- When printing with [**Print order**], you can select [**Resume**] to continue printing the remaining images if you have stopped printing in progress. Note that printing will not resume if any of the following occurs.
  - You change the print order or delete any of the specified images before resuming printing.
  - When index is set and you change the paper setting before resuming printing.
- If a problem occurs during printing, see Notes.

Print Settings

The screen display and setting options vary depending on the printer. Also, certain settings may not be available. For details, refer to the printer's instruction manual.

Print settings screen



(1)	Sets date or file number printing ( ).
(2)	Sets the printing effects ( ).
(3)	Sets the number of copies to print ( ).
(4)	Sets the print area ( ).
(5)	Sets the paper size, type, and layout (, ,).
(6)	Returns to the image selection screen.
(7)	Starts the printing.
(8)	The paper size, type, and layout you have set are displayed.

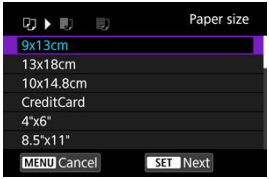
*** Depending on the printer, certain settings may not be selectable.**

Paper settings



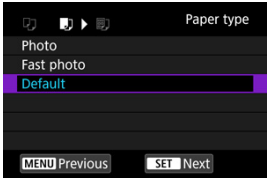
- Select [**Paper settings**].

[] Setting the paper size



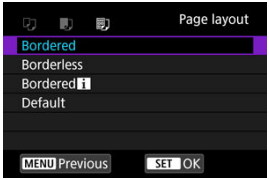
- Select the size of the paper in the printer.

[] Setting the paper type



- Select the type of the paper in the printer.

[] Setting the page layout

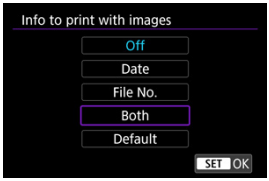


- Select the page layout.

Caution

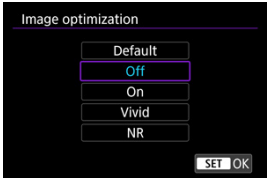
- If the image's aspect ratio is different from the printing paper's aspect ratio, the image may be cropped significantly when you print it as a borderless print. Images may also be printed at lower resolution.

[] Setting printing of the date/file number



- Select [].
- Select what to print.

[] Setting printing effects (image optimization)



- Select [].
- Select printing effects.

Caution

- ISO speeds may be misidentified in shooting information printed for images shot at an expanded ISO speed (**H**).
- [**Default**] in printing effects and other options refers to default settings determined by the printer manufacturer. For [**Default**] details, refer to the printer instruction manual.

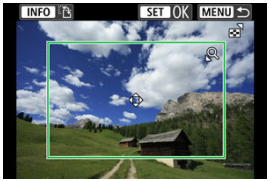
[] Setting the number of copies



- Select [].
- Select the number of copies to print.

Cropping the image

Set cropping immediately before printing. Changing other print settings after you crop images may require you to crop the images again.



1. **Select [Cropping] on the print setting screen.**

2. **Set the cropping frame size, position, and orientation.**

   - The image area within the cropping frame will be printed. The shape of the frame (aspect ratio) can be changed in [**Paper settings**].

   Resizing the cropping frame size

   Press the < Q > or < ▪ > button to resize the cropping frame.

   Moving the cropping frame

   Press the < ▲ >< ▼ >< ◀ >< ▶ > keys to move the frame vertically or horizontally.

   Switching the orientation of the cropping frame

   Pressing the < INFO > button will toggle the cropping frame between the vertical and horizontal orientations.

3. **Press the < ⓐ > button to exit cropping.**

   - You can check the cropped image area in the upper left of the print setting screen.

Caution

- Depending on the printer, the cropped image area may not be printed as you specified.
- The smaller the cropping frame, the lower the resolution at which images are printed.

Note

Handling printer errors

- If printing does not resume after you resolve a printer error (such as no ink or paper) and select [**Continue**], use buttons on the printer. For details on resuming printing, refer to the printer's instruction manual.

Error messages

- If a problem occurs during printing, an error message will appear on the camera screen. After fixing the problem, resume printing. For details on how to fix a printing problem, refer to the printer's instruction manual.

Paper error

- Confirm that paper is loaded correctly.

Ink error

- Check the printer's ink level and the waste ink tank.

Hardware error

- Check for any printer problems other than paper and ink problems.

File error

- The selected image cannot be printed. Images taken with a different camera or images edited with a computer may not be printable.

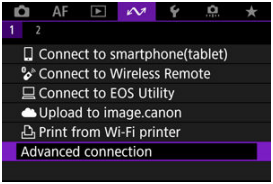
Advanced Connections

Connecting to a Smartphone or Tablet

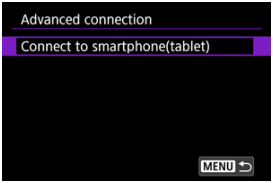
This section describes how to establish a direct Wi-Fi connection with a smartphone and use Camera Connect to control the camera.

Connecting to a Smartphone or Tablet

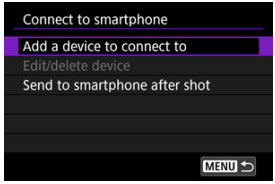
1. **Select [: Advanced connection].**



2. **Select [Connect to smartphone(tablet)].**



3. **Select [Add a device to connect to].**

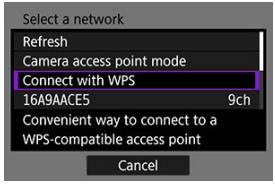


4. **Start searching for access points.**



- To start searching if Camera Connect is already installed on the smartphone, press the < (SET) > button.
- If Camera Connect is not installed, use the smartphone to scan the QR code on the screen, go to Google Play or App Store to install Camera Connect, then press the < (SET) > button to start searching.

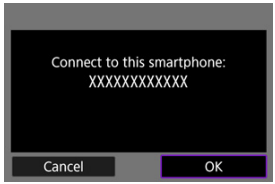
5. **Establish a Wi-Fi connection.**



- Connect to an access point via Wi-Fi. Follow the instructions for the connection method used.
  - Connecting via WPS (,)
  - Connecting manually to detected networks ()
  - Connecting manually by specifying access point information ()

6. **Start Camera Connect and tap the camera name.**

7. **Select [OK].**



- [**Wi-Fi on**] is displayed on the camera screen ().

Basic Communication Settings

- Preparation
- Checking the Type of Access Point
- Connecting via WPS (PBC Mode)
- Connecting via WPS (PIN Mode)
- Connecting Manually to Detected Networks
- Connecting Manually by Specifying Networks
- Connecting in Camera Access Point Mode
- Setting the IP Address

Before using the following camera communication functions, configure camera and computer settings as described starting in Preparation.

- Connect to a smartphone via Wi-Fi without using Bluetooth
- Upload images to a Web service

Preparing to use communication functions

EOS Utility

A computer with EOS Utility (EOS software) installed is required.
For EOS Utility installation instructions, visit the Canon website.

GPS

See GPS Settings.

Caution

Transferring movies

- Each movie file is large, and transferring large files over Wi-Fi may take some time. Referring to Wireless Communication Function Precautions, arrange your network environment for stable communication between devices and the access point.

Checking the Type of Access Point

When connecting via an access point, check whether the access point supports WPS*, which simplifies connections between Wi-Fi devices.
If you are unsure about WPS compatibility, refer to the access point user manual or other documentation.
* Stands for Wi-Fi Protected Setup.

When WPS is supported

Two connection methods are available, as follows. You can connect more easily via WPS in PBC mode.

- Connecting via WPS (PBC mode) ( )
- Connecting via WPS (PIN mode) ( )

When WPS is not supported

- Connecting manually to detected networks ( )
- Connecting manually by specifying networks ( )

Access point encryption

The camera supports the following options for [**Authentication**] and [**Encryption settings**]. For this reason, the encryption used by the access point must be set to one of the following when you will connect to detected networks manually.

- [**Authentication**]: Open system, shared key, or WPA/WPA2/WPA3-Personal
- [**Encryption settings**]: WEP, TKIP, or AES

Caution

- **Connections may not be possible when access point stealth functions are enabled. Deactivate stealth functions.**
- Ask any network administrator in charge of networks you will join for setting details.

Note

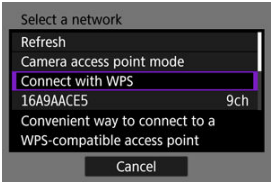
- If MAC address filtering is used on networks you will join, add the camera's MAC address to the access point. The MAC address can be checked on the [**MAC address**] screen ( ).

Connecting via WPS (PBC Mode)

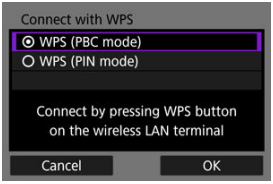
Instructions in this section are continued from Checking the Type of Access Point.
This is a connection method used with access points compatible with WPS. In pushbutton connection mode (PBC mode), the camera and access point can be connected simply by pressing the WPS button on the access point.

- Connecting may be more difficult if multiple access points are active nearby. If so, try to connect with [**WPS (PIN mode)**].
- Check the position of the WPS button on the access point in advance.
- It may take approx. 1 min. to establish a connection.

1. **Select [Connect with WPS] on the [Select a network] screen.**

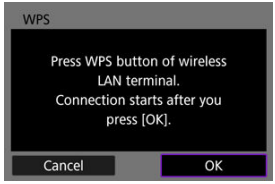


2. **Select [WPS (PBC mode)].**



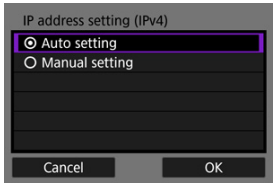
- Select [**OK**].

3. **Connect to the access point.**



- Press the access point's WPS button. For details on where the button is and how long to press it, refer to the access point user manual.
- Select [**OK**] to initiate connection with the access point.
- The following screen is displayed once the camera is connected to the access point.

4. **Set the IP address.**



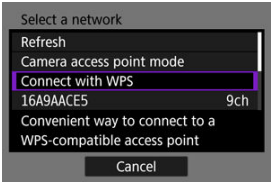
- Go to Setting the IP Address.

Connecting via WPS (PIN Mode)

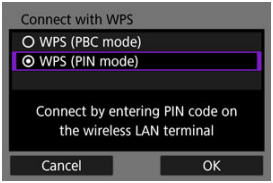
Instructions in this section are continued from Checking the Type of Access Point.
This is a connection method used with access points compatible with WPS. In PIN code connection mode (PIN mode), an 8-digit identification number indicated on the camera is entered on the access point to establish a connection.

- Even if multiple access points are active nearby, connecting by using this shared identification number is relatively reliable.
- It may take approx. 1 min. to establish a connection.

1. **Select [Connect with WPS] on the [Select a network] screen.**

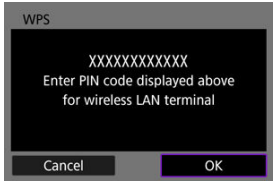


2. **Select [WPS (PIN mode)].**



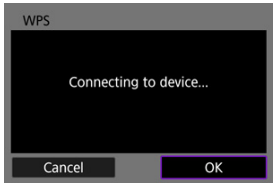
- Select [**OK**].

3. Enter the PIN code.



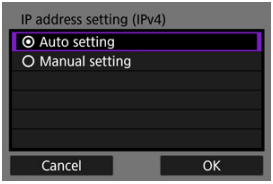
- On the access point, enter the 8-digit PIN code displayed on the camera screen.
- For instructions on entering PIN codes on the access point, refer to the access point user manual.
- After entering the PIN code, select [**OK**] on the camera.

4. Connect to the access point.



- Select [**OK**] to initiate connection with the access point.
- The following screen is displayed once the camera is connected to the access point.

5. **Set the IP address.**



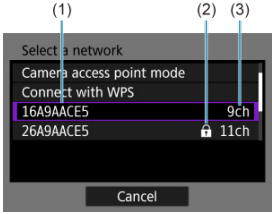
- Go to Setting the IP Address.

Connecting Manually to Detected Networks

Instructions in this section are continued from Checking the Type of Access Point.
Connect to an access point by selecting its SSID (or ESS-ID) in a list of active access points nearby.

Selecting the access point

1. **Select an access point on the [Select a network] screen.**



(1) SSID

(2) Security icon (only for encrypted access points)

(3) Channel used

- Use the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select the access point to connect to in the list of access points.

Note

[Refresh]

- To display [**Refresh**], scroll down the screen in step 1.
- Select [**Refresh**] to search for access points again.

Entering the access point encryption key

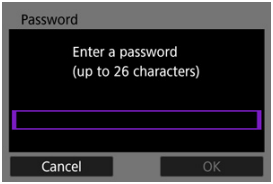
- Enter the encryption key (password) set on the access point. For details on the encryption key that has been set, refer to the access point's user manual.
- The screens displayed in steps 2–3 vary depending on the authentication and encryption set on the access point.
- Go to Setting the IP Address if the [**IP address set.**] screen is displayed instead of the screens shown for steps 2–3.

2. Select a key index.



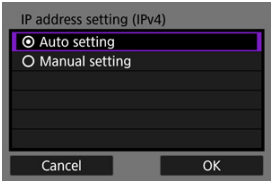
- The [**Key index**] screen is displayed for WEP-encrypted access points.
- Select the key index number set on the access point.
- Select [**OK**].

3. Enter the encryption key.



- Press the < > button to access the virtual keyboard ( ), then enter the encryption key.
- Select [**OK**] to initiate connection with the access point.
- The following screen is displayed once the camera is connected to the access point.

4. **Set the IP address.**



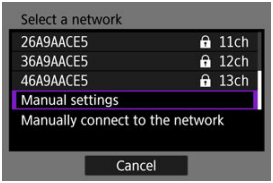
- Go to Setting the IP Address.

Connecting Manually by Specifying Networks

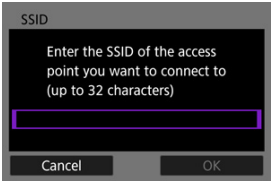
Instructions in this section are continued from Checking the Type of Access Point.
Connect to an access point by entering its SSID (or ESS-ID).

Entering the SSID

1. **Select [Manual settings] on the [Select a network] screen.**



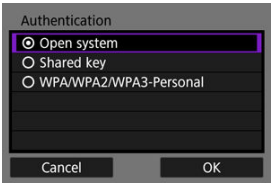
2. **Enter the SSID (network name).**



- Press the < > button to access the virtual keyboard ( ), then enter the encryption key.
- Select [**OK**].

Setting the access point authentication method

3. **Select the authentication method.**



- Select an option and then [**OK**] to go to the next screen.
- On the [**Encryption settings**] screen displayed if [**Open system**] is selected, select [**Disable**] or [**WEP**].

Entering the access point encryption key

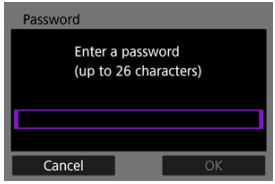
- Enter the encryption key (password) set on the access point. For details on the encryption key that has been set, refer to the access point's user manual.
- The screens displayed in steps 4–5 vary depending on the authentication and encryption set on the access point.
- Go to Setting the IP Address if the [**IP address set.**] screen is displayed instead of the screens shown for steps 4–5.

4. **Select a key index.**



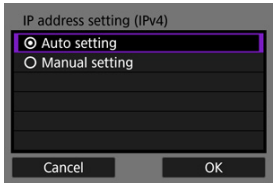
- The [**Key index**] screen is displayed if you have selected [**Shared key**] or [**WEP**] in step 3.
- Select the key index number set on the access point.
- Select [**OK**].

5. **Enter the encryption key.**



- Press the < SET > button to access the virtual keyboard ( ), then enter the encryption key.
- Select [**OK**] to initiate connection with the access point.
- The following screen is displayed once the camera is connected to the access point.

6. **Set the IP address.**



- Go to Setting the IP Address.

Connecting in Camera Access Point Mode

Camera access point mode is a connection method for directly connecting the camera and other devices via Wi-Fi without using an access point. Two connection methods are available, as follows.

Caution

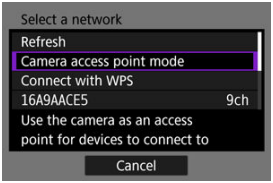
- Some printers may not be able to connect when the camera is used as an access point.
  If connection in camera access point mode is not possible, you may be able to establish a connection as follows.
  - Establish a Wi-Fi connection via an access point
  - Start access point mode on the printer

Connecting with Easy connection

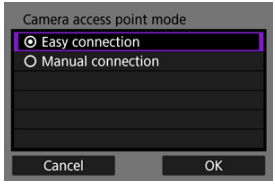
Network settings for camera access point mode are configured automatically.

- For instructions on using the devices you will connect to, refer to the device instruction manual.

1. **Select [Camera access point mode] on the [Select a network] screen.**

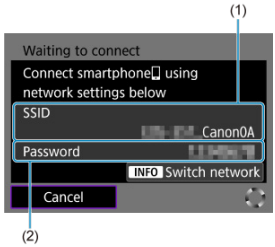


2. **Select [Easy connection].**



- Select [**OK**].

3. **Use the other device to connect to the camera.**



(1) SSID (network name)

(2) Encryption key (password)

- In other device's Wi-Fi settings, select the SSID (network name) shown on the camera screen, then enter the password.

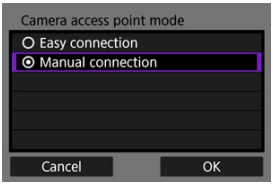
4. **Complete the connection settings based on the device to connect to.**

- If a Wi-Fi connection cannot be established, set [**Security**] on the camera to [**WPA2**] ( ).

Connecting with Manual connection

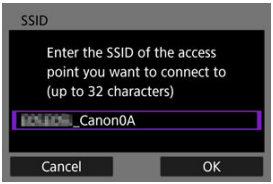
Network settings for camera access point mode are configured manually. Set [**SSID**], [**Channel setting**], and [**Encryption settings**] on each screen displayed.

1. **Select [Manual connection].**



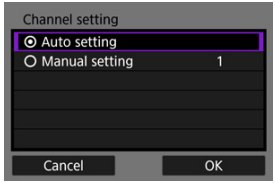
- Select [**OK**].

2. **Enter the SSID (network name).**



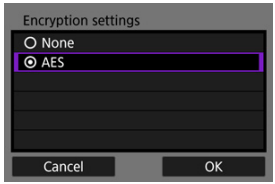
- Press the < > button to access the virtual keyboard ( ), then enter the SSID. After input, press the < MENU > button.
- Select [**OK**].

3. **Select a channel setting option.**



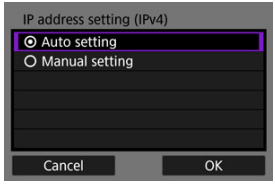
- To specify the settings manually, select [**Manual setting**], then turn the < > dial.
- Select [**OK**].

4. **Select an encryption setting option.**



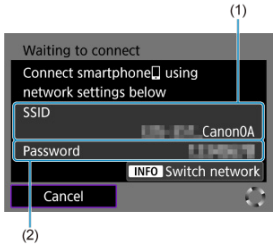
- For encryption, select [**AES**].
- Select [**OK**].
- When [**AES**] is selected, the [**Password**] screen is displayed. Press the < > button to access the virtual keyboard ( ), then enter the encryption key. After input, press the < MENU > button.

5. **Select [Auto setting].**



- Select [**OK**].
- If an error is displayed for [**Auto setting**], set the IP address manually ( ).

6. **Use the other device to connect to the camera.**



(1) SSID (network name)

(2) Encryption key (password)

7. **Complete connection settings for the communication function.**

- If a Wi-Fi connection cannot be established, set [**Security**] on the camera to [**WPA2**] ( ).

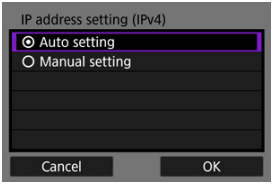
Setting the IP Address

Select a method of setting the IP address, and then set the IP address on the camera. When IPv6 is used, the camera only connects via IPv6. IPv4 connections are disabled.

Setting the IP address automatically

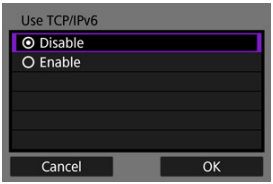
Set up the IP address settings automatically.

1. **Select [Auto setting].**



- Select [**OK**].
- If an error is displayed for [**Auto setting**], set the IP address manually ( ).

2. **Select an IPv6 option.**



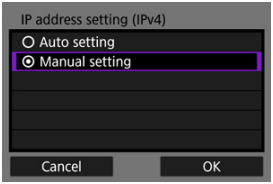
- Select an option and then [**OK**] to go to the next screen.
- Select [**Enable**] to use IPv6.

3. **Complete the connection settings based on the device to connect to.**

Setting the IP address manually

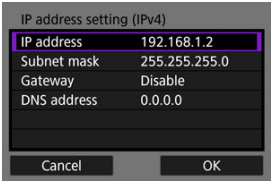
Set up the IP address settings manually. Note that the items displayed vary depending on the communication function.

1. **Select [Manual setting].**

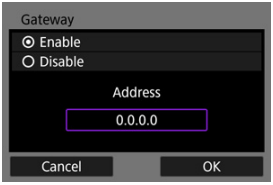


- Select [**OK**].

2. **Select an option to configure.**

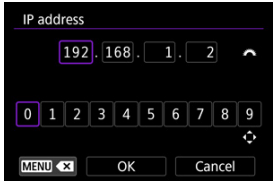


- Select an option to access the screen for numerical input.



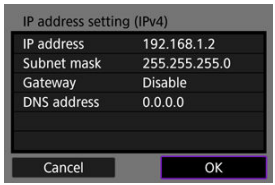
- To use a gateway, select [**Enable**], then select [**Address**].

3. Enter the number.



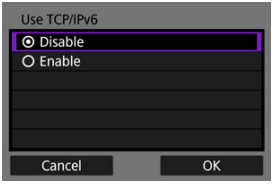
- Turn the < > dial to switch to other input fields at the top of the screen, and press the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select numbers to enter. Press the < (SET) > button to enter the selected number.
- To delete the number just entered, press the < MENU > button.
- Select [**OK**] to confirm input and return to the screen in step 2.

4. Select [OK].



- When you have completed setting the necessary items, select [**OK**]. The next screen is displayed.
- If you are unsure what to enter, see Checking Network Settings or ask the network administrator or other person in charge of the network.

5. **Select an IPv6 option.**



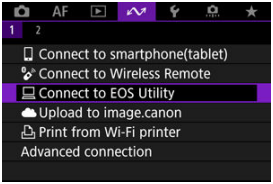
- Select an option and then [**OK**] to go to the next screen.
- Select [**Enable**] to use IPv6.

6. **Complete the connection settings based on the device to connect to.**

Reconnecting via Wi-Fi/Bluetooth

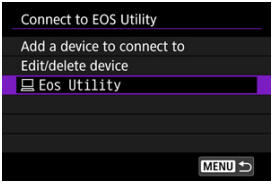
Connection settings for devices you have connected to via Wi-Fi or Bluetooth are retained on the camera. You can use these settings to reconnect to the same device.

1. **Select the type of connection for the device to connect to.**



- After the [**Wi-Fi on**] screen appears, select [**Disconnect**], then repeat step 1.

2. **Select the device for the connection.**



- Select the connection option in the list of past connections.

Note

- For all communication features used, settings for up to 10 past connections are retained.

3. **Operate the connected device.**

Editing/Deleting Connection Settings

Changing Connection Nicknames

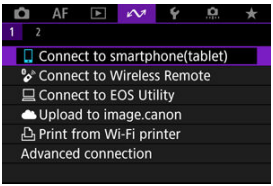
Deleting Connection Information

Before changing or deleting connection settings, end the Wi-Fi connection.

Changing Connection Nicknames

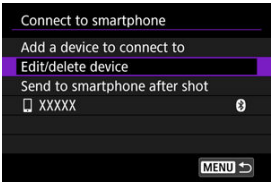
You can change connection setting nicknames.

1. **Select the type of connection for the device to connect to.**

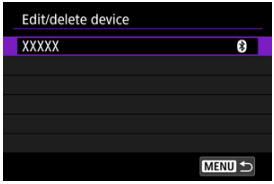


- After the [**Wi-Fi on**] screen appears, select [**Disconnect**], then repeat step 1.

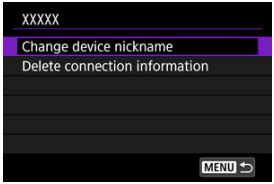
2. **Select [Edit/delete device].**



3. **Select the connection settings for the nickname to change.**



4. **Select [Change device nickname].**



5. **Change the nickname.**



- Use the virtual keyboard ( ) to enter the nickname.

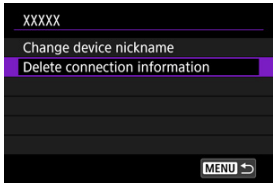
6. **Press the < MENU > button, then select [OK].**

Deleting Connection Information

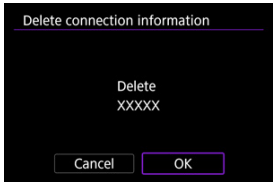
1. **Access the connection settings screen.**

   - Follow steps 1–3 in Changing Connection Nicknames.
   - For [: **Connect to Wireless Remote**], see Canceling the Pairing.

2. **Select [Delete connection information].**



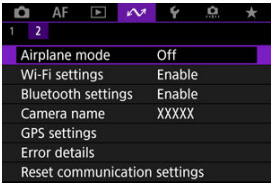
3. **Select [OK].**



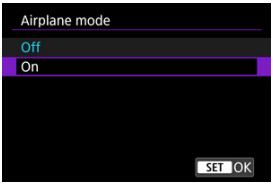
Airplane Mode

You can temporarily disable Wi-Fi and Bluetooth functions.

1. **Select [: Airplane mode].**



2. **Set to [On].**



- [] is displayed on the screen.

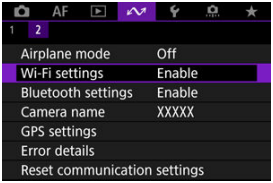
Note

- [] may not be displayed in still photo shooting, movie recording, or playback, depending on display settings. If it is not displayed, press the < INFO > button repeatedly to access detailed information display.

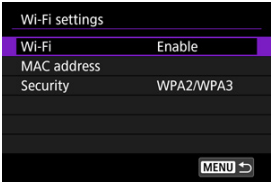
Wi-Fi Settings

Checking the MAC Address

1. **Select [: Wi-Fi settings].**



2. **Select an option.**



- **Wi-Fi**
  When the use of electronic devices and wireless devices is prohibited, such as on board airplanes or in hospitals, set it to [**Disable**].

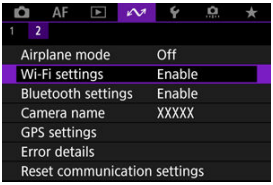
- **MAC address**
  You can check the MAC address of the camera.

- **Security**
  Select the security to use when connecting in camera access point mode.

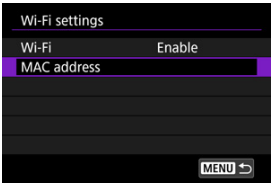
Checking the MAC Address

You can check the camera's MAC address.

1. **Select [: Wi-Fi settings].**



2. **Select [MAC address].**

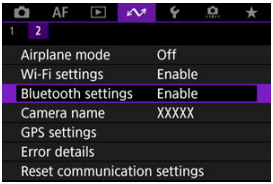


3. **Check the MAC address.**

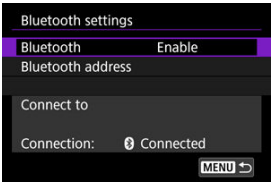


Bluetooth Settings

1. **Select [: Bluetooth settings].**



2. **Select an option.**



- **Bluetooth**
  If you will not use the Bluetooth function, select [**Disable**].

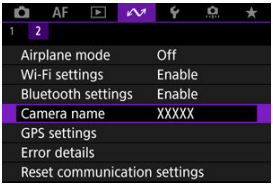
- **Bluetooth address**
  You can check the camera's Bluetooth address.

- **Connect to**
  You can check the name and communication status of the paired device.

Camera Name

You can change the camera name (displayed on smartphones and other cameras) as needed.

1. **Select [: Camera name].**



2. **Change the camera name.**



- Use the virtual keyboard ( ) to enter the camera name.

3. **Press the <MENU> button, then select [OK].**

GPS Settings

GPS via Mobile

GPS Information Display

GPS via Mobile

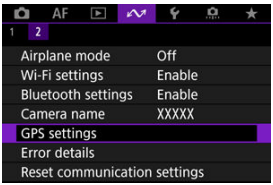
You can use a smartphone to geotag images.
Complete these settings after installing the dedicated Camera Connect app ( ) on the smartphone.

1. **On the smartphone, activate location services.**

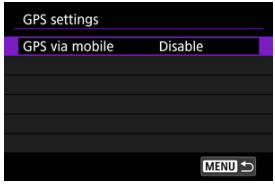
2. **Establish a Bluetooth connection.**

   - Start Camera Connect and pair the camera and smartphone via Bluetooth.

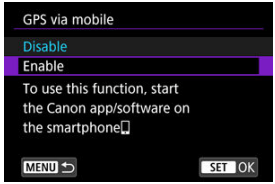
3. **Select [: GPS settings].**



4. **Select [GPS via mobile].**



5. **Select [Enable].**



6. **Take the picture.**

- Images are geotagged with the information from the smartphone.

GPS Information Display

You can check the status of smartphone location information acquisition in the GPS connection icon on the screens for still photo shooting or movie recording (and , respectively).

- Gray: Location services are off
- Blinking: Location information cannot be acquired
- On: Location information acquired

Geotagging images as you shoot

Images you shoot while the GPS icon is on are geotagged.

Geotagging information

You can check the location information added to your shots on the shooting information screen ( ).



(1) Latitude

(2) Longitude

(3) Elevation

(4) UTC (Coordinated Universal Time)

Caution

- The smartphone can acquire location information only while it is paired with the camera via Bluetooth.
- Direction information is not acquired.
- Acquired location information may not be accurate, depending on traveling conditions or smartphone status.
- It may take some time to acquire location information from the smartphone after you turn the camera on.
- Location information is no longer acquired after any of the following operations.
  - Pairing with a wireless remote control via Bluetooth
  - Turning the camera off
  - Quitting Camera Connect
  - Deactivating location services on the smartphone
- Location information is no longer acquired in any of the following situations.
  - The camera power turns off
  - The Bluetooth connection is ended
  - The smartphone's remaining battery level is low

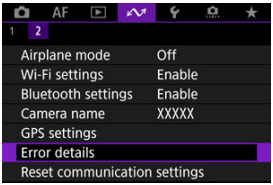
Note

- Coordinated Universal Time, abbreviated as UTC, is essentially the same as Greenwich Mean Time.
- For movies, the GPS information initially acquired is added.

Error Details

You can display details of errors affecting the camera's wireless communication functions.

1. **Select [: Error details].**

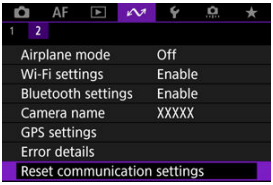


- Details of errors that have occurred are displayed.
- For more information on errors, see Responding to Error Messages.

Resetting Communication Settings

All wireless communication settings can be deleted. By deleting the wireless communication settings, you can prevent their information from being exposed when you lend or give your camera to other people.

1. **Select [: Reset communication settings].**



2. **Select [OK].**



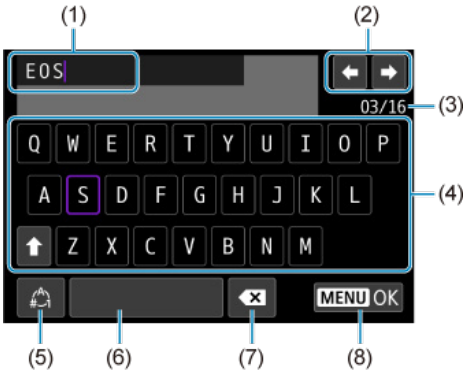
Caution

- If you have paired the camera with a smartphone, on the smartphone's Bluetooth settings screen, delete the connection information of the camera for which you restored default wireless communication settings.

Note

- All wireless communication settings can be cleared by selecting the [**Communication settings**] option for [**Other settings**] in [: **Reset camera**].

Virtual Keyboard Operations



(1)	Input area, for entering text
(2)	Cursor keys, for moving in the input area
(3)	Current no. of characters/no. available
(4)	Keyboard
(5)	Switch input modes
(6)	Space
(7)	Delete a character in the input area
(8)	Exit input

- Use the < > dial to move within (1).
- Use the < > keys to move within (2) and (4)–(7).
- Press the < > button to confirm input or when switching input modes.

Responding to Error Messages

When an error occurs, display the details of the error by following one of the procedures below. Then, eliminate the cause of the error by referring to the examples shown in this chapter.

- Select [: **Error details**].
- Select [**Error details**] on the [**Wi-Fi on**] screen.

Click the following error numbers to jump to the corresponding section.

11	12						
21	22	23					
61	64	65					
91							
121	125	127					
130	131	132	133	134	135	136	137
141	142						

Note

- In case of errors, [**Err****] is displayed to the right of [: **Error details**]. It disappears when the camera's power is set to < OFF >.

11: Connection target not found

- **In the case of [Connect to smartphone(tablet)], is Camera Connect running?**
  - Establish a connection using Camera Connect ( ).
- **In the case of [Connect to EOS Utility], is EOS Utility running?**
  - Start EOS Utility and try to connect again ( ).
- **Are the camera and the access point set to use the same encryption key for authentication?**
  - This error occurs if the encryption keys do not match when the authentication method for encryption is [**Open system**].
    Check upper- and lower-case letters, and make sure the correct encryption key for authentication is set on the camera ( ).

12: Connection target not found

- **Are the target device and access point turned on?**
  - Turn on the target device and access point, then wait a while. If a connection still cannot be established, perform the procedures to establish the connection again.

21: No address assigned by DHCP server

What to check on the camera

- **On the camera, the IP address is set to [Auto setting]. Is this the correct setting?**
  - If no DHCP server is used, configure the setting after setting the IP address to [**Manual setting**] on the camera ( ).

What to check on the DHCP server

- **Is the power of the DHCP server on?**
  - Turn on the DHCP server.
- **Are there enough addresses for assignment by the DHCP server?**
  - Increase the number of addresses assigned by the DHCP server.
  - Remove devices assigned addresses by the DHCP server from the network to reduce the number of addresses in use.
- **Is the DHCP server working correctly?**
  - Check the DHCP server settings to make sure it is working correctly as a DHCP server.
  - If applicable, ask your network administrator to ensure the DHCP server is available.

22: No response from DNS server

What to check on the camera

- **On the camera, does the DNS server's IP address setting match the server's actual address?**
  - Configure the IP address on the camera to match the actual DNS server address (,).

What to check on the DNS server

- **Is the power of the DNS server on?**
  - Turn the DNS server on.
- **Are the DNS server settings for IP addresses and the corresponding names correct?**
  - On the DNS server, make sure IP addresses and the corresponding names are entered correctly.
- **Is the DNS server working correctly?**
  - Check the DNS server settings to make sure the server is working correctly as a DNS server.
  - If applicable, ask your network administrator to ensure the DNS server is available.

What to check on the network as a whole

- **Does your network include a router or similar device that serves as a gateway?**
  - If applicable, ask your network administrator for the network gateway address and set it on the camera (,).
  - Make sure that the gateway address setting is correctly entered on all network devices including the camera.

23: Device with same IP address exists on selected network

- **Is another device on the camera network using the same IP address as the camera?**
  - Change the camera's IP address to avoid using the same address as another device on the network. Otherwise, change the IP address of the device that has a duplicate address.
  - If the camera's IP address is set to [**Manual setting**] in network environments using a DHCP server, change the setting to [**Auto setting**] ( ).

Note

Responding to error messages 21–23

- Also check the following points when responding to errors numbered 21–23.
  Are the camera and the access point set to use the same password for authentication?
  - This error occurs if the passwords do not match when the authentication method for encryption is set to [**Open system**]. Check upper- and lower-case letters, and make sure the correct password for authentication is set on the camera ( ).

61: Selected SSID wireless LAN network not found

- **Are any obstacles blocking the line of sight between the camera and the antenna of the access point?**
  - Move the antenna of the access point to a position clearly visible from the point of view of the camera.

What to check on the camera

- **Does the SSID set on the camera match that of the access point?**
  - Check the SSID at the access point, then set the same SSID on the camera ( ).

What to check at the access point

- **Is the access point turned on?**
  - Turn on the power of the access point.
- **If filtering by MAC address is active, is the MAC address of the camera in use registered at the access point?**
  - Register the MAC address of the camera used to the access point.
    The MAC address can be checked on the [**MAC address**] screen ( ).

64: Cannot connect to wireless LAN terminal

- **Are the camera and the access point set to use the same encryption method?**
  - The camera supports the following encryption methods: WEP, TKIP, and AES ( ).

- **If filtering by MAC address is active, is the MAC address of the camera in use registered at the access point?**
  - Register the MAC address of the camera used to the access point. The MAC address can be checked on the [**MAC address**] screen ( ).

65: Wireless LAN connection lost

- **Are any obstacles blocking the line of sight between the camera and the antenna of the access point?**
  - Move the antenna of the access point to a position clearly visible from the point of view of the camera.

- **The wireless LAN connection was lost, for some reason, and the connection cannot be restored.**
  - The following are possible reasons: excessive access to the access point from another device, a microwave oven or similar appliance in use nearby (interfering with IEEE 802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz band)), or influence of rain or high humidity.

91: Other error

- **A problem other than error code number 11 to 65 occurred.**
  - Turn the camera's power switch off and on.

121: Not enough free space on server

- **The target Web server does not have enough free space.**
  - Delete unnecessary images on the Web server, check the free space on the Web server, then try sending the data again.

125: Check the network settings

- **Is the network connected?**
  - Check the connection status of the network.

127: An error has occurred

- **A problem other than error code number 121 to 126 occurred while the camera is connected to the Web service.**
  - Try again to establish the Wi-Fi connection to image.canon.

130: The server is currently busy Please wait a moment and try again

- **The image.canon site is busy at the moment.**
  - Try accessing image.canon over Wi-Fi again later.

131: Try again

- **An error occurred when connecting to image.canon over Wi-Fi.**
  - Try again to establish the Wi-Fi connection to image.canon.

132: Error detected on server Try again later

- **The image.canon site is currently offline for maintenance.**
  - Try accessing image.canon over Wi-Fi again later.

133: Cannot log in to Web service

- **An error occurred when signing in to image.canon.**
  - Check the image.canon settings.
  - Try accessing image.canon over Wi-Fi again later.

134: Set the correct date and time

- **The date, time, and time zone settings are incorrect.**
  - Check the [: **Date/Time/Zone**] settings.

135: Web service settings have been changed

- **The settings for image.canon were changed.**
  - Check the image.canon settings.

136: The QR code shown on the camera was not scanned correctly by the dedicated app. Try camera web link setup again.

- **The QR code was not scanned correctly by the smartphone.**
  - Reconfigure camera web link settings and scan the QR code displayed again on the camera.

137: The QR code shown on the camera has expired. Try camera web link setup again.

- **The QR code displayed has expired.**
  - Reconfigure camera web link settings and scan the QR code displayed again on the camera.

141: Printer is busy. Try connecting again.

- **Is the printer performing a printing process?**
  - After the printing process is finished, reestablish a Wi-Fi connection with the printer.
- **Is another camera connected to the printer via Wi-Fi?**
  - End the Wi-Fi connection with the other camera, then reestablish a Wi-Fi connection with the printer.

142: Could not acquire printer information. Reconnect to try again.

- **Is the power of the printer on?**
  - Turn on the printer, then reestablish a Wi-Fi connection with it.

Wireless Communication Function Precautions

- Distance between the camera and the smartphone
- Installation location of access point antenna
- Nearby electronic devices
- Precautions for using multiple cameras

If the transmission rate drops, the connection is lost, or other problems occur when using the wireless communication functions, try the following corrective actions.

Distance between the camera and the smartphone

If the camera is too far from the smartphone, a Wi-Fi connection may not be established even when Bluetooth connection is possible. In this case, bring the camera and the smartphone closer together, then establish a Wi-Fi connection.

Installation location of access point antenna

- When using indoors, install the device in the room where you are using the camera.
- Install the device where people or objects do not come between the device and the camera.

Nearby electronic devices

If the Wi-Fi transmission rate drops because of the influence of the following electronic devices, stop using them or move further away from the devices to transmit communication.

- The camera communicates over Wi-Fi via IEEE 802.11b/g/n using radio waves in the 2.4 GHz band. For this reason, the Wi-Fi transmission rate will drop if there are Bluetooth devices, microwave ovens, cordless telephones, microphones, smartphones, other cameras, or similar devices operating on the same frequency band nearby.

Precautions for using multiple cameras

- When connecting multiple cameras to one access point via Wi-Fi, make sure the cameras' IP addresses are different.
- When multiple cameras are connected to one access point via Wi-Fi, the transmission rate drops.
- When there are multiple IEEE 802.11b/g/n (2.4 GHz band) access points, leave a gap of five channels between each Wi-Fi channel to reduce radio wave interference. For example, use channels 1, 6, and 11, channels 2 and 7, or channels 3 and 8.

Security

When connecting the camera to a network, make sure to use a secure network environment. It is recommended to use the camera with the default settings.
When connecting the camera to a network, there is a risk of unauthorized access from unintended third parties or cyber-attacks. If access from an external network is not required, physically and/or virtually block access so that only specified devices can access the network. Additionally, Wi-Fi (wireless LAN) may be intercepted by malicious third parties, posing a risk of eavesdropping on communication content.
If access to an external network is required, it is important to implement a secure method of communication, such as using a VPN (Virtual Private Network) that can block access from the outside. Use Wi-Fi in a secure environment. AES encryption is recommended.
In particular, the following functions do not support protocol encryption for communication with the camera; therefore, use these functions in a secure network environment.

- Content Transfer Professional
- Camera Connect
- EOS Utility

Caution

- Canon shall not be liable for any direct or indirect damages caused by network security issues.
- The camera cannot be directly connected to the communication lines (including public wireless LAN) of telecommunications carriers (mobile communications companies, fixed-line communications companies, Internet providers, etc.). When connecting the camera to the Internet, be sure to connect via a router or similar device.

Checking Network Settings

Windows

Open the Windows [**Command Prompt**], then enter ipconfig/all and press the <Enter> key. In addition to the IP address assigned to the computer, the subnet mask, gateway, and DNS server information are also displayed.

macOS

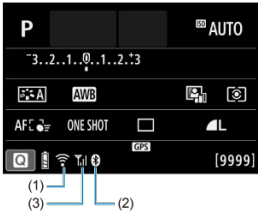
In macOS, open the [**Terminal**] application, enter ifconfig -a, and press the <Return> key. The IP address assigned to the computer is indicated in the [**enX**] item (X: number) next to [**inet**], in the format "***.***.***.***".
For information about the [**Terminal**] application, refer to the macOS help.

To avoid using the same IP address for the computer and other devices on the network, change the rightmost number when configuring the IP address assigned to the camera in the processes described in Manual IP Address Setup.
Example: 192.168.1.**10**

Wireless Communication Status

Wireless communication status can be checked on the screen.

Quick Control screen



Information display screen during playback



(1) Wi-Fi function
(2) Wireless signal strength
(3) Bluetooth function

Communication Status		Screen	
		Wi-Fi Function	Wireless Signal Strength
Not connected	Wi-Fi: Disable	OFF	Off
	Wi-Fi: Enable	OFF	
Connecting		(Blinking)	
Connected			
Sending data			
Connection error		(Blinking)	

Bluetooth Function Indicator

Bluetooth Function	Connection Status	Screen
Other than [Disable]	Bluetooth connected	
	Bluetooth not connected	
[Disable]	Bluetooth not connected	Not displayed

Set-up

This chapter describes menu settings on the set-up [🔧] tab.
☆ to the right of titles indicates functions only available in Creative Zone modes (<**P**>, <**Tv**>, <**Av**>, or <**M**>).

- Tab Menus: Set-up
- Folder Settings
- File Numbering
- Card Formatting
- Auto Rotate
- Adding Orientation Information to Movies
- Date/Time/Zone
- Language
- Video System
- Shooting Mode Guide
- Feature Guide
- Beeps
- Volume
- Power Saving
- Screen and Viewfinder Display
- Screen Brightness
- Viewfinder Brightness
- Fine-Tuning Viewfinder Color Tone
- UI Magnification
- HDMI Resolution
- Touch Control
- App Selection for USB Connections
- Password Management
- Resetting the Camera ☆
- Custom Shooting Mode (C Mode)
- Battery Information
- Copyright Information ☆
- Other Information

Tab Menus: Set-up

Set-up 1



(1) Select folder
- Creating a Folder

(2) File numbering

(3) Format card

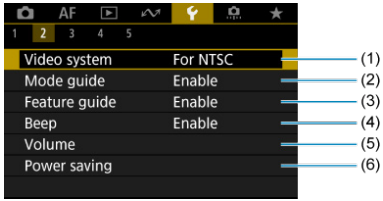
(4) Auto rotate

(5) Add rotate info

(6) Date/Time/Zone

(7) Language

Set-up 2



(1) Video system

(2) Mode guide

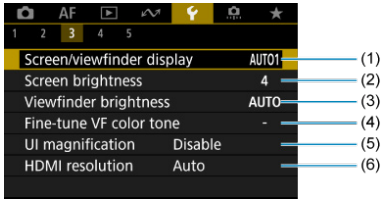
(3) Feature guide

(4) Beep

(5) Volume

(6) Power saving

- **Set-up 3**



(1) Screen/viewfinder display

(2) Screen brightness

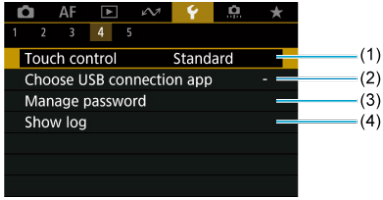
(3) Viewfinder brightness

(4) Fine-tune VF color tone

(5) UI magnification

(6) HDMI resolution

- **Set-up 4**



(1) Touch control

(2) Choose USB connection app

(3) Manage password

(4) Show log

Set-up 5



(1) Reset camera ☆

(2) Custom shooting mode (C mode)
Only displayed in < > mode.

(3) Battery info.

(4) Copyright information ☆

(5) Manual/software URL

(6) Certification Logo Display ☆

(7) Firmware

Folder Settings

Creating a Folder

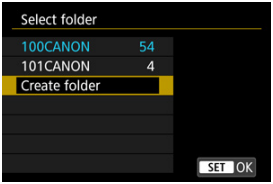
Selecting a Folder

You can freely create and select the folder where the captured images are to be saved.

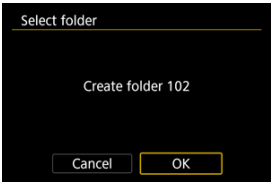
Creating a Folder

1. **Select [: Select folder] ( ).**

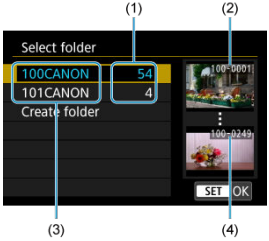
2. **Select [Create folder].**



3. **Select [OK].**



Selecting a Folder



(1) Number of images in folder

(2) Lowest file number

(3) Folder name

(4) Highest file number

- Select a folder on the folder selection screen.
- Captured images are stored in your selected folder.

Note

Folders

- A folder can contain up to 9999 images (file number 0001–9999). When a folder becomes full, a new folder with the folder number increased by one is created automatically. Also, if manual reset ( ) is executed, a new folder will be created automatically. Folders numbered from 100 to 999 can be created.

Creating folders with a computer

- With the card open on the screen, create a new folder with “**DCIM**” as the name. Open the DCIM folder and create as many folders as necessary to save and organize your images. “**100ABC_D**” is the required format for folder names, and the first three digits must be a folder number in the range 100–999. The last five characters can be any combination of upper- and lower-case letters from A to Z, numerals, and the underscore “_”. The space cannot be used. Also note that two folder names cannot share the same three-digit folder number (for example, “100ABC_D” and “100W_XYZ”) even if the remaining five characters in each name are different.

File Numbering

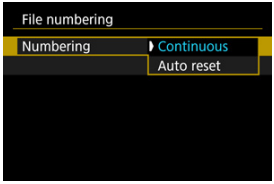
- Continuous
- Auto Reset
- Manual Reset

The captured images saved in a folder are assigned a file number from 0001 to 9999. You can change how the image files are numbered.

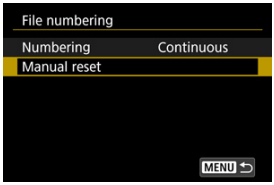
(Example)
IMG_0001.JPG
(1)
(1) File number

1. **Select [: File numbering] ( ).**

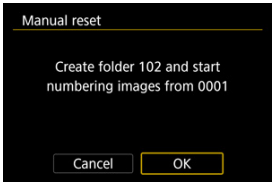
2. Set the item.



- Select [**Numbering**].
- Select [**Continuous**] or [**Auto reset**].



- If you want to reset the file numbering, select [**Manual reset**] ( ).



- Select [**OK**] to create a new folder, and the file number will start with 0001.

Caution

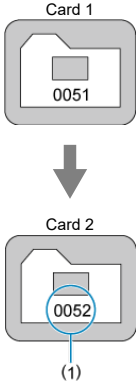
- If the file number in folder 999 reaches 9999, shooting will not be possible even if the card still has free space. After a message requesting you to replace the card is displayed, switch to a new card.

Continuous

For continuous file numbering regardless of switching cards or creating folders

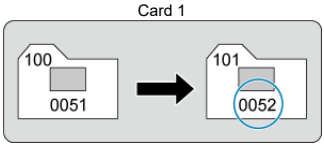
Even after you replace the card or create a new folder, the file numbering continues in sequence up to 9999. This is useful when you want to save images numbered anywhere between 0001 to 9999 on multiple cards or in multiple folders into one folder on a computer. If the replacement card or existing folder already contains images recorded previously, the file numbering of the new images may continue from the file numbering of the existing images on the card or in the folder. If you want to use continuous file numbering, it is recommended that you use a newly formatted card each time.

File numbering after replacing the card



(1) Next sequential file number

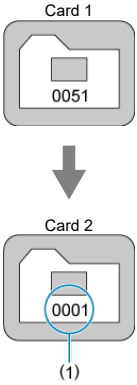
File numbering after creating a folder



For restarting file numbering from 0001 after switching cards or creating folders

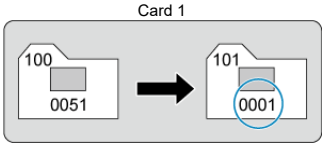
When you replace the card or create a folder, the file numbering restarts from 0001 for the new images saved. This is useful if you want to organize images by cards or folders.
If the replacement card or existing folder already contains images recorded previously, the file numbering of the new images may continue from the file numbering of the existing images on the card or in the folder. If you want to save images with the file numbering starting from 0001, use a newly formatted card each time.

File numbering after replacing the card



(1) File numbering is reset

File numbering after creating a folder



Manual Reset

For resetting file numbering to 0001 or starting from 0001 in new folders

When you reset the file numbering manually, a new folder is created automatically and the file numbering of images saved to that folder starts from 0001.
This is useful, for example, if you want to use different folders for the images taken yesterday and the ones taken today.

Card Formatting

If the card is new or was previously formatted (initialized) by another camera or computer, format the card with this camera.

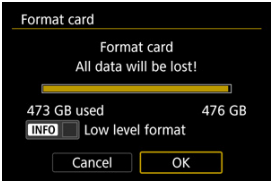
Caution

- **When the card is formatted, all images and data on the card will be erased. Even protected images will be erased, so make sure there is nothing you need to keep. If necessary, transfer the images and data to a computer, etc. before formatting the card.**

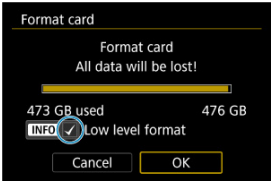
---

1. **Select [: Format card] ( ).**

2. **Format the card.**



- Select [**OK**].



- For low-level formatting, press the < INFO > button to add a checkmark [✓] to [**Low level format**], then select [**OK**].

Conditions requiring card formatting

- **The card is new.**
- **The card was formatted by a different camera or a computer.**
- **The card is full of images or data.**
- **A card-related error is displayed ( ).**

Low-level formatting

- Perform low-level formatting if the card's writing or reading speed seems slow or if you want to totally erase the data on the card.
- Since low-level formatting will format all recordable sectors on the card, the formatting will take longer than normal formatting.
- During low-level formatting, you can cancel formatting by selecting [**Cancel**]. Even in this case, normal formatting will already be complete and you can use the card as usual.

Card file formats

- SD cards will be formatted in FAT12 or FAT16, SDHC cards in FAT32, and SDXC cards in exFAT.
- Individual movies recorded to exFAT-formatted cards are recorded as a single file (without splitting them into multiple files) even if they exceed 4 GB, so the resulting movie file will exceed 4 GB.

Caution

- It may not be possible to use SDXC cards formatted with this camera in other cameras. Also note that exFAT-formatted cards may not be recognized by some computer operating systems or card readers.
- Formatting or erasing data on a card does not completely erase the data. Be aware of this when selling or discarding the card. When disposing of cards, take steps to protect personal information if necessary, as by physically destroying cards.

Note

- The card capacity displayed on the card format screen may be smaller than the capacity indicated on the card.
- This device incorporates exFAT technology licensed from Microsoft.

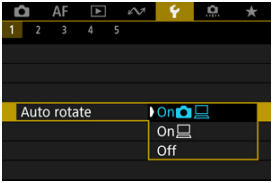
Auto Rotate



You can change the auto rotation setting that straightens images shot in vertical orientation when they are displayed.

1. **Select [: Auto rotate] ( ).**

2. **Select an option.**



- **On**
  Automatically rotates images for display on both the camera and computers.

- **On**
  Automatically rotates images only for display on computers.

- **Off**
  Images are not automatically rotated.

Caution

- Images captured with auto rotation set to [**Off**] will not rotate during playback even if you later set auto rotation to [**On**].

Note

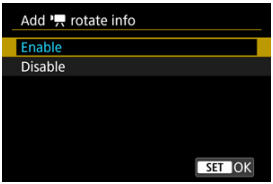
- If a picture is taken while the camera is aimed up or down, automatic rotation to the proper orientation for viewing may not be performed correctly.
- If images are not rotated automatically on a computer, try using EOS software.

Adding Orientation Information to Movies

For movies recorded with the camera held vertically, orientation information indicating which side is up can be added automatically to enable playback in the same orientation on smartphones or other devices.

1. **Select [: Add rotate info] ( ).**

2. **Select an option.**



- **Enable**
  Play movies on smartphones or other devices in the orientation in which they were recorded.

- **Disable**
  Play movies horizontally on smartphones or other devices, regardless of the recording orientation.

Caution

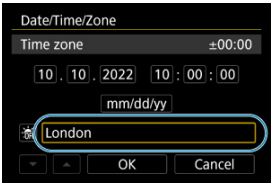
- Movies are played horizontally on the camera and via HDMI video output, regardless of this setting.

Date/Time/Zone

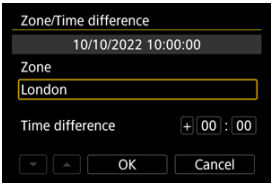
When you turn on the power for the first time or if the date/time/zone have been reset, follow these steps to set the time zone first.
By setting the time zone first, you can simply adjust this setting as needed in the future and the date/time will be updated to match it.
Since the captured images will be appended with the shooting date and time information, be sure to set your date/time.

1. **Select [: Date/Time/Zone] ( ).**

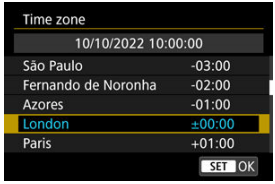
2. **Set the time zone.**



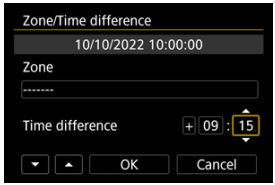
- Use the < > keys to select [**Time zone**], then press the < > button.



- Press the < > button.

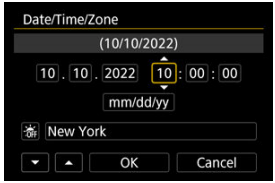


- Use the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to select the time zone, then press the < (SET) > button.
- If your time zone is not listed, press the < MENU > button, then set the difference from UTC in [**Time difference**].



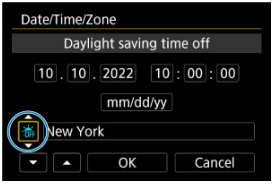
- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select a [**Time difference**] option (+–/ hour/minute), then press the < (SET) > button.
- Set with the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys, then press the < (SET) > button.
- After entering the time zone or time difference, select [**OK**].

3. Set the date and time.



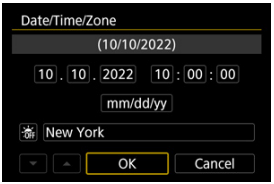
- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to select an item, then press the < (SET) > button.
- Set with the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys, then press the < (SET) > button.

4. **Set daylight saving time.**



- Set it as necessary.
- Select [☀OFF] or [☀], then press the < (SET) > button.
- When the daylight saving time is set to [☀], the time set in step 3 will advance by 1 hour. If [☀OFF] is set, the daylight saving time will be canceled and the time will go back by 1 hour.

5. **Exit the setting.**



- Select [**OK**].

Caution

- The date, time, and time zone settings may be reset when the camera is stored without the battery, when the battery is exhausted, or when it is exposed to freezing temperatures for an extended period. If this happens, set them once again.
- After changing [**Zone/Time difference**], check that the correct date/time are set.

Note

- Auto power off time may be extended while the [: **Date/Time/Zone**] screen is displayed.

Language

1. **Select [: Language] ( ).**

2. **Set the desired language.**

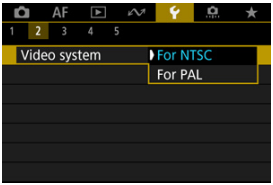


Video System

Set the video system of any television used for display. This setting determines the frame rates available when you record movies.

1. **Select [: Video system] ( ).**

2. **Select an option.**



- **For NTSC**
  For areas where the TV system is NTSC (North America, Japan, South Korea, Mexico, etc.).

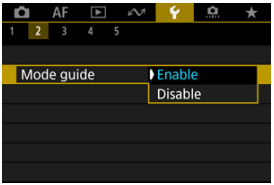
- **For PAL**
  For areas where the TV system is PAL (Europe, Russia, China, Australia, etc.).

Shooting Mode Guide

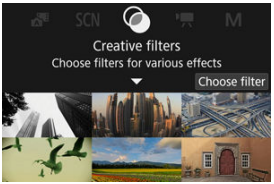
A brief description of the shooting mode can be displayed when you switch shooting modes. The default setting is [**Enable**].

1. **Select [: Mode guide] ( ).**

2. **Select [Enable].**

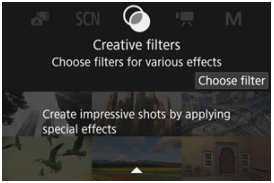


3. **Turn the Mode dial.**



- A description of the selected shooting mode will appear.

4. **Press the < ▼ > key.**



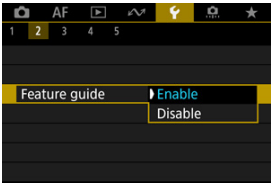
- The rest of the description will appear.
- To clear the mode guide, press the < Q > button.
- In < SCN >/< > mode, you can display the shooting mode selection screen.

Feature Guide

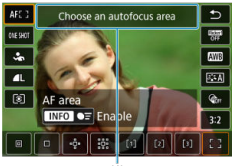
A brief description of functions and items can be displayed when you use Quick Control.

1. **Select [: Feature guide] ( ).**

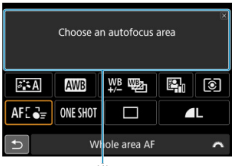
2. **Select an option.**



Sample screens



(1)



(1)

(1) Feature guide

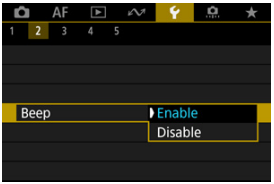
Note

- To clear a description, either tap it or continue performing operations.

Beeps

1. **Select [: Beep] ( ).**

2. **Select an option.**



- **Enable**
  The camera beeps after focusing and in response to touch operations.

- **Disable**
  Disables beeping for focusing, self-timer, shutter, and touch operations.

Note

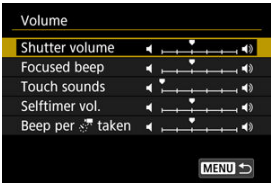
- By default, beeping volume for touch operations is set to [**0**] ( ).

Volume

The volume of camera sounds is adjustable.

1. **Select [: Volume] ( ).**

2. **Set the option.**



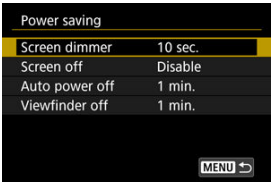
- Select an option, then use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to adjust the volume.

Power Saving

You can adjust the timing of when the screen dims and then turns off, when the camera turns off, and when the viewfinder turns off after the camera is left idle (Screen dimmer, Screen off, Auto power off, and Viewfinder off).

1. **Select [: Power saving] ( ).**

2. **Select an option.**



Note

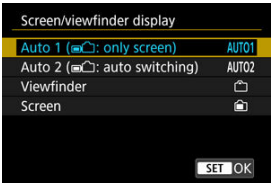
- [**Screen dimmer**] and [**Screen off**] apply while the shooting screen is displayed. These settings do not apply during menu display or image playback.
- The camera turns off during menu display or image playback after the time set in [**Screen dimmer**], [**Screen off**], and [**Auto power off**] elapses.
- To protect the screen, the screen turns off 30 min. after it is dimmed (although the camera itself remains on), even if [**Screen off**] and [**Auto power off**] are set to [**Disable**].
- [**Viewfinder off**] also applies while the screen is still on. After this time elapses, the viewfinder sensor is deactivated.
- Only [**Viewfinder off**] applies during viewfinder display. After this time elapses, the viewfinder sensor is deactivated and the viewfinder turns off.
- Images on the screen are displayed at a lower frame rate after the screen dims during still photo shooting standby.

Screen and Viewfinder Display

You can specify to use the screen or viewfinder for display, to avoid accidentally activating the viewfinder sensor when the screen is open.

1. **Select [: Screen/viewfinder display] ( ).**

2. **Select an option.**



- **AUTO1**: **Auto 1 (: only screen)**
  Always use the screen for display when it is open.
  Use the screen for display when it is closed and facing you, and switch to the viewfinder when you look through it.
- **AUTO2**: **Auto 2 (: auto switching)**
  Use the screen for display when it is closed and facing you, and switch to viewfinder display when you look through the viewfinder.
- : **Viewfinder**
  Always use the viewfinder for display.
- : **Screen**
  Always use the screen for display when it is open.

Note

- You can also switch between viewfinder and screen display by pressing a button you have customized by assigning to switching. With this setting set to [**AUTO1**] or [**AUTO2**], the camera responds to the viewfinder sensor accordingly.
- With [**AUTO1**] set, the camera does not respond to the viewfinder sensor when the screen is open.

Screen Brightness

1. **Select [: Screen brightness] ( ).**

2. **Make the adjustment.**



- Referring to the gray image, use the < ◀ >< ▶ > keys to adjust screen brightness, then press the < (SET) > button. Check the effect on the screen.

Note

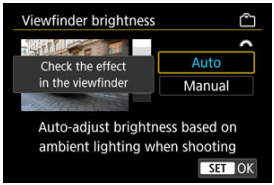
- To check the image's exposure, referring to the histogram is recommended ( ).

Viewfinder Brightness

1. **Select [: Viewfinder brightness] ( ).**

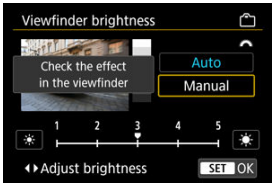
2. **Turn the < > dial and select either [Auto] or [Manual].**

Auto



- Press the < > button. Check the effect in the viewfinder while shooting.

Manual

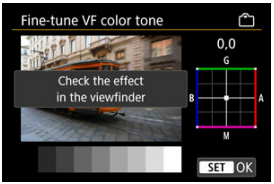


- Use the < ◀ >< ▶ > key to adjust viewfinder brightness, then press the < > button. Check the effect in the viewfinder.

Fine-Tuning Viewfinder Color Tone

1. **Select [: Fine-tune VF color tone] ( ).**

2. **Make the adjustment.**



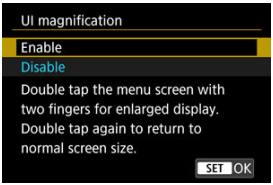
- Referring to the gray image, use the < > keys to adjust viewfinder color tone, then press the < > button. Check the effect in the viewfinder.

UI Magnification

You can magnify menu screens by double-tapping with two fingers. Double-tap again to restore the original display size.

1. **Select [: UI magnification] ( ).**

2. **Select [Enable].**



Caution

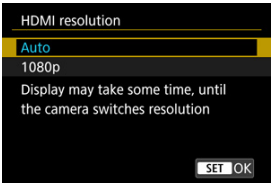
- Use camera controls when configuring menu functions with the display magnified. Touch-screen operations are not supported.

HDMI Resolution

Set the image output resolution used when the camera is connected to a television or external recording device with an HDMI cable.

1. **Select [: HDMI resolution] ( ).**

2. **Select an option.**



- **Auto**
  The images will automatically be displayed at the optimum resolution matching the connected television.

- **1080p**
  Output at 1080p resolution. Select if you prefer to avoid display or delay issues when the camera switches resolution.

Touch Control

1. **Select [: Touch control] ( ).**

2. **Select an option.**



- [**Sensitive**] makes the touch-screen panel more responsive than [**Standard**].
- To disable touch operations, select [**Disable**].

Caution

Precautions for touch-screen panel operations

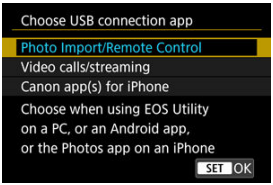
- Do not use sharp objects such as fingernails or ballpoint pens for touch operations.
- Do not use wet fingers for touch operations. If the screen has any moisture or if your fingers are wet, the touch-screen panel may not respond or malfunction may occur. In this case, turn off the power and wipe off the moisture with a cloth.
- Attaching a commercially available protective sheet or a sticker on the screen may impair responsiveness to touch operations.
- The camera may not respond as well if you quickly perform touch operation when [**Sensitive**] is set.

App Selection for USB Connections

By connecting the camera to a smartphone or computer with the interface cable, you can transfer images or import images to the smartphone or computer.

1. **Select [: Choose USB connection app] ( ).**

2. **Select an option.**



- **Photo Import/Remote Control**
  Select if you will use EOS Utility after connecting to a computer, or if you will use dedicated Android apps or the iOS version of Photos.

- **Video calls/streaming**
  Select if you will use UVC/UAC-compatible applications after connecting to a computer.
  After selecting [**Video calls/streaming**], use the interface cable to connect to the computer, then start the application.
  The resolution and frame rate of image output is 2K (1920×1080) at 30 fps.

- **Canon app(s) for iPhone**
  Select if you will use an iOS app.
  Connecting the camera to a smartphone requires a cable for this purpose. For details, refer to the Canon website.

Caution

- For [**Video calls/streaming**], consider using an optional household power outlet accessory when using the camera over extended periods.

Password Management

Use these settings to manage the password entered when the power switch is set to < ON > or the camera resumes operation from auto power off. For instructions on setting the password required on camera startup, see Setting a Password.

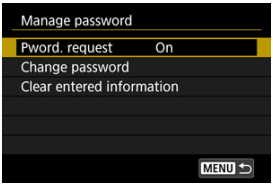
- Password Request
- Changing the Password
- Clearing Entered Information

Password Request

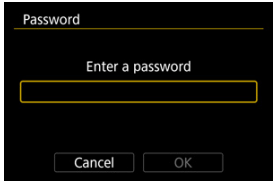
You can choose whether a password must be entered after the power switch is set to < ON > or the camera resumes operation from auto power off.

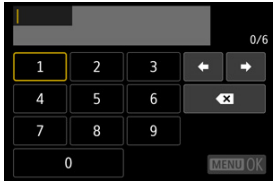
1. **Select [: Manage password] ( ).**

2. **Select [Pword. request].**

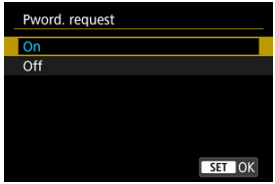


3. **Enter the password initially set.**





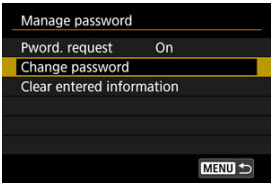
4. **Select an option.**



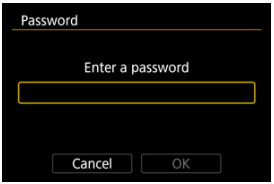
Changing the Password

You can change the password to enter when the power switch is set to < ON > or the camera resumes operation from auto power off.

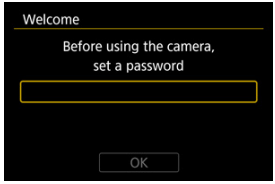
1. **Select [Change password].**

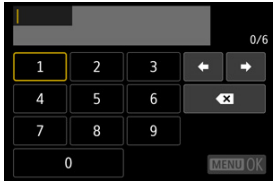


2. **Enter the password initially set.**



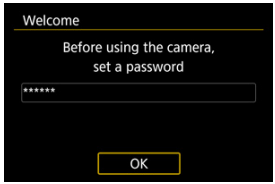
3. **Enter a new password.**



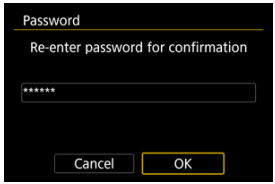


- Enter a six-digit number, then select [**OK**].

4. **Select [OK].**



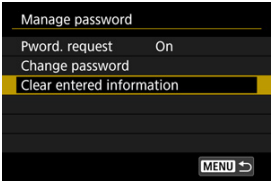
5. **Reenter the password, then select [OK].**



Clearing Entered Information

You can reset passwords and settings for shooting and menu functions to defaults.

1. **Select [Clear entered information].**



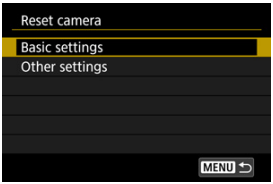
2. **Select [OK].**

Resetting the Camera ☆

The camera's settings for shooting functions and menu functions can be restored to their defaults.

1. **Select [: Reset camera] ( ).**

2. **Select an option.**



- **Basic settings**
  Restores default settings for camera shooting functions and menu settings.

- **Other settings**
  Settings for individual selected options can be reset.

3. **Clear the settings.**

- Select [**OK**] on the confirmation screen.

Caution

- Dots of light may appear in captured images or on the shooting screen if the sensor is affected by cosmic rays or similar factors. If so, it may help to reduce their appearance by doing one of the following with [**Basic settings**] selected: (1) Hold down the < ▶ > key and press the < MENU > button, or (2) Press the < ⊛ > button, then select [**OK**] (but note that (2) restores default camera settings).

Custom Shooting Mode (C Mode)

Automatic Update of Registered Settings

Canceling Registered Custom Shooting Modes

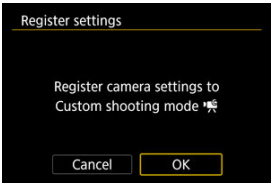
Current camera settings in [] or [] mode, such as shooting, menu, and Custom Function settings, can be registered in Custom shooting mode [].

1. **Select [: Custom shooting mode (C mode)] ().**

2. **Select [Register settings].**



3. **Register the desired items.**



- Select [**OK**].
- Current camera settings are registered to the Custom shooting mode.

Caution

- Depending on the menu items, setting options changed in other shooting modes may not be carried over to the Custom shooting mode settings.

Automatic Update of Registered Settings

If you change a setting while shooting in Custom shooting mode, the mode can be automatically updated with the new setting (Auto update). To enable this automatic update, set [**Auto update set.**] to [**Enable**] in step 2.

Canceling Registered Custom Shooting Modes

If you select [**Clear settings**] in step 2, the settings of each mode can be restored to default settings, as they were before registration.

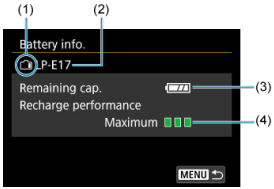
Note

- You can also change shooting and menu settings in Custom shooting modes.

Battery Information

You can check the conditions of the battery you are using on the screen.

1. **Select [: Battery info.] ( ).**



(1) Battery position

(2) Model of battery or household power source used

(3) Remaining battery level ( )

(4) Battery recharge performance, in three levels

■■■ (Green): Battery recharge performance is good.

■■□ (Green): Battery recharge performance is slightly degraded.

■□□ (Red): Purchasing a new battery is recommended.

Caution

- Using a genuine Canon Battery Pack LP-E17 is recommended. If you use batteries that are not genuine Canon products, the camera's full performance may not be attained or malfunction may result.

Note

- If a battery communication error message is displayed, follow the instructions in the message.

Copyright Information ☆

Checking the Copyright Information

Deleting the Copyright Information

When you set the copyright information, it will be recorded to the image as Exif information.

Caution

- If the entry for “Author” or “Copyright” is long, it may not be displayed entirely when you select [**Display copyright info.**].

Note

- You can also set or check copyright information with EOS Utility (EOS software,).

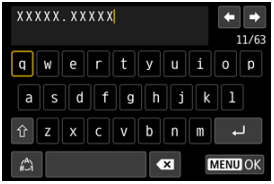
---

1. **Select [: Copyright information] ( ).**

2. **Select an option.**



3. **Enter text.**

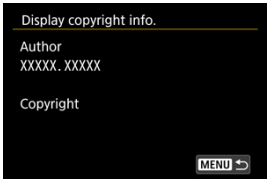


- Use the < ✣ > keys to select a character, then press the < (SET) > button to enter it.
- By selecting [#△], you can change the input mode.
- Select [⌫] to delete a character.

4. **Exit the setting.**

- Press the < MENU > button, then press [**OK**].

Checking the Copyright Information



When you select [**Display copyright info.**] in step 2, you can check the [**Author**] and [**Copyright**] information that you entered.

Deleting the Copyright Information

When you select [**Delete copyright information**] in step 2, you can delete the [**Author**] and [**Copyright**] information.

Other Information

Show log

Select [: **Show log**] to display a record of any changes to the password, to network information, or to other settings.

Manual/software URL

To download instruction manuals, select [: **Manual/software URL**] and scan the displayed QR code with a smartphone. You can also use a computer to access the website at the URL displayed and download software.

Certification Logo Display ☆

Select [: **Certification Logo Display**] to display some of the logos of the camera's certifications. Other certification logos can be found on the camera body and packaging.

Firmware

Used to update the firmware of the camera, lens, or other compatible accessories in use.
An asterisk after the icon and [: **Firmware**] when online features such as [**Upload to image.canon**] are set and the camera can connect to the internet indicates that new firmware is available on Canon servers. To update the firmware, select [: **Firmware**] and follow the on-screen instructions. The asterisk is cleared when [**Wi-Fi**] in [: **Wi-Fi settings**] is set to [**Disable**], or if you connect a different device.
You can also update the camera firmware from Camera Connect ( ).

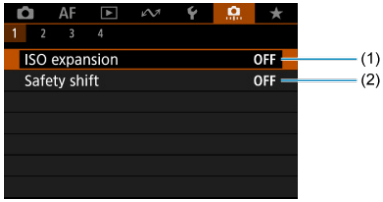
Custom Functions/My Menu

You can fine-tune camera functions and change the functionality of buttons and dials to suit your shooting preferences. You can also add menu items and Custom Functions that you adjust frequently to My Menu tabs.

- Tab Menus: Custom Functions
- Custom Function Setting Items
- Tab Menus: My Menu
- Registering My Menu

Tab Menus: Custom Functions

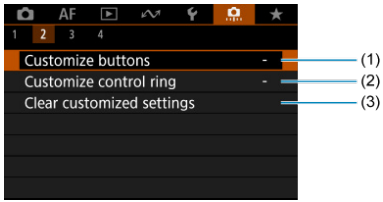
Custom Functions 1



(1) ISO expansion

(2) Safety shift

Custom Functions 2

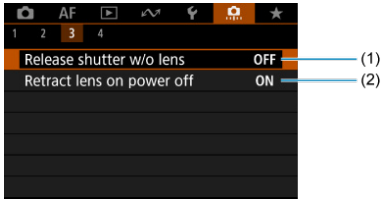


(1) Customize buttons

(2) Customize control ring

(3) Clear customized settings

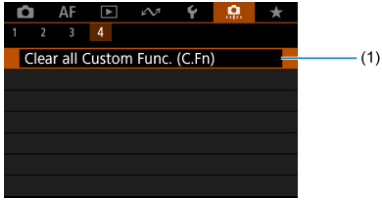
Custom Functions 3



(1) Release shutter w/o lens

(2) Retract lens on power off

Custom Functions 4



(1) Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)

Selecting [: **Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)**] clears all Custom Function settings.

Custom Function Setting Items

C.Fn1

C.Fn2

C.Fn3

C.Fn4

You can customize camera features on the [ ] tab to suit your shooting preferences. Any settings you change from default values are displayed in blue.

C.Fn1

ISO expansion

Makes “H” (equivalent to ISO 51200 in still photo shooting and ISO 25600 in movie recording) available as an ISO speed in manual selection. Note that “H” is not available with [: **Highlight tone priority**] set to [**Enable**] or [**Enhanced**].

- **OFF: Disable**
- **ON: Enable**

Safety shift

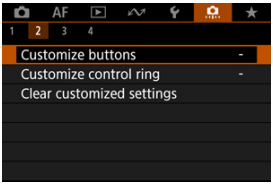
You can shoot with the shutter speed and aperture value automatically adjusted to enable standard exposure if standard exposure would not be available under your specified shutter speed or aperture value in <**Tv**> or <**Av**> mode.

- **OFF: Disable**
- **ON: Enable**

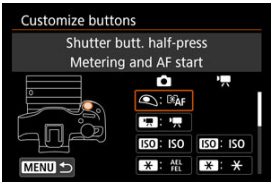
Customize buttons

You can assign frequently used functions to camera buttons that are easy for you to use. Different functions, for use when shooting still photos or movies, can be assigned to the same button.

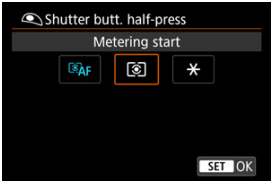
1. **Select [: Customize buttons].**



2. **Select a camera control.**



3. **Select a function to assign.**



- Press the <(SET)> button to set it.
- You can configure advanced settings for functions labeled with [INFO **Detail set.**] in the lower left of the screen by pressing the <INFO> button.

Note

- [: **Customize buttons**] settings are not cleared even if you select [: **Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)**]. To clear the settings, select [: **Clear customized settings**].

Functions available for customization

AF

●: Default ○: Available for customization

AF: Metering and AF start									
●	-	-	○	-	-	-	-	○	-
AF-OFF: AF stop									
-	-	-	○	-	-	-	-	●	-
: Set AF point to center									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Start/stop whole area AF tracking									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
ONE SHOT SERVO: One-Shot AF ⇄ Servo AF*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
AF □: AF area									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	-	-
: Eye detection									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Spot detection									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
AF MF: Focus mode									
-	○	○	-	○	●	○	○	○	-
PEAK: Peaking									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Drive mode*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	●	○	○	-

* 1: Cannot be assigned as a function available in movie recording.

Exposure

●: Default ○: Available for customization

Metering start*1									
○	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
AE lock									
-	-	-	●*3	-	-	-	-	○	-
AE lock (while button pressed)*1									
○	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
AEL FEL: AE lock/FE lock*1									
-	-	-	●*2	-	-	-	-	○	-
Exposure compensation									
-	○	○	-	●	○	○	○	○	-
ISO: ISO speed									
-	○	●	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
Metering mode*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
Flash firing*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
ETTL↔M: ETTL ⇄ M*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
FEL: FE lock*1									
-	-	-	○	-	-	-	-	○	-

* 1: Cannot be assigned as a function available in movie recording.
* 2: Default in still photo shooting.
* 3: Default in movie recording.

Image

●: Default ○: Available for customization

: Image quality*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: One-touch image quality setting*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
H: One-touch image quality (hold)*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Still img aspect ratio*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Digital tele-conv*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Auto Lighting Optimizer									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
WB: White balance									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Picture Style									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Protect									
-	○	○	-	-	-	-	-	○	-
: Rating									
-	○	○	-	-	-	-	-	○	-
: Select folder									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-

* 1: Cannot be assigned as a function available in movie recording.

Movies

●: Default ○: Available for customization

: Movie recording									
-	●	○	-	-	-	-	-	○	-
: Zebra*4									
-	-	-	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Pause Movie Servo AF*4									
-	-	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Digital zoom*4									
-	-	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Movie self-timer*4									
-	-	○	-	○	○	●*3	○	○	-
: Standby: Low res.*4									
-	-	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-

* 3: Default in movie recording.
* 4: Cannot be assigned as a function available in still photo shooting.

●: Default ○: Available for customization

: Flash function settings*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	●
: Quick flash group control*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	○
: Depth-of-field preview*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Quick Control screen									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Magnify/Reduce									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Image replay									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Magnify images during playback									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
MENU: Menu display									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Touch Shutter*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Create folder*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
OVF V.A: OVF sim. view assist*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Disp. performance*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Maximize screen brightness (temp)									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-

: Power off									
-	○	○	-	-	-	-	-	○	-
: Screen off									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Silent shutter function*1									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Switch focus/control ring									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Switch between VF/screen									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
: Wi-Fi/Bluetooth connection									
-	○	○	-	○	○	○	○	○	-
OFF: No function (disabled)									
-	○	○	○	○	○	○	•	○	○

* 1: Cannot be assigned as a function available in movie recording.

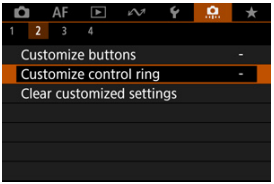
Note

- [L-Fn]: “AF Stop” or “Lens Function” button on super telephoto lenses with Image Stabilizer.
- [ ]: “Menu direct” button on Speedlites.

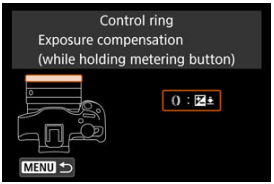
Customize control ring

Frequently used functions can be assigned to the < > ring.

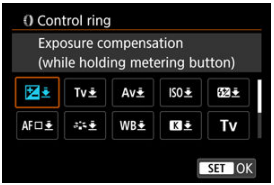
1. **Select [: Customize control ring].**



2. **Select a camera control.**



3. **Select a function to assign.**



- Press the < > button to set it.

Note

- [: **Customize control ring**] settings are not cleared even if you select [: **Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)**]. To clear the settings, select [: **Clear customized settings**].

Functions available for the control ring

●: Default ○: Available for customization

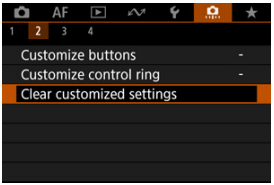
	Function	
AF□	Select AF area	○
AF□	Select AF area (while holding metering button)	○
Tv	Change shutter speed	○
Av	Change aperture value	○
	Exposure compensation	○
ISO	Set ISO speed	○
Tv	Change shutter spd. (hold meter. btn)	○
Av	Change aperture (hold meter. btn)	○
	Exposure comp. (hold meter. btn)	●
ISO	Set ISO speed (hold meter. btn)	○
	Flash exposure comp./output (while holding metering button)	○
WB	White balance selection	○
K	Select color temperature	○
	Picture Style	○
WB	White balance selection (while holding metering button)	○
K	Select color temperature (while holding metering button)	○
	Picture Style (while holding metering button)	○
OFF	No function (disabled)	○

Note

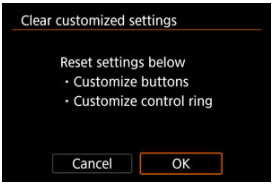
- <>: Control ring on RF lenses and mount adapters.

Clear customized settings

1. **Select [: Clear customized settings].**



2. **Select [OK].**



- [**Customize buttons**] and [**Customize control ring**] are restored to defaults.

C.Fn3

Release shutter w/o lens

You can specify whether shooting still photos or movies is possible without a lens attached.

- **OFF: Disable**
- **ON: Enable**

Retract lens on power off

You can set whether to retract gear-type STM lenses (such as RF35mm F1.8 Macro IS STM) automatically when the camera's power switch is set to < OFF >.

- **ON: Enable**
- **OFF: Disable**

Caution

- With auto power off, the lens will not retract regardless of the setting.
- Before detaching the lens, make sure that it is retracted.

Note

- When [**Enable**] is set, this function takes effect regardless of the setting of the focus mode switch (AF or MF) on the camera or lens.

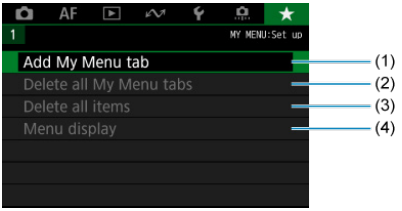
Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)

Selecting [: **Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)**] clears all Custom Function settings except [**Customize buttons**] and [**Customize control ring**].

Note

- To clear settings configured with [: **Customize buttons**] and [: **Customize control ring**], select [: **Clear customized settings**].

Tab Menus: My Menu



(1) Add My Menu tab

(2) Delete all My Menu tabs

(3) Delete all items

(4) Menu display

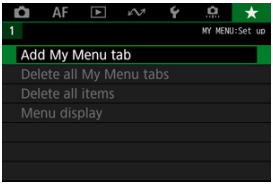
Registering My Menu

- Creating and Adding My Menu Tabs
- Registering Menu Items on My Menu Tabs
- My Menu Tab Settings
- Deleting All My Menu Tabs/Deleting All Items
- Menu Display Settings

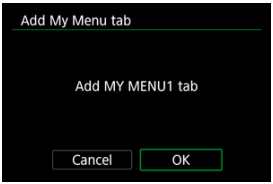
On the My Menu tab, you can register menu items and Custom Functions you often adjust.

Creating and Adding My Menu Tabs

1. **Select [Add My Menu tab].**



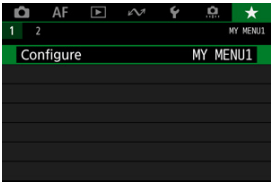
2. **Select [OK].**



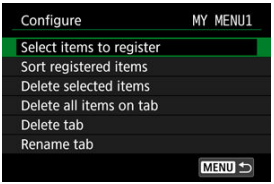
- You can create up to five My Menu tabs by repeating steps 1 and 2.

Registering Menu Items on My Menu Tabs

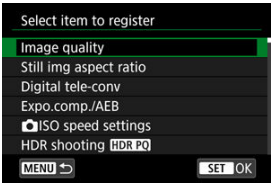
1. **Select [MY MENU*: Configure].**



2. **Select [Select items to register].**

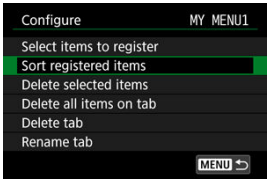


3. **Register the desired items.**



- Select an item, then press the < (SET) > button.
- Select [**OK**] on the confirmation screen.
- You can register up to six items.
- To return to the screen in step 2, press the < MENU > button.

My Menu Tab Settings



You can sort and delete items on the menu tab, and rename or delete the menu tab itself.

- **Sort registered items**
  You can change the order of the registered items in My Menu. Select [**Sort registered items**], select an item to rearrange, then press the < (SET) > button. With [⬍] displayed, press the < ▲ >< ▼ > keys to rearrange the item, then press the < (SET) > button.

- **Delete selected items/Delete all items on tab**
  You can delete any of the registered items. [**Delete selected items**] deletes one item at a time, and [**Delete all items on tab**] deletes all the registered items on the tab.

- **Delete tab**
  You can delete the current My Menu tab. Select [**Delete tab**] to delete the [**MY MENU***] tab.

- **Rename tab**
  You can rename the My Menu tab from [**MY MENU***].

1. **Select [Rename tab].**

2. **Enter text.**

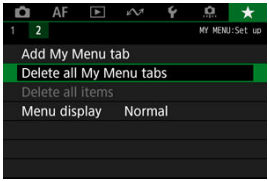


- Use the < ✣ > keys to select a character, then press the < (SET) > button to enter it.
- By selecting [#], you can change the input mode.
- Select [⌫] to delete a character.

3. **Confirm input.**

- Press the < MENU > button, then select [**OK**].

Deleting All My Menu Tabs/Deleting All Items



You can delete all the created My Menu tabs or My Menu items registered on them.

- **Delete all My Menu tabs**

  You can delete all My Menu tabs you created. When you select [**Delete all My Menu tabs**], all the tabs from [**MY MENU1**] to [**MY MENU5**] will be deleted and the [★] tab will revert to its default.

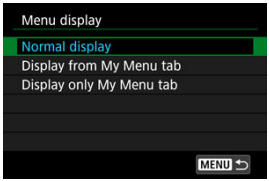
- **Delete all items**

  You can delete all the items registered under the [**MY MENU1**] to [**MY MENU5**] tabs. The tabs themselves will remain.

Caution

- Performing [**Delete tab**] or [**Delete all My Menu tabs**] will also delete tab names renamed with [**Rename tab**].

Menu Display Settings



You can select [**Menu display**] to set the menu screen that is to appear first when you press the < MENU > button.

- **Normal display**
  Displays the last displayed menu screen.
- **Display from My Menu tab**
  Displays with the [★] tab selected.
- **Display only My Menu tab**
  Restricts display to the [★] tab ([📷]/[AF]/[▶]/[✎]/[🔧]/[⚙] tabs are not displayed).

Reference

This chapter provides reference information on camera features.

- Importing Images to a Computer
- Importing Images to a Smartphone
- Using a USB Power Adapter to Charge/Power the Camera
- Troubleshooting Guide
- Error Codes
- ISO Speed in Movie Recording
- Information Display
- Specifications

Importing Images to a Computer

Connecting to a Computer with an Interface Cable

Using a Card Reader

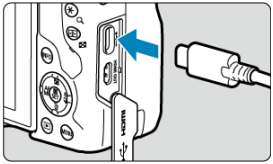
Connecting to a Computer via Wi-Fi

You can use EOS software to import images from the camera to a computer.

Connecting to a Computer with an Interface Cable

1. **Install EOS Utility ( ).**

2. **Connect the camera to the computer.**



- Use an interface cable.
- Connect the other end to a USB port on the computer.

3. **Use EOS Utility to import the images.**

- Refer to the EOS Utility Instruction Manual.

Caution

- With a Wi-Fi connection established, the camera cannot communicate with the computer even if they are connected with an interface cable.

Using a Card Reader

You can use a card reader to import images to a computer.

1. **Install Digital Photo Professional ( ).**

2. **Insert the card into the card reader.**

3. **Use Digital Photo Professional to import the images.**

   - Refer to the Digital Photo Professional Instruction Manual.

Note

- When downloading images from the camera to a computer with a card reader without using EOS software, copy the DCIM folder on the card to the computer.

Connecting to a Computer via Wi-Fi

You can connect the camera to the computer via Wi-Fi and import images to the computer ( ).

Importing Images to a Smartphone

- Preparation
- Using Camera Connect
- Using Smartphone Features

You can import images captured with the camera to a smartphone by connecting the smartphone to the camera with Multi-Function Shoe Adapter for Smartphone Link AD-P1 (sold separately, for Android smartphones only) or a USB cable.

Preparation

1. **Select an option in [: Choose USB connection app] ( ).**

   - Select [**Photo Import/Remote Control**] when connecting an Android smartphone, or when connecting an iPhone and using the Photos app.
   - Select [**Canon app(s) for iPhone**] when connecting an iPhone and using Camera Connect.
   - After the settings are complete, turn the camera off.

2. **Connect the camera to the smartphone with AD-P1 or a USB cable.**

   - When using AD-P1, refer to the instruction manual included with AD-P1.
   - Use of a Canon USB cable (Interface Cable IFC-100U or IFC-400U) is recommended when connecting Android smartphones.
   - For details on USB cables used to connect iPhones, visit the Canon website.

Using Camera Connect

1. **Install Camera Connect on the smartphone and start it.**

   - For details on installing Camera Connect, see “Installing Camera Connect on a Smartphone” ( ).

2. **Turn the camera on.**

3. **Tap [Images on camera].**

   - Select images displayed to import them to the smartphone.

1. **Turn the camera on.**

2. **Use the smartphone to import images.**

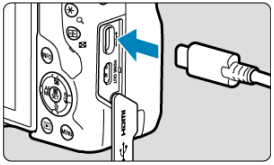
   - Android smartphones: In the [**Files**] menu, select [**Canon Digital Camera *****], then import images in the DCIM folder.
   - iPhones: Start the Photos app, then import images from the card.

Using a USB Power Adapter to Charge/Power the Camera

Using USB Power Adapter PD-E1 (sold separately), you can charge Battery Pack LP-E17 without removing it from the camera. The camera can also be powered.

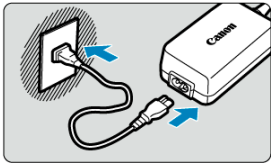
Charging

1. **Connect the USB power adapter.**

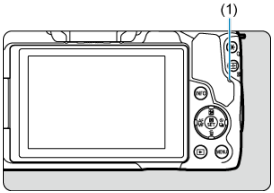


- With the camera power switch set to < OFF >, insert the USB power adapter plug fully into the digital terminal.

2. **Connect the power cord.**



- Connect the power cord to the USB power adapter and plug the other end into a power outlet.
- Charging begins, and the access lamp (1) is lit in green.



- When charging is finished, the access lamp turns off.

Supplying power

To power the camera without charging batteries, set the camera power switch to <ON>.
However, batteries are charged during auto power off.
The battery level indicator is gray when power is supplied.
To change from powering the camera to charging, set the camera power switch to <OFF>.

Caution

- The camera cannot be powered unless a battery pack is in it.
- When batteries are depleted, the adapter charges them. In this case, power is not supplied to the camera.
- To protect the battery pack and keep it in optimal condition, do not charge it continuously for more than 24 hours.
- If the charging lamp fails to light up or a problem occurs during charging (shown by the access lamp blinking in green), unplug the power cord, reinsert the battery, and wait a few minutes before plugging it in again. If the problem persists, take the camera to the nearest Canon Service Center.
- The charging time required and the amount charged vary depending on ambient temperature and remaining capacity.
- For safety, charging in low temperatures takes longer.
- The remaining battery level may decline when power is supplied to the camera. To avoid running out of battery power, use a fully charged battery when shooting at regular intervals.
- Before disconnecting USB power adapters, set the camera power switch to <OFF>.

Troubleshooting Guide

- Power-related problems
- Shooting-related problems
- Problems with wireless features
- Operation problems
- Display problems
- Playback problems
- Computer connection problems
- Problems with the multi-function shoe

If a problem occurs with the camera, first refer to this Troubleshooting Guide. If this Troubleshooting Guide does not resolve the problem, take the camera to the nearest Canon Service Center.

Power-related problems

Batteries cannot be charged with the battery charger.

- Do not use any battery packs other than a genuine Canon Battery Pack LP-E17.
- In case of charging or charger issues, see Charging the Battery.

The battery charger lamp is blinking.

- Orange blinking of the lamp indicates that a protection circuit has prevented charging because (1) there is a problem with the battery charger or battery, or (2) communication with a non-Canon battery has failed. In the case of (1), unplug the charger, reinsert the battery, and wait a few minutes before plugging the charger in again. If the problem persists, take the camera to the nearest Canon Service Center.

Batteries cannot be charged with the USB power adapter (sold separately).

- Batteries are not charged while the camera power switch is set to <ON>. However, batteries are charged during auto power off.
- Operating the camera will stop charging in progress.

The access lamp blinks during charging with the USB power adapter.

- In case of charging problems, the access lamp blinks in green and a protective circuit stops charging. In this case, unplug the power cord, reattach the battery, and wait a few minutes before plugging it in again. If the problem persists, take the camera to the nearest Canon Service Center.
- If batteries are hot or cold, the access lamp blinks in green and a protective circuit stops charging. In this case, let the battery adjust to the ambient temperature before attempting to charge it again.

The access lamp is not lit during charging with the USB power adapter.

- Try unplugging the USB power adapter and plugging it in again.

The camera cannot be powered with the USB power adapter.

- Check the battery compartment. The camera cannot be powered without a battery pack.
- Check the remaining battery level. When batteries are depleted, the adapter charges them. In this case, power is not supplied to the camera.

The camera is not activated even when the power switch is set to <ON>.

- Make sure the battery is inserted properly in the camera ( ).
- Make sure the card/battery compartment cover is closed ( ).
- Charge the battery ( ).

The access lamp still lights or blinks even when the power switch is set to <OFF>.

- If the power is turned off while an image is being recorded to the card, the access lamp will remain on or continue to blink for a few seconds. When the image recording is complete, the power will turn off automatically.

[Battery communication error. Does this battery/do these batteries display the Canon logo?] is displayed.

- Do not use any battery packs other than a genuine Canon Battery Pack LP-E17.
- Remove and install the battery again ( ).
- If the electrical contacts are dirty, use a soft cloth to clean them.

The battery becomes exhausted quickly.

- Use a fully charged battery ( ).
- The battery performance may have degraded. See [: **Battery info.**] to check the battery recharge performance level ( ). If the battery performance is poor, replace the battery with a new one.
- The number of available shots will decrease with any of the following operations:
  - Pressing the shutter button halfway for a prolonged period
  - Activating the AF frequently without taking a picture
  - Using the lens's Image Stabilizer
  - Using the wireless communication functions

The camera turns off by itself.

- Auto power off is in effect. To deactivate auto power off, set [**Auto power off**] in [: **Power saving**] to [**Disable**] ( ).
- Even if [**Auto power off**] is set to [**Disable**], the screen and viewfinder will still turn off after the camera is left idle for the time set in [**Screen off**] or [**Viewfinder off**] (although the camera itself remains on).

Shooting-related problems

The lens cannot be attached.

- To attach EF or EF-S lenses, you will need a mount adapter. The camera cannot be used with EF-M lenses ( ).

No images can be shot or recorded.

- Make sure the card is properly inserted ( ).
- Slide the card's write-protect switch to the Write/Erase setting ( ).
- If the card is full, replace the card or delete unnecessary images to make space (,).
- Shooting is not possible if the AF point turns orange when you attempt to focus. Press the shutter button halfway again to refocus automatically, or focus manually (,).

The card cannot be used.

- If a card error message is displayed, see Inserting/Removing the Battery and Card and Error Codes.

An error message is displayed when the card is inserted in another camera.

- Since SDXC cards are formatted in exFAT, if you format a card with this camera and then insert it into another camera, an error may be displayed and it may not be possible to use the card.

The image is out of focus or blurred.

- Set the focus mode to [**AF**] ( ).
- Press the shutter button gently to prevent camera shake ( ).
- With a lens equipped with an Image Stabilizer, set the Image Stabilizer switch to <ON>.
- In low light, the shutter speed may become slow. Use a faster shutter speed ( ), set a higher ISO speed ( ), use flash ( ), or use a tripod.
- See Minimizing blurred photos.

I cannot lock the focus and recompose the shot.

- Set the AF operation to One-Shot AF ( ). Shooting with the focus locked is not possible with Servo AF ( ).

The continuous shooting speed is slow.

- High-speed continuous shooting may be slower depending on the battery level, ambient temperature, flickering light, shutter speed, aperture value, subject conditions, brightness, AF operation, type of lens, use of flash, shooting settings, and other conditions. For details, see Selecting the Drive Mode or Maximum burst for continuous shooting [Approx.].

The maximum burst during continuous shooting is lower.

- Shooting intricate subjects such as fields of grass may result in larger file sizes, and the actual maximum burst may be lower than the guidelines in Maximum burst for continuous shooting [Approx.].

Even after I change the card, the maximum burst displayed for continuous shooting does not change.

- Estimated maximum burst indicated in the viewfinder does not change when you switch cards, even if you switch to a high-speed card. Maximum burst listed in Maximum burst for continuous shooting [Approx.] is based on the standard Canon test card, and the actual maximum burst is higher for cards with faster writing speeds. For this reason, estimated maximum burst may differ from actual maximum burst.

High-speed display is not available during high-speed continuous shooting.

- Refer to the high-speed display requirements in High-Speed Display.

ISO 100 cannot be set for still photo shooting.

- The minimum speed in the ISO speed range is ISO 200 when [: **Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**] or [**Enhanced**].

Expanded ISO speeds cannot be selected for still photo shooting.

- Set [: **ISO expansion**] to [**Enable**] ( ).
- Check the [**ISO speed**] setting in [: **ISO speed settings**].
- Expanded ISO speeds (H) are not available when [: **Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**] or [**Enhanced**], even with [: **ISO expansion**] set to [**Enable**].

Even if I set a decreased exposure compensation, the image comes out bright.

- Set [: **Auto Lighting Optimizer**] to [**Disable**] ( ). When [**Low**], [**Standard**], or [**High**] is set, even if you set a decreased exposure compensation or flash exposure compensation, the image may come out bright.

I cannot set the exposure compensation when both manual exposure and ISO Auto are set.

- See M: Manual Exposure to set the exposure compensation.

Not all the lens aberration correction options are displayed.

- With [**Digital Lens Optimizer**] set to [**Standard**] or [**High**], [**Chromatic aberr corr**] and [**Diffraction correction**] are not displayed, but they are both set to [**Enable**] for shooting.
- During movie recording, [**Digital Lens Optimizer**] or [**Diffraction correction**] are not displayed.

Using flash in <Av> or <P> mode lowers the shutter speed.

- Set [**Slow synchro**] in [: **Flash control**] to [**1/250-1/60sec. auto**] or [**1/250 sec. (fixed)**] ( ).

The built-in flash does not fire.

- Shooting with the flash may be temporarily disabled to protect the flash head if the built-in flash is used repeatedly over a short period.

The external Speedlite does not fire.

- Make sure any external flash units are securely attached to the camera.

The Speedlite always fires at full output.

- Flash units other than EL/EX series Speedlites used in autoflash mode always fire at full output ( ).
- The flash always fires at full output when [**Flash metering mode**] in external flash Custom Function settings is set to [**1:TTL**] (autoflash) ( ).

External flash exposure compensation cannot be set.

- If flash exposure compensation is set with the external Speedlite, compensation amount cannot be set with the camera. When the Speedlite's flash exposure compensation is canceled (set to 0), flash exposure compensation can be set with the camera.

High-speed sync is not available in <Av> mode.

- Set [**Slow synchro**] in [: **Flash control**] to an option other than [**1/250 sec. (fixed)**] ( ).

Remote control shooting is not possible.

- Check the position of the remote control's release timing switch.
- If you are using Wireless Remote Control BR-E1, see Remote Control Shooting or Connecting to a Wireless Remote Control.
- To use a remote control for time-lapse movie recording, see Time-Lapse Movies.

A white [ ] or red [ ] icon is displayed during movie recording.

- Indicates that the camera's internal temperature is high. For details, see the information on warning indicator display in movie recording ( ).

Movie recording stops by itself.

- If the card's writing speed is slow, movie recording may stop automatically. For details on cards that can record movies, see Card performance requirements. To find out the card's writing speed, refer to the card manufacturer's website, etc.
- Perform low-level formatting to initialize the card if the card's writing or reading speed seems slow ( ).
- Recording stops automatically once your movie reaches 1 hr. (or 15 min. for a High Frame Rate movie).

The ISO speed cannot be set for movie recording.

- ISO speed is set automatically in [ ] recording mode. In [M] mode, you can manually set the ISO speed ( ).
- The minimum speed in the ISO speed range is ISO 200 when [: **Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**] or [**Enhanced**].

Expanded ISO speeds cannot be selected for movie recording.

- Set [: **ISO expansion**] to [**Enable**] ( ).
- Check the [**ISO speed**] setting in [: **ISO speed settings**].
- Expanded ISO speeds are not available when [: **Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**] or [**Enhanced**].

The exposure changes during movie recording.

- If you change the shutter speed or aperture value during movie recording, the changes in the exposure may be recorded.
- Recording a few test movies is recommended if you intend to perform zooming during movie recording. Zooming as you record movies may cause exposure changes or lens sounds to be recorded, or loss of focus.

The image flickers or horizontal stripes appear during movie recording.

- Flickering, horizontal stripes (noise), or irregular exposures can be caused by fluorescent lighting, LED lighting, or other light sources during movie recording. Also, changes in the exposure (brightness) or color tone may be recorded. In [M] mode, using a slower shutter speed may reduce the problem. The problem may be more noticeable in time-lapse movie recording.

The subject looks distorted during movie recording.

- If you move the camera to the left or right (panning) or shoot a moving subject, the image may look distorted. The problem may be more noticeable in time-lapse movie recording.

Sound is not recorded in movies.

- Sound is not recorded in High Frame Rate movies.

A time code is not added.

- Time codes are not added when you record High Frame Rate movies with [**Count up**] in [**: Time code**] set to [**Free run**] ( ). Additionally, no time code is added to HDMI video output ( ).

Time codes advance faster than the actual time.

- Time codes in High Frame Rate movie recording advance 4 sec. per second ( ).

I cannot take still photos during movie recording.

- Still photos cannot be taken during movie recording. To shoot still photos, stop recording the movie, then select a shooting mode for still photos.

I cannot record movies during still photo shooting.

- It may not be possible to record movies during still photo shooting if operations such as extended Live View display increase the camera's internal temperature. Turn off the camera or take other measures, and wait until the camera cools down.
- Reducing the movie recording size may enable recording.

Problems with wireless features

Cannot pair with a smartphone.

- Use a smartphone compliant with Bluetooth Specification Version 4.1 or later.
- Turn on Bluetooth from the smartphone settings screen.
- Pairing with the camera is not possible from the smartphone's Bluetooth settings screen. Install the dedicated app Camera Connect (free of charge) on the smartphone ( ).
- Pairing with a previously paired smartphone is not possible if pairing information registered for another camera remains on the smartphone. In this case, remove the camera's registration retained in the Bluetooth settings on the smartphone and try pairing again ( ).

Wi-Fi functions cannot be set.

- If the camera is connected to a computer or another device with an interface cable, Wi-Fi functions cannot be set. Disconnect the interface cable before setting any functions ( ).

A device connected with an interface cable cannot be used.

- Other devices, such as computers, cannot be used with the camera by connecting them with an interface cable while the camera is connected to devices via Wi-Fi. Terminate the Wi-Fi connection before connecting the interface cable.

Operations such as shooting and playback are not possible.

- With a Wi-Fi connection established, operations such as shooting and playback may not be possible. Terminate the Wi-Fi connection, then perform the operation.

Cannot reconnect to a smartphone.

- Even with a combination of the same camera and smartphone, if you have changed the settings or selected a different setting, reconnection may not be established even after selecting the same SSID. In this case, delete the camera connection settings from the Wi-Fi settings on the smartphone and set up a connection again.
- A connection may not be established if Camera Connect is running when you reconfigure connection settings. In this case, quit Camera Connect for a moment and then restart it.

Cannot connect via Wi-Fi to a Wi-Fi printer.

- Update the printer firmware.
- Connect using the printer as an access point.
- On the camera, set [**Security**] to [**WPA2**] ( ).

Operation problems

Settings change when I switch from still photo shooting to movie recording or vice versa.

- Separate settings are retained for use when shooting still photos and recording movies.

Touch operation is not possible.

- Make sure [: **Touch control**] is set to [**Standard**] or [**Sensitive**] ( ).

A camera button or dial does not work as expected.

- In movie recording, check the [: **Shutter btn function for movies**] setting ( ).
- Check the [: **Customize buttons**] and [: **Customize control ring**] settings (,).

Display problems

The menu screen shows fewer tabs and items.

- Tabs and items on the menu screen vary for still photos and movies.

The display starts with [★] My Menu, or the [★] tab alone is displayed.

- [**Menu display**] on the [★] tab is set to [**Display from My Menu tab**] or [**Display only My Menu tab**]. Set [**Normal display**] (🔗).

The file name's first character is an underscore (“_”).

- Set [📷: **Color space**] to [**sRGB**]. If [**Adobe RGB**] is set, the first character will be an underscore (🔗).

The file numbering does not start from 0001.

- If the card already contains recorded images, the image number may not start from 0001 (🔗).

The shooting date and time displayed are incorrect.

- Make sure the correct date and time are set (🔗).
- Check the time zone and daylight saving time (🔗).

The date and time are not in the image.

- The shooting date and time do not appear in the image. The date and time are recorded in the image data as shooting information. When you print photos, this information can be used to include the date and time (🔗).

[###] is displayed.

- If the number of images recorded on the card exceeds the number the camera can display, [**###**] will be displayed.

The screen does not display a clear image.

- If the screen is dirty, use a soft cloth to clean it.
- The screen display may seem slightly slow in low temperatures or may look black in high temperatures, but it will return to normal at room temperature.

Playback problems

A red box is displayed on the image.

- [▶: **AF point disp.**] is set to [**Enable**] ( ).

During image playback, the AF points are not displayed.

- AF points are not displayed when the following types of images are played back:
  - Images taken with Multi Shot Noise Reduction applied.
  - Cropped images.
  - Images from HDR shooting with [**Auto Image Align**] set to [**Enable**].

The image cannot be erased.

- If the image is protected, it cannot be erased ( ).

Still photos and movies cannot be played back.

- The camera may not be able to play back images taken with another camera.
- Movies edited with a computer cannot be played back with the camera.

Only few images can be played back.

- The images have been filtered for playback with [▶: **Set image search conditions**] ( ). Clear the image search conditions.

Mechanical sounds or sounds of camera operations can be heard during movie playback.

- The camera's built-in microphone may also record mechanical sounds of the lens or sounds of camera/lens operations if AF operations are performed or the camera or lens is operated during movie recording. If so, it may help reduce these sounds if you use an external microphone equipped with an output plug and position it away from the camera and lens.

Movie playback stops by itself.

- Extended movie playback or movie playback under high ambient temperature may cause the camera's internal temperature to rise, and movie playback may stop automatically.
  If this happens, playback is disabled until the camera's internal temperature decreases, so turn off the power and let the camera cool down a while.

The movie appears to freeze momentarily.

- Significant change in the exposure level during autoexposure movie recording may cause recording to stop momentarily until the brightness stabilizes. In this case, record in [M] mode ( ).

The movie is played in slow motion.

- High Frame Rate movies are recorded at 29.97 fps or 25.00 fps, so they are played in slow motion at 1/4 speed.

No picture appears on the television.

- Make sure [: **Video system**] is set to [**For NTSC**] or [**For PAL**] correctly for the video system of your television.
- Make sure the HDMI cable's plug is inserted all the way in ( ).

There are multiple movie files for a single movie recording.

- If the movie file size reaches 4 GB, another movie file will be created automatically ( ). However, if you use an SDXC card formatted with the camera, you can record a movie in a single file even if it exceeds 4 GB.

My card reader does not recognize the card.

- Depending on the card reader used and the computer's operating system, SDXC cards may not be correctly recognized. In this case, connect the camera to the computer with the interface cable, then import the images to the computer using EOS Utility (EOS software,).

Images cannot be resized or cropped.

- This camera cannot resize JPEG S2 images, RAW images, or frame-grab images from 4K movies saved as still photos ( ).
- This camera cannot crop RAW images or frame-grab images from 4K movies saved as still photos ( ).

Computer connection problems

I cannot import images to a computer.

- Install EOS Utility (EOS software) on the computer ( ).
- Make sure the main EOS Utility window is displayed.
- If the camera is already connected via Wi-Fi, it cannot communicate with any computer connected with an interface cable.
- Check the version of the application.

Communication between the connected camera and computer does not work.

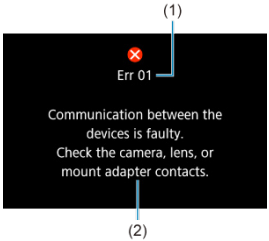
- When using EOS Utility (EOS software), set [: **Time-lapse movie**] to [**Disable**] ( ).

Problems with the multi-function shoe

A message was displayed on the screen when I attached an accessory.

- If [**Communication error Reattach accessory**] is displayed, reattach the accessory. In case this message is displayed again after reattachment, make sure the terminals of the multi-function shoe and accessory are clean and dry. If you cannot remove the dirt or moisture, contact a Canon Service Center.
- If [**Accessory unavailable status**] is displayed, check the terminals of the multi-function shoe and accessory and make sure the accessory is not damaged.

Error Codes



(1) Error number
(2) Cause and countermeasures

If there is a problem with the camera, an error message will appear. Follow the on-screen instructions.
If the problem persists, write down the error code (Err xx) and request service.

ISO Speed in Movie Recording

In [ ] mode

- ISO speed is set automatically in a range of ISO 100–12800.
- Setting [**Max for Auto**] in [: **ISO speed settings**] to [**H (25600)**] ( ) expands the maximum speed in the automatic setting range to H (equivalent to ISO 25600).
- The minimum speed in the automatic setting range is ISO 200 when [: **Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**] or [**Enhanced**] ( ). The maximum limit is not expanded, even when expansion is set in [**Max for Auto**].

In [ ] mode

- With ISO speed set to [**AUTO**], ISO speed is set automatically in a range of ISO 100–12800.
- When ISO Auto is set, setting [**Max for Auto**] in [: **ISO speed settings**] to [**H (25600)**] ( ) expands the maximum speed in the automatic setting range to H (equivalent to ISO 25600).
- ISO speed can be set manually in a range of ISO 100–12800. Note that setting [: **ISO expansion**] to [**Enable**] ( ) expands the maximum speed to H (equivalent to ISO 25600).
- The minimum speed in the automatic or manual setting range is ISO 200 when [: **Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**] or [**Enhanced**] ( ). Even when ISO speed expansion is set, the maximum limit will not be expanded.

In [ ], [ ], and [ ] mode

- ISO speed is set automatically in a range of ISO 100–12800.

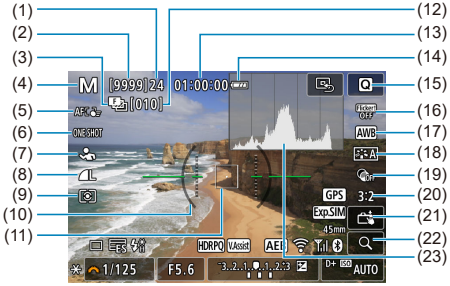
Information Display

- Still Photo Shooting Screen
- Movie Recording Screen
- Scene Icons
- Playback Screen

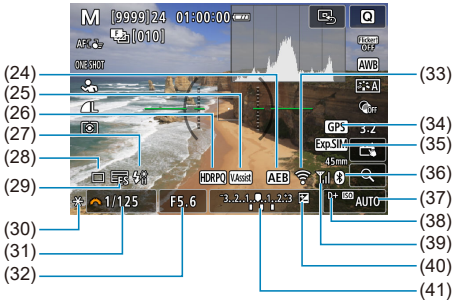
Still Photo Shooting Screen

Each time you press the < INFO > button, the information display will change.

- The display will show only the settings currently applied.



(1)	Maximum burst
(2)	Number of available shots/Sec. until self-timer shoots
(3)	Focus bracketing/HDR shooting/Multi Shot Noise Reduction
(4)	Shooting mode
(5)	AF area
(6)	AF operation
(7)	Subject to detect
(8)	Image quality
(9)	Metering mode
(10)	Electronic level
(11)	AF point (1-point AF)
(12)	Number of remaining shots for focus bracketing
(13)	Movie recording time available
(14)	Battery level
(15)	Quick Control button
(16)	Anti-flicker shooting
(17)	White balance/White balance correction
(18)	Picture Style
(19)	Creative filters
(20)	Still image aspect ratio
(21)	Touch Shutter
(22)	Magnify button
(23)	Histogram (Brightness/RGB)



(24)	AEB/FEB
(25)	View Assist
(26)	HDR PQ
(27)	Flash ready/FE lock/High-speed sync
(28)	Drive mode
(29)	Electronic shutter
(30)	AE lock
(31)	Shutter speed
(32)	Aperture value
(33)	Wi-Fi function
(34)	GPS
(35)	Exposure simulation
(36)	Bluetooth function
(37)	ISO speed
(38)	Highlight tone priority
(39)	Wi-Fi signal strength
(40)	Exposure compensation
(41)	Exposure level indicator

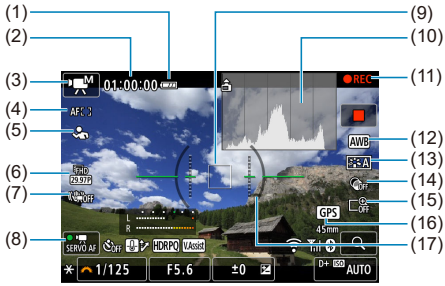
Note

- You can specify the information displayed in response to pressing the < INFO > button ( ).
- The electronic level is not displayed when the camera is connected via HDMI to a television.
- Other icons may be displayed temporarily after setting adjustments.

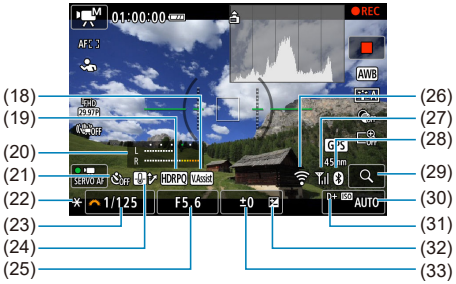
Movie Recording Screen

Each time you press the < INFO > button, the information display will change.

- The display will show only the settings currently applied.



(1)	Battery level
(2)	Movie recording time available/Elapsed recording time
(3)	Shooting mode
(4)	AF area
(5)	Subject to detect
(6)	Movie recording size
(7)	Movie digital IS
(8)	Movie Servo AF
(9)	AF point (1-point AF)
(10)	Histogram (Brightness/RGB)
(11)	Movie recording in progress
(12)	White balance/White balance correction
(13)	Picture Style
(14)	Creative filters
(15)	Digital zoom
(16)	GPS
(17)	Electronic level



(18)	View Assist
(19)	HDR PQ
(20)	Audio recording level indicator (manual)
(21)	Movie self-timer
(22)	AE lock
(23)	Shutter speed
(24)	Overheat control
(25)	Aperture value
(26)	Wi-Fi function
(27)	Wi-Fi signal strength
(28)	Bluetooth function
(29)	Magnify button
(30)	ISO speed
(31)	Highlight tone priority
(32)	Exposure compensation
(33)	Exposure level indicator (metering levels)

Caution

- You can specify the information displayed in response to pressing the < INFO > button ( ).
- The electronic level is not displayed when the camera is connected via HDMI to a television.
- The electronic level, grid lines, and histogram cannot be displayed during movie recording (and if they are currently displayed, recording a movie will clear the display).
- When movie recording starts, the movie recording remaining time will change to the elapsed time.

Note

- Other icons may be displayed temporarily after setting adjustments.

Scene Icons

In < > shooting mode, the camera detects the type of scene and sets all settings accordingly. The detected scene type is indicated in the upper left of the screen.

Subject / Background	People		Subjects Other Than People			Background Color
		In Motion*1	Nature/ Outdoor Scene	In Motion*1	Close*2	
Bright						Gray
Backlit						
Blue Sky Included						Light blue
Backlit						
Sunset	*3				*3	Orange
Spotlight						Dark blue
Dark						
With Tripod*1	*4*5	*3		*3		

* 1: Not displayed during movie recording.
* 2: Displayed when the attached lens has distance information. With an extension tube or close-up lens, the icon displayed may not match the actual scene.
* 3: Icons of scenes selected from those that can be detected are displayed.
* 4: Displayed when all the following conditions apply.
The shooting scene is dark, it is a night scene, and the camera is mounted on a tripod.
* 5: Displayed with any of the following lenses.
- EF300mm f/2.8L IS II USM
- EF400mm f/2.8L IS II USM
- EF500mm f/4L IS II USM
- EF600mm f/4L IS II USM
- Image Stabilizer lenses released in and after 2012.

* Slower shutter speeds are used when the conditions in both *4 and *5 apply.

Note

- For certain scenes or shooting conditions, the icon displayed may not match the actual scene.
- The icon may blink when [: **Assist**] is set to [**Advanced**] ( ).

Playback Screen

Basic information display for still photos

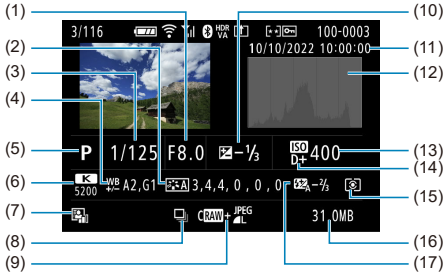


(1)	HDR output status/View Assist
(2)	Bluetooth function
(3)	Wi-Fi signal strength
(4)	Wi-Fi function
(5)	Battery level
(6)	Current image no./Total images/No. of images found
(7)	Shutter speed
(8)	Aperture value
(9)	Exposure compensation amount
(10)	Already sent to a computer/smartphone
(11)	Rating
(12)	Image protection
(13)	Folder no.-File no.
(14)	Image quality/Edited image/Cropping/Frame Grab
(15)	ISO speed
(16)	Highlight tone priority

Caution

- If the image was taken by another camera, certain shooting information may not be displayed.
- It may not be possible to play back images taken with this camera on other cameras.

Detailed information display for still photos



(1)	Aperture value
(2)	Picture Style/Settings
(3)	Shutter speed
(4)	White balance correction/Bracketing
(5)	Shooting mode/Frame Grab
(6)	White balance
(7)	Auto Lighting Optimizer
(8)	First image of scene
(9)	Image quality/Edited image/Cropping
(10)	Exposure compensation amount
(11)	Shooting date and time
(12)	Histogram (Brightness/RGB)
(13)	ISO speed
(14)	Highlight tone priority
(15)	Metering mode
(16)	File size
(17)	Flash exposure compensation amount/Bounce/HDR shooting/Multi Shot Noise Reduction

* For images captured in RAW+JPEG/HEIF shooting, indicates RAW file sizes.
* Lines indicating the image area are displayed for images taken with the aspect ratio set ( ) and with RAW or RAW+JPEG set for image quality.
* For images with added cropping information, lines are shown to indicate the image area.

* During flash photography without flash exposure compensation, [ ] will be displayed.

* [ ] indicates images shot with bounce flash photography.
* The dynamic range adjustment amount is shown for images captured in HDR shooting.

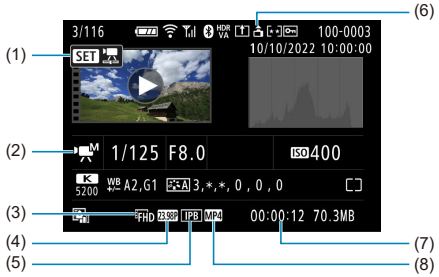
* [NR] indicates images processed with Multi Shot Noise Reduction.

* [ ] indicates test shots for time-lapse movies.

* [ ] indicates images created and saved by performing resizing, cropping, or frame-grabbing.

* [ ] indicates images cropped and then saved.

Detailed information display for movies



(1)	Movie playback
(2)	Movie recording mode/High Frame Rate mode
(3)	Movie recording size
(4)	Frame rate
(5)	Compression method
(6)	Movie orientation information
(7)	Recording time/Time code
(8)	Movie recording format

* For simplicity, explanations are omitted for items that are also included in basic/detailed information display for still photos, which are not shown here.

Note

- During movie playback, "*, *" is displayed for the [**Fineness**] and [**Threshold**] parameters of [**Sharpness**] in [**Picture Style**].

Specifications

Type

Type: Digital single-lens non-reflex AF/AE camera
Lens mount: Canon RF mount
Compatible lenses: Canon RF lens group (including RF-S lenses)
* Canon EF or EF-S lenses (except for EF-M lenses) are also compatible, using mount adapter EF-EOS R
Lens focal length: Approx. 1.6 times the focal length indicated on the lens

Image sensor

Type: APS-C CMOS sensor

Screen size	Approx. 22.3 × 14.9 mm
CMOS format	APS-C
Effective pixels*1*2	Max. approx. 24.2 megapixels
Total pixels*1	Approx. 25.5 megapixels
Dual Pixel CMOS AF	Supported

* 1: Rounded to the nearest 100,000.
* 2: Using RF or EF lenses.
The effective pixel count may be lower with certain lenses and image processing.

Recording system

Image recording format: Compliant with Design rule for Camera File system 2.0 and Exif 2.31*1
* 1: Supports time offset information

Image type and extension

Image type		Extension
Still photos	JPEG	.JPG
	HEIF	.HIF
	RAW	.CR3
	C-RAW	
Movies	ALL-I*1, IPB (Standard), IPB (Light)	.MP4

* 1: Time-lapse movies only

Recording media

Recording media

SD/SDHC/SDXC memory cards

UHS-I	Supported
UHS speed class	Supported
SD speed class	Supported

Card slot: Equipped with a single slot
* Supports UHS-I

Still photo recording

Still photo pixel count

Image quality		Recorded pixels			
		Aspect ratio			
		3:2	4:3	16:9	1:1
JPEG/ HEIF	L	24.0 megapixels (6000×4000)	Approx. 21.3 megapixels*1 (5328×4000)	Approx. 20.2 megapixels*1 (6000×3368)	16.0 megapixels (4000×4000)
	M	Approx. 10.6 megapixels (3984×2656)	Approx. 9.5 megapixels (3552×2664)	Approx. 8.9 megapixels*1 (3984×2240)	Approx. 7.1 megapixels (2656×2656)
	S1	Approx. 5.9 megapixels (2976×1984)	Approx. 5.3 megapixels (2656×1992)	Approx. 5.0 megapixels*1 (2976×1680)	Approx. 3.9 megapixels (1984×1984)
	S2	Approx. 3.8 megapixels (2400×1600)	Approx. 3.4 megapixels*1 (2112×1600)	Approx. 3.2 megapixels*1 (2400×1344)	Approx. 2.6 megapixels (1600×1600)
RAW	RAW / C RAW	24.0 megapixels (6000×4000)			

* Values for recorded pixels are rounded to the nearest 100,000.
* RAW/C-RAW images are generated at 3:2 and tagged to indicate the specified aspect ratio.
* JPEG and HEIF images are generated at the specified aspect ratio.
* These aspect ratios (M/S1/S2) and pixel counts also apply to resizing.
* 1: Aspect ratios are slightly different for these image sizes.

File size/number of shots available

Image quality		File size [Approx. MB]	Available shots [Approx.]*1
JPEG*2	L	8.7	3510
	L	4.6	6610
	M	4.7	6430
	M	2.6	11400
	S1	3.1	9760
	S1	1.8	16130
	S2	1.8	16260
HEIF*3	L	9.1	3360
	L	7.0	4380
	M	5.4	5630
	M	4.3	7170
	S1	3.7	8220
	S1	3.0	10100
	S2	2.2	14110
RAW*2	RAW	27.0	1140
	CRAW	14.0	2230
RAW+JPEG*2	RAW + L	27.0 + 8.7	860
	CRAW + L	14.0 + 8.7	1360
RAW+HEIF*3	RAW + L	29.9 + 9.1	780
	CRAW + L	16.9 + 9.1	1180

* 1: Number of shots using a 32 GB card that conforms to Canon testing standards.

* 2: When set to [**HDR shooting HDR PQ**: **Disable**].

* 3: When set to [**HDR shooting HDR PQ**: **Enable**].

* File sizes are determined based on Canon testing standards.

* File size varies by shooting conditions (such as aspect ratio, subject, ISO speed, Picture Style, and Custom Functions).

Maximum burst (approx. shots)

Number of shots available when set to [□H], without slower continuous shooting

Image quality		Electronic 1st-curtain (approx. 12 shots/sec.)	Electronic shutter (approx. 15 shots/sec.)
		Standard card*1	Standard card*1
JPEG*2	L	42	28
	M	42	28
	S1	42	28
	S2	42	28
HEIF*3	L	41	24
	M	41	24
	S1	41	24
	S2	41	24
RAW*2	RAW	7	7
	CRAW	15	15
RAW+JPEG*2	RAW + L	7	7
	CRAW + L	13	13
RAW+HEIF*3	RAW + L	7	7
	CRAW + L	13	13

* 1: Number of shots using a 32 GB UHS-I card that conforms to Canon testing standards.

* 2: When set to [**HDR shooting HDR PQ**: **Disable**].

* 3: When set to [**HDR shooting HDR PQ**: **Enable**].

* Maximum burst as measured under conditions conforming to Canon testing standards (High-speed continuous shooting + in One-Shot AF mode, ISO 100, and Standard Picture Style).

* Maximum burst varies depending on shooting conditions (including aspect ratio, subject, memory card brand, ISO speed, Picture Style, and Custom Function).

Movie recording

Movie recording format: MP4

Estimated recording time, movie bit rate, and file size

HDR PQ: OFF

Movie recording size				Total recording time (approx.)			Movie bit rate (Approx. Mbps)	File size (Approx. MB/min.)
Movie recording	Frame rate (fps)		Compression method	32 GB	128 GB	512 GB		
	NTSC	PAL						
4K UHD	29.97 23.98	25.00	IPB (Standard)	35 min.	2 hr. 21 min.	9 hr. 27 min.	120	860
			IPB (Light)	1 hr. 10 min.	4 hr. 43 min.	18 hr. 52 min.	60	431
Full HD High Frame Rate movies	119.88	100.00	IPB (Standard)	35 min.	2 hr. 22 min.	9 hr. 28 min.	120	858
			IPB (Light)	1 hr. 0 min.	4 hr. 3 min.	16 hr. 15 min.	70	501
Full HD	59.94	50.00	IPB (Standard)	1 hr. 10 min.	4 hr. 43 min.	18 hr. 52 min.	60	431
			IPB (Light)	2 hr. 0 min.	8 hr. 3 min.	32 hr. 15 min.	35	252
	29.97 23.98	25.00	IPB (Standard)	2 hr. 20 min.	9 hr. 23 min.	37 hr. 35 min.	30	216
			IPB (Light)	5 hr. 47 min.	23 hr. 11 min.	92 hr. 47 min.	12	88
Full HD Time-lapse movies	29.97	25.00	ALL-I	47 min.	3 hr. 9 min.	12 hr. 38 min.	90	644

* Bit rate only applies to video output, not audio or metadata.
* Movie recording stops when the maximum recording time per movie is reached.
* Sound is not recorded for approx. the last two frames when the compression method for movie recording quality is IPB (Standard) or IPB (Light). Moreover, the video and sound may be slightly out of sync when movies are played back in Windows.

HDR PQ: ON

Movie recording size				Total recording time (approx.)			Movie bit rate (Approx. Mbps)	File size (Approx. MB/min.)
Movie recording	Frame rate (fps)		Compression method	32 GB	128 GB	512 GB		
	NTSC	PAL						
4K UHD	29.97 23.98	25.00	IPB (Standard)	25 min.	1 hr. 40 min.	6 hr. 40 min.	170	1218
			IPB (Light)	50 min.	3 hr. 20 min.	13 hr. 20 min.	85	610
Full HD High Frame Rate movies	119.88	100.00	IPB (Standard)	23 min.	1 hr. 34 min.	6 hr. 19 min.	180	1287
			IPB (Light)	42 min.	2 hr. 50 min.	11 hr. 22 min.	100	715
Full HD	59.94	50.00	IPB (Standard)	47 min.	3 hr. 9 min.	12 hr. 36 min.	90	646
			IPB (Light)	1 hr. 24 min.	5 hr. 39 min.	22 hr. 38 min.	50	360
	29.97 23.98	25.00	IPB (Standard)	1 hr. 34 min.	6 hr. 17 min.	25 hr. 8 min.	45	324
			IPB (Light)	2 hr. 30 min.	10 hr. 3 min.	40 hr. 15 min.	28	202
Full HD Time-lapse movies	29.97	25.00	ALL-I	31 min.	2 hr. 6 min.	8 hr. 25 min.	135	966

* Bit rate only applies to video output, not audio or metadata.
* Movie recording stops when the maximum recording time per movie is reached.
* Sound is not recorded for approx. the last two frames when the compression method for movie recording quality is IPB (Standard) or IPB (Light). Moreover, the video and sound may be slightly out of sync when movies are played back in Windows.

Card performance requirements (movie recording) [write/read speed]

<table>
<tr><th colspan="4">Movie recording size</th><th colspan="2">SD card</th></tr>
<tr><th rowspan="2">Resolution</th><th colspan="2">Frame rate (fps)</th><th rowspan="2">Compression method</th><th rowspan="2">8 bits</th><th rowspan="2">10 bits (HDR PQ)</th></tr>
<tr><th>NTSC</th><th>PAL</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">4K UHD</td><td rowspan="2">29.97
23.98</td><td rowspan="2">25.00</td><td>IPB (Standard)</td><td colspan="2">UHS Speed Class 3 or higher</td></tr>
<tr><td>IPB (Light)</td><td>SD Speed Class 10 or higher</td><td>UHS Speed Class 3 or higher</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="6">Full HD</td><td rowspan="2">119.88</td><td rowspan="2">100.00</td><td>IPB (Standard)</td><td colspan="2">UHS Speed Class 3 or higher</td></tr>
<tr><td>IPB (Light)</td><td>SD Speed Class 10 or higher</td><td>UHS Speed Class 3 or higher</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">59.94</td><td rowspan="2">50.00</td><td>IPB (Standard)</td><td>SD Speed Class 10 or higher</td><td>UHS Speed Class 3 or higher</td></tr>
<tr><td>IPB (Light)</td><td>SD Speed Class 6 or higher</td><td>SD Speed Class 10 or higher</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">29.97
23.98</td><td rowspan="2">25.00</td><td>IPB (Standard)</td><td colspan="2">SD Speed Class 6 or higher</td></tr>
<tr><td>IPB (Light)</td><td colspan="2">SD Speed Class 4 or higher</td></tr>
<tr><td>Full HD (Time-lapse movies)</td><td>29.97</td><td>25.00</td><td>ALL-I</td><td colspan="2">Read speed of 30 MB/sec. or higher</td></tr>
</table>

Built-in microphone: Stereo microphones
External microphone (External microphone IN terminal): 3.5 mm diameter stereo mini jack
External microphone (Multi-function shoe): Compatible with Directional Stereo Microphone DM-E1D

Autofocus

Focusing method: Dual Pixel CMOS AF

Focusing brightness range
Still photo shooting: EV –4.0 to 20
(With an f/1.2 lens,* center AF point, One-Shot AF at room temperature, and ISO 100)
* Except for RF lenses with a Defocus Smoothing (DS) coating.

Movie recording: EV –3.5 to 20
(With an f/1.2 lens,* center AF point, One-Shot AF at room temperature, ISO 100, in Full HD recording at 29.97/25.00 fps.)
* Except for RF lenses with a Defocus Smoothing (DS) coating.

Focusing operation

	Still photo shooting	Movie recording
AF operation*1	• One-Shot AF • AI Focus AF • Servo AF	• One-Shot AF • Movie Servo AF
Manual focus (MF)	Supported	Supported

1: Available in Creative Zone modes. Automatically set in Basic Zone modes to suit the shooting mode.
* When set to AI Focus AF, the camera automatically switches from One-Shot AF to Servo AF in response to subject movement (also applies during continuous shooting).
* Automatically set to [**AI Focus AF**] in < [A+] > mode.

Lens compatibility based on focusing area: Refer to the Canon website

Number of AF area available for automatic selection

Focusing area		Horizontal: Approx. 100%, Vertical: Approx. 100%
Number of AF zones	Still photos	Max. 651 zones (31×21)
	Movies	Max. 527 zones (31×17)

* May vary depending on settings.

Selectable positions for AF point

Focusing area		Horizontal: Approx. 90%, Vertical: Approx. 100%
Numbers of positions	Still photos	Max. 4503 positions (79×57)
	Movies	Max. 3713 positions (79×47)

* When set to [1-point AF] and selected using the cross keys.

Viewfinder

Type: OLED color electronic viewfinder
Screen size: Approx. 1.00 cm (0.39 inch)
Dot count: Approx. 2,360,000 dots
Magnification / Angle of view: Approx. 0.95× / Approx. 28.0° (3:2 aspect ratio, with 50mm lens at infinity, –1 m^{-1})
Coverage: Approx. 100% (at JPEG Large image quality, 3:2 aspect ratio, approx. 22 mm eyepoint)
Eyepoint: Approx. 22 mm (at –1 m^{-1} from eyepiece lens end)
Dioptric adjustment: Approx. –3.0 to +1.0 m^{-1} (dpt)

Screen

Type: TFT color, liquid-crystal monitor
Screen size: Approx. 7.5 cm (3.0 inch) (screen aspect ratio of 3:2)
Dot count: Approx. 1,620,000 dots
Angle of view: Approx. 170° vertically and horizontally
Coverage: Approx. 100% vertically and horizontally (at L image size and an aspect ratio of 3:2)
Screen brightness: Manually adjustable in a range of 1–7
Touch-screen: Capacitive sensing

HDMI output

HDMI video / audio output: HDMI micro OUT terminal (Type D)
* HDMI CEC not supported
HDMI resolution: Auto / 1080p

Exposure control

Metering functions under various shooting conditions

Item		Still photo shooting	Movie recording
Metering sensor		384-zone (24×16) metering using image sensor output signals	
Metering mode	Evaluative metering	Yes	Yes
	Partial metering	Yes * Approx. 5.8% in the center of the screen*2	
	Spot metering*1	Yes * Approx. 2.9% in the center of the screen*2	
	Center-weighted average metering	Yes	
Metering brightness range (at room temperature, ISO 100)		EV –2 to 20	EV 0 to 20

* 1: Multi-spot metering not available (not supported).
* 2: Values differ when set to Digital tele-converter.

ISO speed (recommended exposure index) in still photo shooting

Manual ISO speed setting for still photos

	ISO speed
Normal ISO speed	ISO 100–32000 (in 1/3- or 1-stop increments)
Expanded ISO speed	H (equivalent to ISO 51200)

* When set to [**Highlight tone priority**], the available manual setting range is ISO 200–32000.
* Expanded ISO speeds cannot be set in HDR mode or for HDR shooting (HDR PQ).

Manual ISO speed setting range for still photos: Not supported

ISO Auto maximum limit setting for still photos

Max. for ISO Auto	ISO 400 / 800 / 1600 / 3200 / 6400 / 12800 / 25600 / 32000

ISO Auto setting range for still photos: Not supported

ISO Auto details for still photos

Shooting mode		No flash	Using flash	
Variable control of maximum ISO Auto limit for E-TTL			Compatible lens	Incompatible lens
Creative Zone	P / Tv / Av / M (other than bulb)	ISO 100*1*2–32000*2	ISO 100*1*2–6400*2	ISO 100*1*2–1600*2
	M (bulb)	ISO 400*3	ISO 400*3	
Basic Zone	 / 	ISO 100–6400	ISO 100–6400	ISO 100–3200*4
		Varies by shooting mode		
		Varies by shooting mode		

* 1: ISO 200 when set to [**Highlight tone priority**: **Enable**/**Enhanced**].
* 2: Varies depending on the [**Max for Auto**] settings.
* 3: If outside the setting range, changed to the value closest to ISO 400.
* 4: When using the built-in flash. ISO 1600 when using an external flash unit.

Variable control of maximum ISO Auto limit for E-TTL: Supported

ISO speed (recommended exposure index) in movie recording

Manual ISO speed setting for movies

	ISO speed
Normal ISO speed	ISO 100–12800 (in 1/3- or 1-stop increments)
Expanded ISO speed	H (equivalent to ISO 16000 / 20000 / 25600)

* When set to [**Highlight tone priority**], the setting range is ISO 200–12800.
* Expanded ISO speeds are not available in HDR PQ movie, HDR movie, or High Frame Rate movie recording.

Automatic ISO speed setting for movies (with ISO Auto)

	ISO speed
Normal ISO speed	ISO 100–12800 (in 1/3- or 1-stop increments)
Expanded ISO speed	H (equivalent to ISO 25600)

* Maximum ISO speed when set automatically corresponds to the [**Max for Auto**] setting.
* When set to [**Highlight tone priority**], the setting range is ISO 200–12800.
* Expanded ISO speeds are not available in HDR or HDR PQ movie recording, in movie recording with shooting creative filters, or with digital zoom.

Manual ISO speed setting range limit for movies: Not supported

Maximum ISO Auto setting for movies

Max. for ISO Auto	ISO 6400 / 12800 / H (equivalent to ISO 25600)

Maximum ISO Auto speed setting for time-lapse movies

Max. for ISO Auto	ISO 400 / 800 / 1600 / 3200 / 6400 / 12800

Shutter

Still photo shooting

Type:
Electronically controlled focal-plane shutter
Rolling shutter, using the image sensor

Shutter mode

Shutter mode	Flash photography
Electronic 1st-curtain	Possible
Electronic shutter	Disabled

Shutter speed / X-sync speed

Shutter mode	Setting range	Setting increments	X-sync
Electronic 1st-curtain	1/4000–30 sec., Bulb	1/3-stop	1/250 sec.
Electronic shutter	1/8000–30 sec., Bulb		

Movie recording

Type: Rolling shutter, using the image sensor

Shutter speed:
Movie auto exposure: 1/4000–1/25* sec.
* Varies by frame rate.
Movie manual exposure: 1/4000–1/8*1 sec.
* Varies by shooting mode and frame rate.
* 1: 1/125 sec. (NTSC) or 1/100 sec. (PAL) with [**High Frame Rate**] set to [**Enable**].

Drive

Drive mode and continuous shooting speed

[Max. approx.]

Drive mode	AF operation	Electronic 1st-curtain	Electronic shutter
Single shooting		Yes	Yes
High-speed continuous shooting +	One-Shot AF Servo AF	12 shots/sec.	15 shots/sec.
High-speed continuous shooting	One-Shot AF Servo AF	7.6 shots/sec.	15 shots/sec.
Low-speed continuous shooting	One-Shot AF Servo AF	3.0 shots/sec.	5.0 shots/sec.
Self-timer: 10 sec.		Yes	Yes
Self-timer: 2 sec.		Yes	Yes
Self-timer: Continuous shooting		Yes	Yes

Built-in flash

Type: Retractable flash
Retraction method: Manual
Guide no.: Guide no. of approx. 6 (ISO 100/m) / 19.7 (ISO 100/feet)
Flash exposure compensation: ±2 stops (in 1/3-stop increments)
Effective flash range (example)
(Approx.)

ISO speed	Lens: RF-S18-45mm F4.5-6.3 IS STM			
	Wide-angle end f/4.5		Telephoto end f/6.3	
	m	ft.	m	ft.
100	0.3–1.2	1.0–3.9	0.4–0.9	1.0–3.0
1600	1.1–4.9	3.6–16.1	0.8–3.5	2.6–11.5
25600	4.3–19.6	14.1–64.3	3.0–14.0	9.8–45.9

* Rounded to the first decimal place.
* Suitable exposure may not be obtained when shooting distant subjects at high ISO speeds, because preflash metering limits may be exceeded.

External flash

Contacts for multi-function shoe: 21-pin contact
Flash exposure compensation: ±2-stops in 1/3- or 1/2-stop increments
* When set from the camera menu
* ±3 stops when using the external flash

Playback

Item	Still photos	Movies
AF point display	Yes	
Playback grid	Off / 3×3 / 6×4 / 3×3+diag	
Magnified view	1.5×–10× (15 levels)	
Setting image search conditions	Search conditions Rating / Date / Folder / Protection / Type of file (1) / Type of file (2)	
Rating	OFF / ★ to ★★★★★ Select images / Select range / All images in folder / All images on card / All found images	
Protect images	Select images / Select range / All images in folder / Unprotect all images in folder / All images on card / Unprotect all images on card / All found images / Unprotect all found images	
Resizing	Yes	
Cropping	Yes	

Frame grab from 4K movies

Individual frames of 4K movies recorded with the camera can be saved as approx. 8.3-megapixel (3840×2160) still photos (JPEG or HEIF).
* From normal movies, still photos are saved as JPEGs, and from HDR PQ movies, as HEIF images.
* In-camera resizing or cropping is not supported for extracted still photos, and these images cannot be edited with Creative filters or Creative Assist.

Print order (DPOF)

Compliant with DPOF Version 1.1

External interface

Digital terminal
Terminal type: USB Type-C
Transmission: Equivalent to Hi-Speed USB (USB 2.0)
Applications:

- For computer communication / smartphone communication
- USB battery charging / camera power supply

HDMI output terminal: HDMI micro OUT terminal (Type D)
External microphone IN terminal: 3.5 mm diameter stereo mini jack

Power source

Battery

Compatible battery pack	LP-E17
Quantity used	1

Battery check: Automatic battery check with 4-level display when the power switch is turned ON.

Battery information

Power supply	Type
Remaining capacity	4-level indicator
Number of shots	Not supported
Recharge performance	3 levels

USB battery charging and camera power supply: Using USB Power Adapter PD-E1

AC power source

AC adapter	AC-E6N
DC coupler	DR-E18

Number of shots available

Type of shooting	Temperature	Available shots (approx.)		
		Using 50% flash		AE shooting*2
		Power saving*1	Smooth*2	Power saving
Viewfinder shooting	+23°C / 73°F	310	230	320
On-screen shooting		440	370	450

* 1: Based on CIPA standards.
* 2: According to Canon measurement conditions, which are based on CIPA standards.
* Using a new, fully charged LP-E17
* The number of shots available may vary greatly depending on the shooting environment.
* Fewer shots may be available with a compatible accessory attached to the multi-function shoe, because the camera powers the accessory.

Available operating time

Conditions of use			Temperature	Available operating time
Time available for bulb exposure			+23°C / 73°F	Approx. 2 hr. 50 min.
Time available for Live View shooting * Using the screen			+23°C / 73°F	Approx. 3 hr. 00 min.
Time available for movie recording * Movie Servo AF: Disable	4K	• IPB (Standard) • 29.97 fps / 25.00 fps	+23°C / 73°F	Approx. 1 hr. 00 min.
			0°C / 32°F	Approx. 1 hr. 00 min.
	Full HD	• IPB (Standard) • 29.97 fps / 25.00 fps	+23°C / 73°F	Approx. 2 hr. 00 min.
			0°C / 32°F	Approx. 2 hr. 00 min.
Time available for continuous playback (normal playback)	4K	• IPB (Standard) • 29.97 fps / 25.00 fps	+23°C / 73°F	Approx. 3 hr. 00 min.

* With a fully charged new LP-E17

Dimensions and weight

Dimensions

Exterior color	Dimensions
	(W) × (H) × (D)
Black	Approx. 116.3 × 85.5 × 68.8 mm / 4.58 × 3.37 × 2.71 in.
White	

* Based on CIPA guidelines.

Weight

	Exterior color	Weight
Body (including battery and card)*1	Black	Approx. 375 g / Approx. 13.23 oz.
	White	Approx. 376 g / Approx. 13.26 oz.
Body only	Black	Approx. 328 g / Approx. 11.57 oz.
	White	Approx. 329 g / Approx. 11.61 oz.

* Not including body cap or shoe cover.
* 1: Based on CIPA guidelines.

Operating environment

Operating temperature: 0–+40°C / 32–104°F
Operating humidity: 85% or less

Wi-Fi (wireless LAN)

Supported standards (equivalent to IEEE 802.11b/g/n standards)

Wi-Fi standards	Transmission method	Maximum link speed
IEEE 802.11b	DSSS modulation	11 Mbps
IEEE 802.11g	OFDM modulation	54 Mbps
IEEE 802.11n		72.2 Mbps

* Not compatible with MIMO (Multiple-input and multiple-output).

Transmission frequency (Center frequency)

Frequency	2412 to 2462 MHz
Channels	1 to 11 ch

Authentication and data encryption methods

Connection method	Authentication method	Encryption
		Encryption method
Camera access point	WPA2 / WPA3-Personal	AES
	Open	Disable
Infrastructure	Open	WEP
		Disable
	Shared key	WEP
	WPA / WPA2 / WPA3-Personal	TKIP AES

Bluetooth

Standards compliance: Bluetooth Specification Version 4.2 compliant (Bluetooth Low Energy technology)
Transmission method: GFSK modulation

- All data above is based on Canon testing standards and CIPA (Camera & Imaging Products Association) testing standards and guidelines.
- Dimensions and weight listed above are based on CIPA Guidelines (except weight for camera body only).
- Product specifications and appearance are subject to change without notice.
- If a problem occurs with a non-Canon lens attached to the camera, contact the respective lens manufacturer.

Trademarks and Licensing

- Trademarks
- About MPEG-4 Licensing
- Accessories
- Regulations

Trademarks

- Adobe is a registered trademark or trademark of Adobe in the United States and/or other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- App Store and macOS are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Google Play and Android are trademarks of Google LLC.
- IOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and is used under license.
- QR Code is a trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- SDXC logo is a trademark of SD-3C LLC.
- The terms HDMI, HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, HDMI Trade dress and the HDMI Logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing Administrator, Inc.
- WPS used on camera settings screens and in this manual stands for Wi-Fi Protected Setup.
- The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Canon Inc. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.
- USB Type-C® and USB-C® are registered trademarks of USB Implementers Forum.
- All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

About MPEG-4 Licensing

"This product is licensed under AT&T patents for the MPEG-4 standard and may be used for encoding MPEG-4 compliant video and/or decoding MPEG-4 compliant video that was encoded only (1) for a personal and non-commercial purpose or (2) by a video provider licensed under the AT&T patents to provide MPEG-4 compliant video. No license is granted or implied for any other use for MPEG-4 standard."

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL USE OF A CONSUMER OR OTHER USES IN WHICH IT DOES NOT RECEIVE REMUNERATION TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD ("AVC VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM

* Notice displayed in English as required.

Accessories

Use of Genuine Canon Accessories Is Recommended
This product is designed to achieve optimum performance when used with genuine Canon accessories. Therefore, using this product with genuine accessories is highly recommended. Canon shall not be liable for any damage to this product and/or accidents such as malfunction, fire, etc. caused by the failure of non-genuine Canon accessories (e.g., a leakage and/or explosion of a battery). Please note that repairs arising out of the malfunction of non-genuine accessories will not be covered by the warranty for repairs, although you may request such repairs on a chargeable basis.

Caution

- Battery Pack LP-E17 is dedicated to Canon products only. Using it with an incompatible battery charger or product may result in malfunction or accidents for which Canon cannot be held liable.

Check the following website for details on compatible accessories.

- **https://cam.start.canon/H002/**

Regulations

Only for European Union and EEA (Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein)



These symbols indicate that this product is not to be disposed of with your household waste, according to the WEEE Directive (2012/19/EU), the Battery Regulation ((EU) 2023/1542) and/or national legislations implementing those Directive and Regulation. If a chemical symbol is printed beneath the symbol shown above, in accordance with the Battery Regulation, this indicates that a heavy metal (Pb = Lead) is present in this battery at a concentration above an applicable threshold specified in the Battery Regulation.

This product should be handed over to a designated collection point, e.g., on an authorized one-for-one basis when you buy a new similar product or to an authorized collection site for recycling waste electrical and electronic equipment (EEE) and batteries. Improper handling of this type of waste could have a possible impact on the environment and human health due to potentially hazardous substances that are generally associated with EEE. Your cooperation in the correct disposal of this product will contribute to the effective usage of natural resources. For more information about the recycling of this product, please contact your local city office, waste authority, approved scheme or your household waste disposal service or visit www.canon-europe.com/sustainability/approach/.